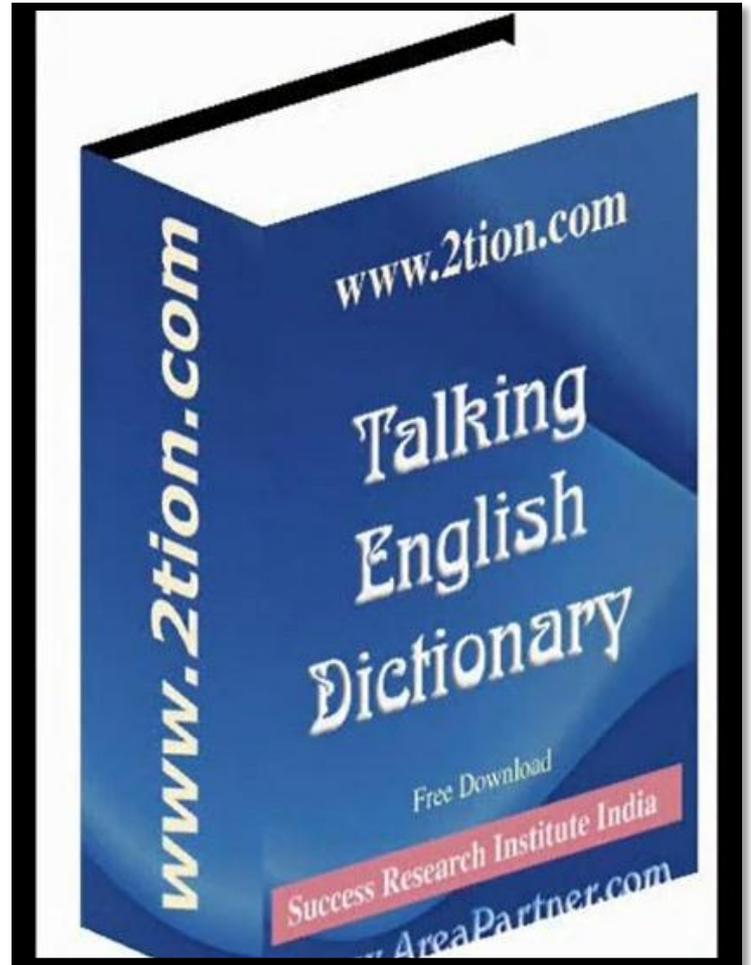


البحر كله الجميل
والجمال يجمعه
والبحر كله الجميل
والبحر كله الجميل
والبحر كله الجميل



Laboratory of Number Theory and Pure Mathematics (LNTPM)

**BY DR. BELLAOUAR
DJAMEL
12-12-2012**

LEVEL ONE



ENGLISH FOR MASTER STUDENTS

Sounds of English

VOWELS

ɪ	ʊ	ʌ	ɒ	ə	e	æ		'short'
iː	uː	aː	ɔː	ɜː				'long'
ɪə	ʊə	aɪ	ɔɪ	əʊ	eə	aʊ	eɪ	diphthongs

CONSONANTS

p	t	tʃ	k	f	θ	s	ʃ	voiceless
b	d	dʒ	g	v	ð	z	ʒ	voiced
m	n	ŋ	h	l	r	w	j	

ɪ:	ɪ	ʊ	u:	ɪə	eɪ		
e	ə	ɜ:	ɔ:	ʊə	ɔɪ	əʊ	
æ	ʌ	ɑ:	ɒ	eə	aɪ	aʊ	
p	b	t	d	tʃ	dʒ	k	g
f	v	θ	ð	s	z	ʃ	ʒ
m	n	ŋ	h	l	r	w	j

Sounds of English

VOWELS

ɪ	ʊ	ʌ	ɒ	ə	e	æ		'short'
iː	uː	aː	ɔː	ɜː				'long'
ɪə	ʊə	aɪ	ɔɪ	əʊ	eə	aʊ	eɪ	diphthongs

CONSONANTS

p	t	tʃ	k	f	θ	s	ʃ	voiceless
b	d	dʒ	g	v	ð	z	ʒ	voiced
m	n	ŋ	h	l	r	w	j	

PHONETIC SYMBOLS

s	z	ʃ	ʒ	tʃ	dʒ	f	v
θ	ð	p	b	t	d	k	g
l	r	j	w	ŋ	n	m	h

ə	i:	ɪ	æ	e	ʌ	
ɔ:	ɒ	a:	u:	ʊ	ə:	
eɪ	eə	aɪ	ɔɪ	aʊ	ɪə	əʊ

Letters ['letə(r)z]

<i>a</i> [eɪ]	<i>J</i> [dʒeɪ]	<i>S</i> [es]
<i>b</i> [bi:]	<i>k</i> [keɪ]	<i>t</i> [ti:]
<i>c</i> [si:]	<i>l</i> [el]	<i>U</i> [ju:]
<i>d</i> [di:]	<i>M</i> [em]	<i>v</i> [vi:]
<i>e</i> [i:]	<i>n</i> [en]	<i>W</i> ['dʌblju:]
<i>f</i> [ef]	<i>O</i> [əʊ]	<i>X</i> [eks]
<i>g</i> [dʒi:]	<i>P</i> [pi:]	<i>y</i> [waɪ]
<i>h</i> [eɪtʃ]	<i>Q</i> [kju:]	<i>Z</i> [zed], [zi:]
<i>i</i> [aɪ]	<i>R</i> [ɑ:(r)]	

Consonants

['kɒnsənənts]

s	z	ʃ	ʒ	tʃ	dʒ	f	v
θ	ð	p	b	t	d	k	g
l	r	j	w	ŋ	n	m	h

S

S

S

See, sick, south, salt,
system, consider, yesterday,
solution, sing, sister, works

Sad city science

Scream

Glasses lost Place

class

Z

and

J

Z

Z

Zoo, zero, lazy, easy,
exact, size, times, wise

J

J

S hould	S hirt	s ugar	N ation
o cean	W ish	E nglish	F ish

3

3

Asia, beige, closure, conclusion,
decision, division, equation,
measure, occasion, pleasure,
revision, television, usual, usually,
vision

ts

ts

ts

Choose, **change**, **cheese**, **richer**,
teach, **which**, **watch**, **church**,
approach, **Chair**, **chicken**,
kitchen, **future**, **question**, **rich**,
march, **chain**.

- Which **child** put **chalk** on the **teacher's** **chair** ?

d3

dʒ

The phonetic symbol 'dʒ' is enclosed in a thin black rectangular border.

Age, ages, cage, change, changes, damage, digest, fridge, germany, injection, jeans, joke, juice, jump, june, language, large, magic, major, marriage, orange, message, page, stranger, technology, vegetable, village, voyage, job.

Hello Djazia. I'm Djamel, take my urgent message. Can you arrange your budget in June?

f

f

Few, leaf, free

Coffee, photo, fly, freeze

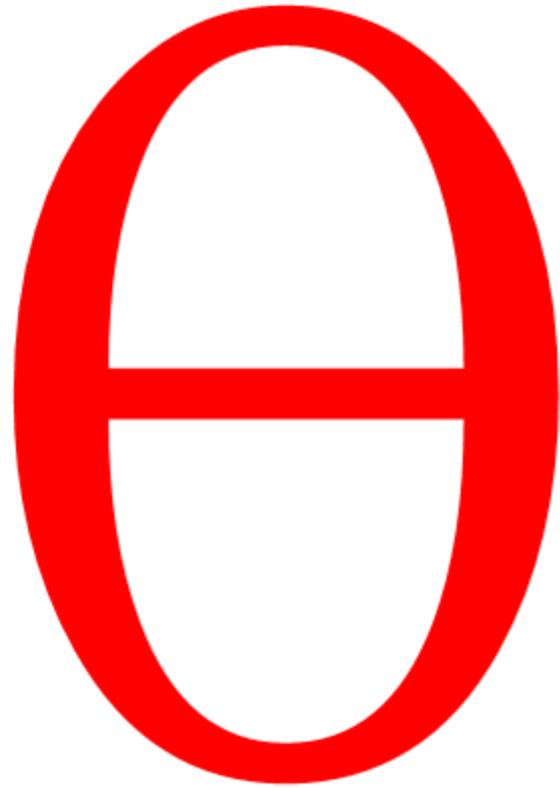
Knife, laugh,

Frank found four frogs laughing
On the floor.

V

V

Verb, Wave, twelve, of
Vote, loved, river, voice



Θ

Thin, third,
thing, Thursday,
thank-you,
tenth, with,
math, south
Health,
bathroom,
everything,
method

think
Thought
Three
Birthday
Fourth
Earth
length

ð



Then, than

These,

though

With

Weather

Clothes

They

other

My father and mother live together with my other brother.

p

b

[p]

Park

price

Open

spring

Tape

jump

please

apple

help

[b]

bone

bite

Problem

Ball, boat, buy,
habit, baby,
globe,

t

t

Talk, train, eat, night,
Until, west, butter, hated
vomit, late, wait

worked

d

d

Dog, di d, dream

Address, advice,

third, food, mind

Dvid's daughter didn't dance but david's dad did.

Dina did You dine the dinner yesterday?

lk

k

Cake, back, cap, keep

School, milk, comic

Quick, taxi, ache

The king cooked the carrots and queen cut the cake.

g

g

Guess, green, game

Bigger, ago, angry

Dog, egg

1

1

**Like, list, listen, light, laugh,
only, clearly, really, lately
School, oil, meal, little, while,
will, shall
Lemma, Formula,
Exponential**

r

r

Right, carrot, write

Sorry, dress, train

The rabbits raced right around the ring

j

j

Yes, your, Europe,
young, union, million,
regular, lawyer,
continue

W

W

Wave, what, one
Language, quick
square

ŋ

ŋ

Sing, singer, sink

Bring, bank, thing

Finger, hang, coming

n

n

Nose, now, no, norm

Snow, dinner, nine

Gone, open, listen

m

m

Miss, more, make,
smoke, jump, film
Comb, autumn

h

h

Hair, head, heard, who, perhaps
Horse, hold, here, ...

n.z

n.z

beans, bones, chains, citizens,
cleans, decisions, fountains,
lemons, lines, machines, nouns,
occasions, oceans, opens, pens,
phones, revisions, signs, stations,
televisions, towns, trains, coins

L.d

f.S

k.S

L.d

Build, child, cold, field, gold, old, world

f.s

laughs, proofs, chefs, graphs, giraffes

k.s asks, accident, books, box, breaks,
cakes, cheeks, cooks, drinks, except,
exchange, excuse, exercise, explain, fixed,
fox, jokes, likes, looks, makes, marks, next,
parks, six, text, thanks, weeks

p.s

p.S

Lamps, types, rips, ...

t.s

t.s

t.s accidents, cats, corrects, counts, dates, departments, eats, elephants, governments, infants, insects, its, limits, minutes, nights, notes, points, sets, sits, writes.

Some consonants

Partner, **b**ut, **t**ow, **d**o, **c**ar,
go, **ch**in, **j**oke, **f**ood,
voice, **th**ree, **th**is

Sea, **z**oo, **sh**e, mea**s**ure,
has, **m**at, **n**ote, **sing**, **l**uck,
red, **y**es, **w**ill

consonants

['kɒnsənənts]

So [səʊ]

zoo [zuː]

shoe [ʃuː]

vision ['vɪʒən]

Chain [tʃeɪn]

June [dʒuːn]

five [faɪv]

Vote [vəʊt]

Thin [θɪn]

This [ðɪs]

Pen [pen]

Bad [bæd]

Tea [tiː]

did [dɪd]

Cat [kæt]

game [geɪm]

Like [laɪk]

Man [mæn]

hat [hæt]

red [red]

yes [jes]

wine

[waɪn]

sing [sɪŋ]

no [nəʊ]

Vowels ['vaʊəlz]

About [ə'baʊt]

See [si:]

happy ['hæpɪ]

cat [kæt]

Ten [ten]

cup [kʌp]

Saw [sɔ:]

got [gɒt]

Father ['fɑ:ðə]

too [tu:]

put [pʊt]

first [fɜ:st]

Say [seɪ]

hair [hɛə]

five [faɪv]

boy [bɔɪ]

now [naʊ]

Near [nɪə]

Go [gəʊ]

pure [pjʊə]

Vowels ['vaʊəlz]

ə	i:	I	æ	e	ʌ	
ɔ:	ɒ	a:	u:	ʊ	ə:	
eɪ	eə	aɪ	ɔɪ	aʊ	ɪə	ʊə

9



About, ago, animal, again,
appear, august, orphan,
lemon, opposite, civilian

ə

B

C

about /ə'baʊt/

common /'kɒmən/

standard /'stændəd/

butter /'bʌtə/





Eel, easy, need, cheese,
piece, peace, complete, she,
only, money, empty, unique

1. Steeee keeeps the cheeese in the freeeser.
2. The word leead usually sounds like feeed or neeed.

I

advantage

I

It, into, inverse,
include, busy,
give, with,
imagine, build,
women, British

Is, England, exam, ill,
imagine, immigration,
in, in front of, include,
India, infant, inform,
information, insect,
inside, instrument,
introduce, isn't, Italy, its

I

B

C

k <u>i</u> t	/kɪt/
b <u>i</u> d	/bɪd/
h <u>y</u> mn	/hɪm/
m <u>i</u> n <u>u</u> te	/'mɪnɪt/

æ

æ

After, and, angry, answer,
apple, ask, angle,
application

æ



tr <u>a</u> p	/træp/
st <u>a</u> mp	/stæmp/
b <u>a</u> d	/bæd/

e

e

enter, end, men, friend,

envelope, seven,

depend, test, death

Many, said, check.

Heaven, breakfast

e

B

C

dress /dres/

bed /bed/

head /hed/

many /'meni/

A



Couple, trouuble, cut,
douuble, monoth,
Shut, muuch, luuck

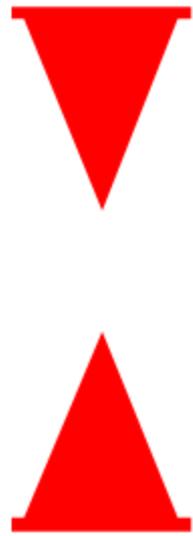
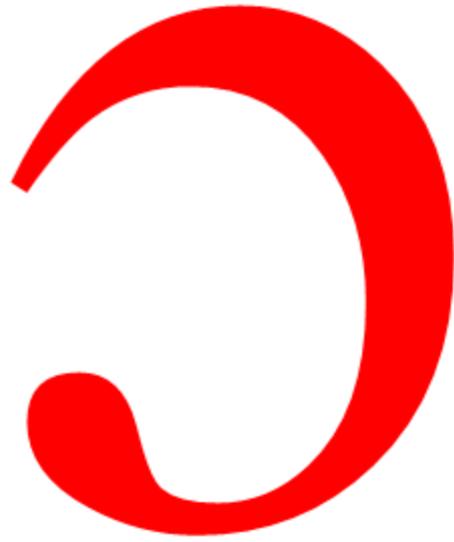
strut /strʌt/

mud /mʌd/

love /lʌv/

blood /blʌd/

come	blood	cut
young	does	must



ɔː

All, also, August, autumn

Orphan, order, four,
horse, store, born,
floor

/ɜː(r)/ and /ɔː(r)/

10

b

b



A lot, wrong, gone, doll

Rob, God, dog

Rock, got, dock

Wash, opposite

lot /lɒt/

odd /ɒd/

wash /wɒʃ/

ax

a:

Arm, artist

Are, art, farm, far,
regard, charge, march

Half

Start, heart

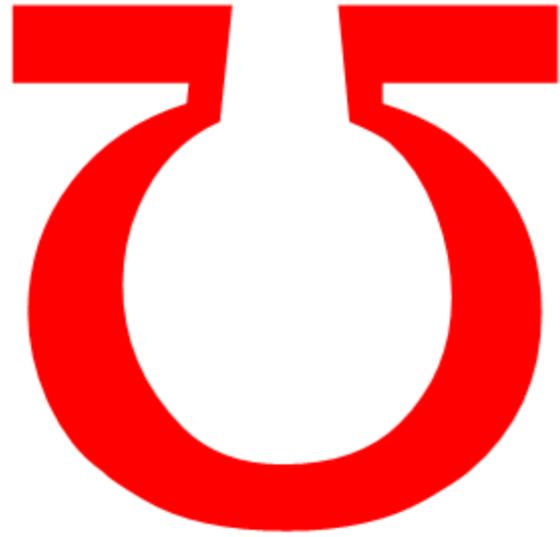
calm, star

UX

UX

M**oo**n, fr**ui**t, t**wo**, d**o**,
bl**ue**, h**u**man, f**oo**d

Sh**oe**, n**ew**, l**o**se,
s**ou**p, sh**oo**t,
shamp**oo**





Put, good, look,
took, would,
should, could,
sugar, cookbooks

fo <u>o</u> t	/fʊt/
pu <u>u</u> t	/pʊt/
g <u>oo</u> d	/gʊd/

3



3:

Early, sure, verb, person, her,
Were, burn, word, bird, heard
Worst, birth, hurt

- The girl heard the first nurse.
- The word learn sounds like turn.

/ɜ:(r)/ and /ɔ:(r)/

Say

They

ate

Great

aid

eight

look at this
/ lʊk æ ðɪs /

e I

ay

ey

a...e

ea

ai

eigh

eɪ

Mate, came, wait,
bay, play, grey, aim,
grade, age, plate,
great, eight

Aim, eight,
april, age,
explain,
neighbor, stay,
today, they

[aɪ]

Fire, tyre, child, while,
smile, style, file, wild
Eye, my, mine

eə

eə

Bear, square, where, hair

- The word `pair` sounds just like `pear`

a **I**

a I

Fire, tyre, child,
while, smile, style,
file, wild
Eye, my, mine

o

I

O I

Boy, point, oil, toy, boil,
employ, voice, choice, noise,
coin, enjoyed, Avoid

royal, enjoy,

The boy enjoy noisy by the voice of the toy

ao

Claudy

aʊ

How, now, town, houses,
sound, ground, south,
count

/ɔɪ/ and /aʊ/

Now, Mrs Brown counting cows coming down the mountain.

le

[ɪ ə] [ɪ ə^r]

Here, hear, beer

Beard, appear, ear

Fear, near, zero

Ə ö



əʊ

Ago, also, boat, bone, broken, closed, clothes, cold, combs, envelope, follow, goes, going, gold, home, hope, joke, no, nose, note, notice, ocean, old, only, open, phone, pillow, potato, tomato, radio, smoke, soap, telephone, video, window, yellow, zero.

Over, only, most, chose, control, so, slow

Sounds of English

VOWELS

ɪ	ʊ	ʌ	ɒ	ə	e	æ		'short'
iː	uː	aː	ɔː	ɜː				'long'
ɪə	ʊə	aɪ	ɔɪ	əʊ	eə	aʊ	eɪ	diphthongs

CONSONANTS

p	t	tʃ	k	f	θ	s	ʃ	voiceless
b	d	dʒ	g	v	ð	z	ʒ	voiced
m	n	ŋ	h	l	r	w	j	

['dʒæmeɪl]

child [tʃaɪld]

wild [waɪld]

milk [mɪlk]

level ['levl]

pupil ['pju:pɪl]

full [fʊl]

real [rɪəl]

small [smɔ:l]

call [kɔ:l]

lunch [lʌntʃ]

several ['sevrəl]

natural ['nætʃrəl]

general ['dʒenərəl]

eɪ

- ['mɛɪtrɪks]
- ['mæksɪml]
- ['mæksɪməm],
- ['mezərəbl]
- ['mezər]
- ['meθəd]

- ✓ **Matrix** ['meɪtrɪks]
- ✓ **Maximal** ['mæksɪml]
- ✓ **Maximum** ['mæksɪmə],
- ✓ **Measurable** ['meʒərəbl]
- ✓ **Measure** ['meʒər]
- ✓ **Method** ['meθəd]

- [æɪ'dʒɪərɪə]
- ['beɪdʒəm]
- ['wʊdnt]
- ['eɪprəl]
- [deɪ]
- ['gʌvənmənt]
- [ˌsʌbstɪ'tjuːʃən]
- [sə'dʒest]

- ✓ **Algeria** [æɪl'dʒɪərɪə]
- ✓ **Belgium** ['beldʒəm]
- ✓ **wouldn't** ['wʊdnt]
- ✓ **April** ['eɪprəl]
- ✓ **day** [deɪ]
- ✓ **government** ['gʌvənmənt]
- ✓ **substitution** [ˌsʌbstɪ'tjuːʃən]
- ✓ **suggest** [sə'dʒest]

- ['mɪrə^r]
- [lɑːdʒ]
- [lɑːf]
- [ɪ'nʌf]
- [ɪm'pɔːtəns]
- [ˌɪnfə'meɪʃən]

- ✓ **mirror** ['mɪrə^r]
- ✓ **large** [lɑːdʒ]
- ✓ **laugh** [lɑːf]
- ✓ **enough** [ɪ'nʌf]
- ✓ **importance** [ɪm'pɔːtəns]
- ✓ **information** [ˌɪnfə'meɪʃən]

- ['hɪstərɪ]
- ['peɪʃənt]
- ['pɔɪznəs]
- [dɪ'zɑːstər]
- ['lɔːjər]
- ['kwɛstʃən]
- [ˌkwɛstʃən'ɛər]

- ✓ **history** ['hɪstərɪ]
- ✓ **patient** ['peɪʃənt]
- ✓ **poisonous** ['pɔɪznəs]
- ✓ **disaster** [dɪ'zɑːstər]
- ✓ **lawyer** ['lɔːjər]
- ✓ **question** ['kwɛstʃən]
- ✓ **questionnaire**
[ˌkwɛstʃə'nɛər]

- [rɪəɪ]
- [rʊm]
- [praɪs]
- ['pɪktʃə^r]
- ['fjuːtʃə^r]
- [traɪ]
- ['neɪtʃə^r]
- ['nætʃrəl]
- ['lɪtərəɪtʃə^r]

- **real** [rɪəl]
- **room** [rʊm]
- **price** [praɪs]
- **picture** ['pɪktʃə^r]
- **future** ['fju:tʃə^r]
- **try** [traɪ]
- **nature** ['neɪtʃə^r]
- **natural** ['nætʃrəl]
- **literature** ['lɪtərɪtʃə^r]

- ['steɪdɪəm]
- ['træfɪk]
- [ɪn'tenʃən]
- ['speʃəlaɪz]
- ['speʃəl]
- [ˌʌndə'laɪn]
- [ˌɪntrə'dʒuːs]
- [ˌɪntrə'dʌkʃən]

- ✓ **stadium** ['steɪdɪəm]
- ✓ **traffic** ['træfɪk]
- ✓ **intention** [ɪn'tenʃən]
- ✓ **specialize** ['speʃəlaɪz]
- ✓ **special** ['speʃəl]
- ✓ **underline** [ˌʌndə'laɪn]
- ✓ **introduce** [ˌɪntrə'djuːs]
- ✓ **introduction** [ˌɪntrə'dʌkʃən]

- [prə'vɪʒən]
- ['vɪʒən]
- ['levl]
- [ɪl]
- ['leɪtə^r]
- ['pɑ:tɪ]
- ['laɪbrərɪ]

- **provision** [prə'vɪʒən]
- **Vision** ['vɪʒən]
- **level** ['levl]
- **ill** [ɪl]
- **later** ['leɪtə^r]
- **party** ['pɑ:tɪ]
- **library** ['laɪbrəri]

- ['mju:zɪk]
- [mju:'zɪʃən]
- ['feɪməs]
- [pju:ə^r]
- ['lɪtl]
- ['lɪsn]
- [wɜ:d]
- [wɜ:ld]

- ✓ **music** ['mju:zɪk]
- ✓ **musician** [mju:'zɪʃən]
- ✓ **famous** ['feɪməs]
- ✓ **pure** [pjʊə^r]
- ✓ **little** ['lɪtl]
- ✓ **listen** ['lɪsn]
- ✓ **word** [wɜ:d]
- ✓ **world** [wɜ:ld]

- ['wedɪŋ]
- ['mɒnɪŋ]
- ['dʒænjʊərɪ]
- [beɪʒ]
- [peɪdʒ]
- [wɪl]

- ✓ **wedding** ['wedɪŋ]
- ✓ **morning** ['mɔːnɪŋ]
- ✓ **January** ['dʒænjuəri]
- ✓ **beige** [beɪʒ]
- ✓ **page** [peɪdʒ]
- ✓ **will** [wɪl]

- [ɪlek'trɪsətɪ]
- ['dʒʌstɪs]
- [ˌdʒʌstɪfɪ'keɪʃən]
- [æt]
- [kaɪnd]
- ['kaɪndnɪs]
- [ˌpɒlɪ'nəʊmɪəl]

- ✓ **electricity** [ɪlek'trɪsətɪ]
- ✓ **justice** ['dʒʌstɪs]
- ✓ **justification**
[ˌdʒʌstɪfɪ'keɪʃən]
- ✓ **at** [æt]
- ✓ **kind** [kaɪnd]
- ✓ **kindness** ['kaɪndnɪs]
- ✓ **polynomial** [ˌpɒlɪ'nəʊmɪəl]

- ['nɒlɪdʒ]
- ['leɪdɪ]
- [kəʊm]
- ['læŋgwɪdʒ]
- [sə'fɪʃənt]
- [fɔːs]
- [lɔː]
- ['leɪzɪ]

- ✓ **knowledge** ['nɒlɪdʒ]
- ✓ **lady** ['leɪdɪ]
- ✓ **comb** [kəʊm]
- ✓ **language** ['læŋgwɪdʒ]
- ✓ **sufficient** [sə'fɪʃənt]
- ✓ **force** [fɔːs]
- ✓ **law** [lɔː]
- ✓ **lazy** ['leɪzɪ]

- ['lesn]
- ['seʃən]
- ['mæksɪml]
- [ˌmæksɪmɑɪ'zeɪʃən]
- [mɑːtʃ]
- ['mesɪdʒ]

- ✓ **lesson** ['lesn]
- ✓ **session** ['seʃən]
- ✓ **maximal** ['mæksɪml]
- ✓ **maximization**
[,mæksɪmɑɪ'zeɪʃən]
- ✓ **march** [mɑ:tʃ]
- ✓ **message** ['mesɪdʒ]

- [mə'tɪərɪəl]
- [ˌmæθə'mæ'tɪks]
- [ˌmæθəmə'tɪʃən]
- ['sɪstəm]
- ['meɜə^r]

- ✓ **material** [mə'tɪəriəl]
- ✓ **mathematics** [ˌmæθə'mætɪks]
- ✓ **mathematician**
[ˌmæθəmə'tɪʃən]
- ✓ **system** ['sɪstəm]
- ✓ **measure** ['meɪʒər]

- ['prɒbləm]
- ['speɪʃəs]
- [ɪn'tɪəriəʳ]
- [ɪk'stɪəriəʳ]
- [ˌkɒnsəl'teɪʃən]
- ['kʊdnt]

- ✓ **problem** ['prɒbləm]
- ✓ **spacious** ['speɪʃəs]
- ✓ **interior** [ɪn'tɪəriə^r]
- ✓ **exterior** [ɪk'stɪəriə^r]
- ✓ **consultation**
[,kɒnsəl'teɪʃən]
- ✓ **couldn't** ['kʊdnt]

- [wʊd]
- [ʃʊd]
- [bən]
- [pə'teɪtəʊ]
- [gɜ:l]
- [fɜ:st]
- [nɪə^r]
- [hɪə^r]

- ✓ **would** [wʊd]
- ✓ **should** [ʃʊd]
- ✓ **bone** [bəʊn]
- ✓ **potato** [pə'teɪtəʊ]
- ✓ **girl** [gɜ:l]
- ✓ **first** [fɜ:st]
- ✓ **near** [nɪə^r]
- ✓ **here** [hɪə^r]

- [prə'dju:s]
- ['pɪknɪk]
- [mɪlk]
- ['sevrəl]
- [pɑ:k]
- [kɑ:r]
- ['mɪtɪŋ]
- ['mɪnɪstrɪ]
- ['mɪnɪməm]

- ✓ **produce** [prə'dju:s]
- ✓ **picnic** ['pɪknɪk]
- ✓ **milk** [mɪlk]
- ✓ **several** ['sevrəl]
- ✓ **park** [pɑ:k]
- ✓ **car** [kɑ:r]
- ✓ **meeting** ['mi:tɪŋ]
- ✓ **ministry** ['mɪnɪstrɪ]
- ✓ **minimum** ['mɪnɪməm]

- ['peɪpə^r]
- [pə'tɪkjʊlə^r]
- [pə'tɪkjʊləli]
- ['fræŋkli]
- ['prɒpəti]
- [ki:]
- [ðeɪ]

- ✓ **paper** ['peɪpə^r]
- ✓ **particular** [pə'tɪkjʊlə^r]
- ✓ **particularly** [pə'tɪkjʊləli]
- ✓ **frankly** ['fræŋkli]
- ✓ **property** ['prɒpətɪ]
- ✓ **key** [ki:]
- ✓ **they** [ðeɪ]

patient ['peɪʃənt]

poisonous ['pɔɪznəs]

disaster [dɪ'zɑːstər]

lawyer ['lɔːjər]

question ['kwestʃən]

questionnaire [ˌkwestʃə'nɛər] noun

Some vowels

Long vowels	Short vowels	Diphthongs 2 vowels
eat	It, ten,	Day, buy
car	Bat	Boy
more	Much	No
too	Not	Now
word	Put	Ear
	Again	There
	happy	sure

[eɪ], [ə], [aɪ], [æ], [ɔɪ], ...

Age, able, asia, aid

About, ago, animal, again, appear

Arm, artist

After, and, angry, answer, apple,

ask, angle, application

All, also, August, autumn

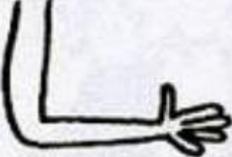
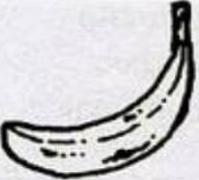
Ago, all, able, above, absent, accident, action, add, advice, afraid, Africa, after, afternoon, again, age, allow, almost, alphabet, also, always, and, angry, animal, another, answer, any, apartment, Appear, apple, application, april, arabic, army, arrive, artist, asia, ask, at, avoid

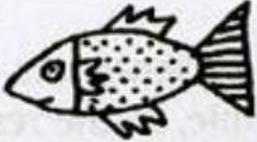
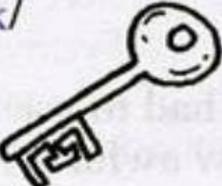
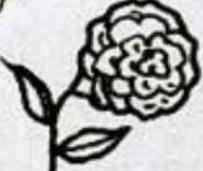
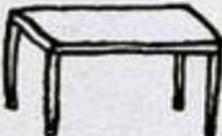
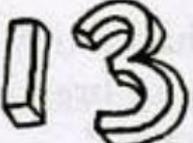
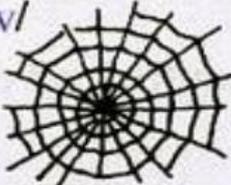
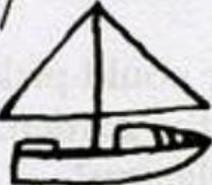
Read the following words

Apple, egg, insect, orange,
umbrella, book, arm, earth, eagle,
cheese, Order, two, boy, coin,
oval, banana, no, table, eight, fly,
ear, hair, bird, chair, dog, fish,
girl, heart, jar, key, live, money,
nine, ring, pear, rose, Sister, fish,
television, mother, thirteen, volcano,
work, yes, zoo

Introduction to phonemic symbols

The phonemic alphabet

<p>/æ/</p>  <p>apple</p>	<p>/ɛ/</p>  <p>egg</p>	<p>/ɪ/</p>  <p>insect</p>	<p>/ɒ/</p>  <p>orange</p>	<p>/ʌ/</p>  <p>umbrella</p>	<p>/ʊ/</p>  <p>book</p>
<p>/ɑ:/</p>  <p>arm</p>	<p>/ɜ:/</p>  <p>earth</p>	<p>/i:/</p>  <p>eagle</p>	<p>/ɔ:/</p>  <p>organ</p>	<p>/u:/</p>  <p>two</p>	
<p>/eɪ/</p>  <p>aeroplane</p>	<p>/ɪə/</p>  <p>ear</p>	<p>/aɪ/</p>  <p>eye</p>	<p>/eɪ/</p>  <p>eight</p>	<p>/ɔɪ/</p>  <p>coin</p>	
<p>/əʊ/</p>  <p>oval</p>	<p>/aʊ/</p>  <p>owl</p>	<p>/ə/</p>  <p>banana</p>			

<p>/b/</p>  <p>bird</p>	<p>/tʃ/</p>  <p>chair</p>	<p>/d/</p>  <p>dog</p>	<p>/f/</p>  <p>fish</p>	<p>/g/</p>  <p>girl</p>	<p>/h/</p>  <p>heart</p>
<p>/dʒ/</p>  <p>jar</p>	<p>/k/</p>  <p>key</p>	<p>/l/</p>  <p>leaf</p>	<p>/m/</p>  <p>monkey</p>	<p>/n/</p>  <p>nine</p>	<p>/ŋ/</p>  <p>ring</p>
<p>/p/</p>  <p>pear</p>	<p>/r/</p>  <p>rose</p>	<p>/s/</p>  <p>sofa</p>	<p>/ʃ/</p>  <p>sheep</p>	<p>/z/</p>  <p>television</p>	<p>/t/</p>  <p>table</p>
<p>/ð/</p>  <p>mother</p>	<p>/θ/</p>  <p>thirteen</p>	<p>/v/</p>  <p>volcano</p>	<p>/w/</p>  <p>web</p>	<p>/j/</p>  <p>yacht</p>	<p>/z/</p>  <p>zebra</p>

Listen and speak

/ 'lɪsn ən spi:k /

at	ate
mad	made
win	wine
pin	pine
hid	hide
not	note

Won, want

won't = will not

look at this

/ lʊk æ ðɪs /

1. **Eye**

2. **Peace**

3. **breakfast**

4. **Said**

5. **high**

They

Great

aid

eight

breakfast ['brekfəst]

ʌ

æ

Cut
and
Cat

luck	lack
fun	fan
but	bat
mud	mad
ton	tan
dumb	dam
much	match

1. *International* [,ɪntə'næʃnəl]
2. *internationalist* [,ɪntə'næʃnəlɪst]
3. *internationalization* [,ɪntə,næʃnəlaɪ'zeɪʃən]
4. *Unemployment* ['ʌnɪm'plɔɪmənt]
5. *Try* [traɪ]
6. *future* ['fju:tʃə]
7. *satisfy* ['sætɪsfaɪ],
8. *technique* [tek'nɪk]
9. *generalization* [,dʒenərəlaɪ'zeɪʃən]
10. *toward* [tə'wɔ:d]
11. *clothes* [kləʊðz],
12. *supporter* [sə'pɔ:tə]
13. *opponent* [ə'pəʊnənt],
14. *summarize* ['sʌməraɪz]
15. *procedure* [prə'si:dʒə]

1. *International* [,ɪntə'næʃnəl]
2. *internationalist* [,ɪntə'næʃnəlɪst]
3. *internationalization* [,ɪntə,næʃnəlaɪ'zeɪʃən]
4. *Unemployment* ['ʌnɪm'plɔɪmənt]
5. *Try* [traɪ]
6. *future* ['fju:tʃə]
7. *satisfy* ['sætɪsfaɪ],
8. *technique* [tek'nɪk]
9. *generalization* [,dʒenərəlaɪ'zeɪʃən]
10. *toward* [tə'wɔ:d]
11. *clothes* [kləʊðz],
12. *supporter* [sə'pɔ:tə]
13. *opponent* [ə'pəʊnənt],
14. *summarize* ['sʌməraɪz]
15. *procedure* [prə'si:dʒə]

Try again. Don't afraid !

Try again. Don't afraid !

1. [,ɪntə'næʃnəl]
2. [,ɪntə'næʃnəlɪst]
3. [,ɪntə,næʃnələɪ'zeɪʃən]
4. ['ʌnɪm'plɔɪmənt]
5. [traɪ]
6. ['fju:tʃəʳ]
7. ['sætɪsfaɪ],
8. [tek'nɪk]
9. [,dʒenərələɪ'zeɪʃən]
10. [tə'wɔɪd]
11. [kləʊðz],
12. [sə'pɔ:təʳ]
13. [ə'pəʊnənt],
14. ['sʌməraɪz]
15. [prə'sɪdʒəʳ]

1. [,ɪntə'næʃnəl]
2. [,ɪntə'næʃnəlɪst]
3. [,ɪntə,næʃnələɪ'zeɪʃən]
4. ['ʌnɪm'plɔɪmənt]
5. [traɪ]
6. ['fju:tʃəʳ]
7. ['sætɪsfaɪ],
8. [tek'nɪk]
9. [,dʒenərələɪ'zeɪʃən]
10. [tə'wɔɪd]
11. [kləʊðz],
12. [sə'pɔ:təʳ]
13. [ə'pəʊnənt],



- **Approximation**
- **...pproximation**

Listen and speak

/ 'lɪsn ən spi:k /

vitality	Good news
To repair	Explosion
To desire	scandal
artificial	guardian
strike	research
horrible	investigation

Listen and speak

/ 'lɪsn ən spi:k /



This is a rainbow.

rainbow

Drinks

Drinks



tea



coffee



milk



fruit juice



beer



wine



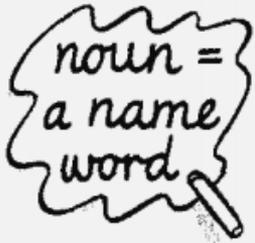
mineral
water

Would you like to drink something?

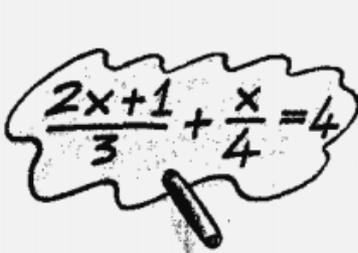
**Tea, coffee, milk, juice
Mineral water**

Subjects

Subjects



English



mathematics
(maths)



art



history



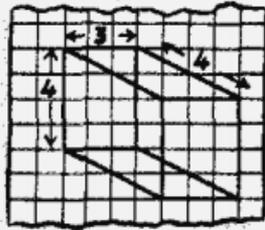
geography



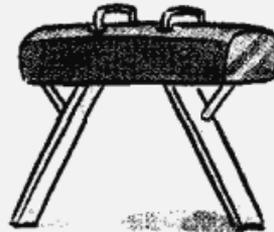
biology



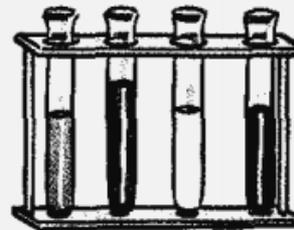
information
technology



technical
drawing



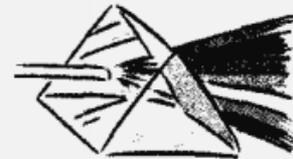
physical
education



chemistry



languages



physics



music

Sociology

Aa



knapsack



apple



cap



lamp

Fermer



knapsack



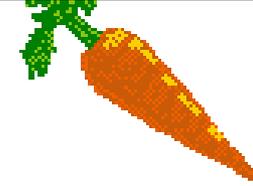
grapes



car



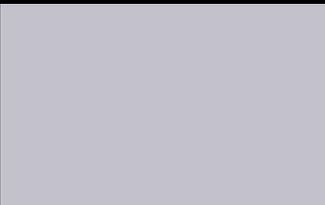
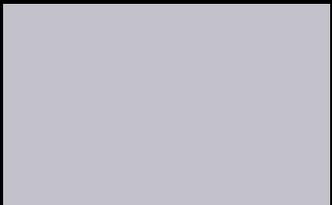
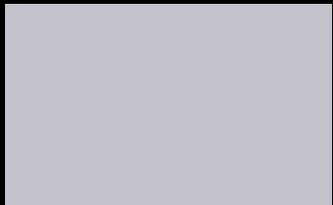
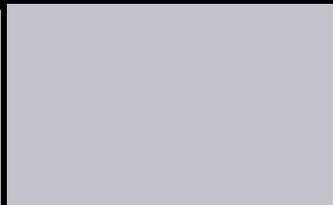
salt



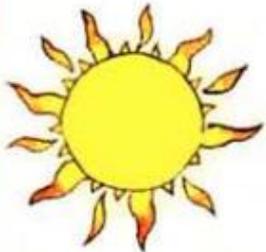
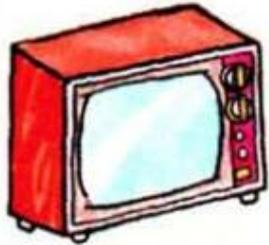
carrot



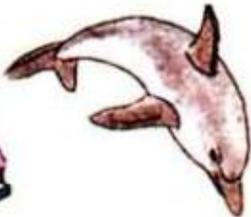
ambulance



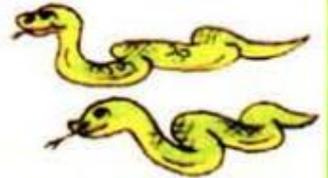
A



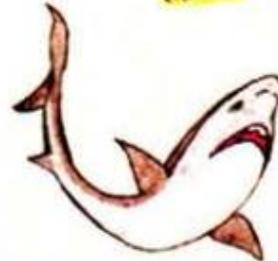
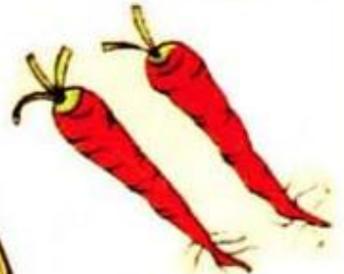
Jane



B



Jill



possessive [pə'zesɪv]

factor ['fæktər]

Panamanian [ˌpænə'meɪniən]

Northumbrian [nɔː'θʌmbriən]

functionalist ['fʌŋkʃnəlɪst]

fundament ['fʌndəmənt]

disintoxication

[dɪsɪn,tɒksɪ'keɪʃən]

disingenuousness

[ˌdɪsɪn'dʒenjʊəsni:s]

disintermediation

[dɪs'ɪntə,mɪ'dɪ'eɪʃən]

demisemi-quaver

['demɪsemi,kweɪvər]

eiderdown ['aɪdədaʊn]

Egyptian [i'dʒɪpʃən]

Egyptologist [ˌiːdʒɪp'tɒlədʒɪst]

egregious [ɪ'grɪ:dʒəs]

dissolution [ˌdɪsə'lu:ʃən]

dissimulation [dɪ,sɪmjʊ'leɪʃən]

natural ['nætʃrəl]

geostationary

[ˌdʒi:əʊ'steɪʃənəri]

geoscience [ˌdʒi:əʊ'saɪəns]

microphotography

['maɪkrəʊfə'tɒgrəfi]

pressurization

[ˌpreʃərəɪ'zeɪʃən]

businesswoman

['bɪznɪs,wʊmən]

Smithsonian Institution

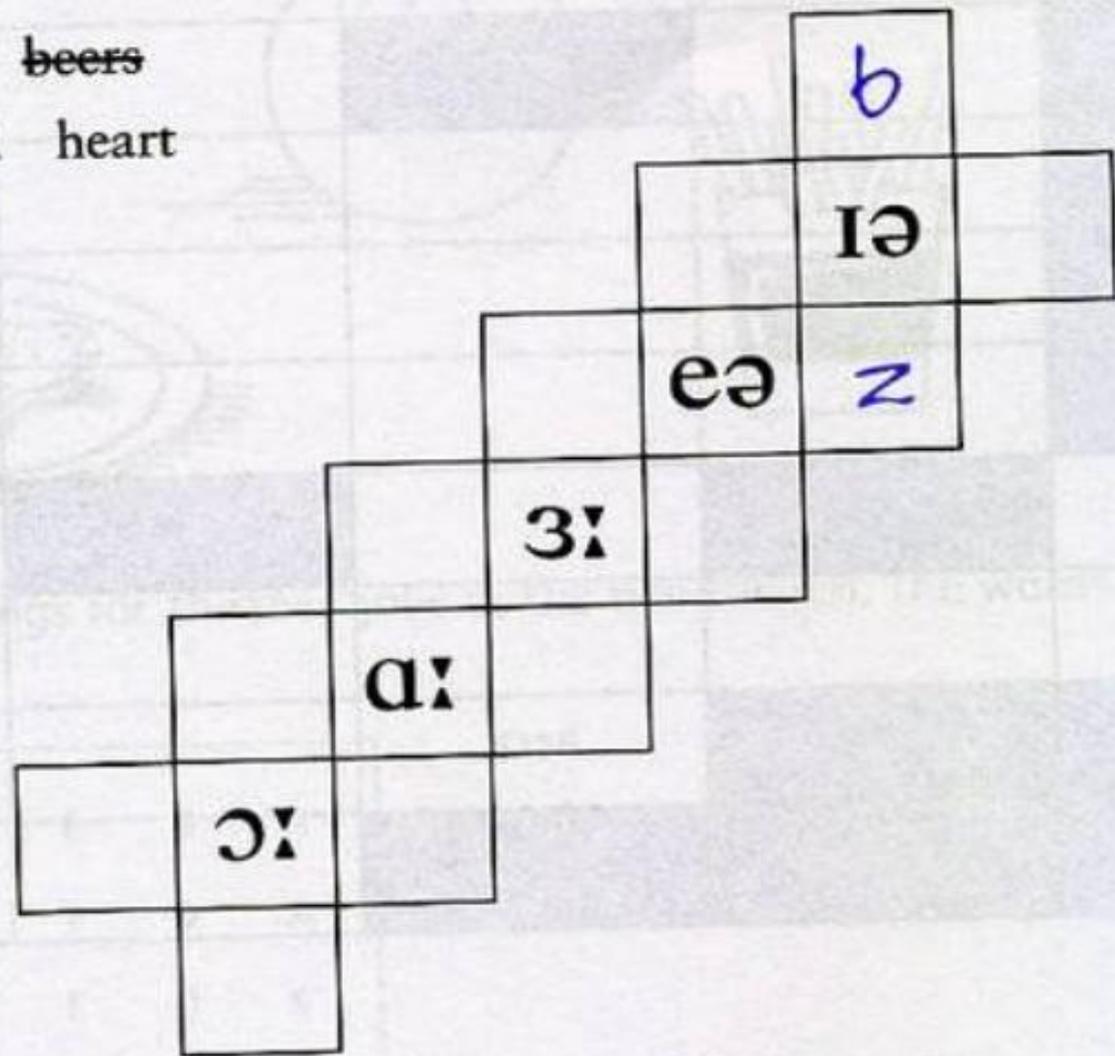
smokestack ['sməʊkstæk]

supranationalism

[ˌsuːprə'næʃnəlɪzəm]

guardroom ['gɑ:drʊm]

port hairs bears ~~beers~~
heard card beard heart
hers court



I

i

it	eat
rich	reach
sit	seat
fit	feat
dip	deep
lip	leap
Tim	Team
Hill	Heal
Sin	Seen
Live <small>verb</small>	leave

I

lip
it
him
sit
list
live
Thin
his

i:

ski
people
key
believe
receive

ski [ski:]

people ['pi:pl]

key [ki:]

believe [bɪ'li:v]

receive [rɪ'si:v]

e and eɪ

sell	sail
pen	pain
tell	tail
letter	later
Test	Taste
Wet	Wait
get	gate

Listen and speak

/ 'lɪsn ən spi:k /

Boat, vote

Hit, heat

So, show

Sung, sun

Wine, vine

Wet, wait

aɪ

æ

right	rat
hide	had
side	sad
bike	back
height	hat
fight	fat
mice	mass
mine	man
fine	fan

height [haɪt]

d and t

Opened

worked

Build	Built
Wide	White
Weighed	Weight
Heard	Hurt
Down	Town
Dry	Try
Send	Sent

look at this

/ lʊk æ ðɪs /

They, day

Page, paid

Wrote, road

B**e**t

B**e**lt

L**e**t

S**e**t

R**e**d

m**e**n, ...

m**e**t

m**e**at

m**a**te

list

least

last

bay

bee

beer

bit

beat

bet

look at this

/ lʊk æ ɔ̃ɪs /

man	men	mean
heard	head	had
sit	set	Sat

old	hold
art	heart
force	horse
sheet	heat

sit
set
sat

sip
sep
sap
sup

mate	Might	meet
bay	buy	boy
tip	Type	Tape
Bye	by	buy

quit	quite	quiet
they	key	

quit [kwɪt] quite   [kwaɪt] quiet ['kwaɪət]

teach [ti:tʃ], pret, ptp **taught**

think [θɪŋk] vb: pret, ptp **thought**

buy [baɪ], pret, ptp **bought**

1 bath	3 thin	5 thought
2 through	4 thick	6 death
1 use	3 Free	5 breeding
2 taught	4 clothed	6 These are

1 boys /ɔɪ/, bows /aʊ/
2 noise /ɔɪ/
3 found /aʊ/

4 point /ɔɪ/
5 how /aʊ/
6 boil /ɔɪ/

7 hour /aʊ/
8 flower /aʊ/
9 enjoy /ɔɪ/

sort	short
suit	shoot
catch	cash
choose	shoes

math
path
bath
both
south
north
fifth

Choose and chose

choose [tʃuːz]

Listen and speak

/ 'lɪsn ən spi:k /



Couple, trouble, cut,
double, month,
Shut, much, luck

strut /strʌt/
mud /mʌd/
love /lʌv/
blood /blʌd/

co <u>m</u> e	bl <u>oo</u> d	cu <u>t</u>
yo <u>u</u> ng	do <u>e</u> s	mu <u>s</u> t

Listen and speak

/ 'lɪsn ən spi:k /



Put, good, look,
took, would,
should, could,
sugar, cookbooks

foot /fʊt/

put /pʊt/

good /gʊd/

about

ə



about /ə'baʊt/

common /'kɒmən/

standard /'stændəd/

butter /'bʌtə/

approximation

enter, end, men, friend,
envelope, seven,
depend, test, death
Many, said, check.
Heaven, breakfast

e



d <u>re</u> ss	/dres/
b <u>e</u> d	/bed/
h <u>ea</u> d	/hed/
m <u>a</u> ny	/'meni/

Give the **phonetic** of the following

Binomial		Euclidean	
Countable		numerical	
Fixed		probability	

Re-write the following words in ordinary English

ɪ'nɪʃəl		stɒ'kæstɪk	
'spektrəl		strʌktʃəʳ	
skwɛəʳ		'steɪʃənərɪ	

look at this

/ lʊk æ ɔ̃ɪs /

man	men	mean
heard	head	had
sit	set	Sat

old	hold
art	heart
force	horse
sheet	heat

sit
set
sat

sip
sep
sap
sup

mate	Might	meet
bay	buy	boy
tip	Type	Tape
Bye	by	buy

quit	quite	quiet
they	key	

quit [kwɪt] **quite** [kwaɪt] **quiet** ['kwaɪət]

teach [ti:tʃ], pret, ptp **taught**

think [θɪŋk] vb: pret, ptp **thought**

buy [baɪ], pret, ptp **bought**

1 bath	3 thin	5 thought
2 through	4 thick	6 death
1 use	3 Free	5 breeding
2 taught	4 clothed	6 These are

1 boys /ɔɪ/, bows /aʊ/	4 point /ɔɪ/	7 hour /aʊ/
2 noise /ɔɪ/	5 how /aʊ/	8 flower /aʊ/
3 found /aʊ/	6 boil /ɔɪ/	9 enjoy /ɔɪ/

sort	short
suit	shoot
catch	cash
choose	shoes

math
path
bath
both
south
north
fifth

Choose and chose

choose [tʃuːz]

look at this
/ lʊk æ ðɪs /

Words with
silent letters

Words with silent letters

Daughter, opera, listen,
could, answer, comb ,
night, might, wrong,
white, two, yoghurt,
Cheque, fruit, suit, friend.

Homegenous

To, two, too

Two to two

[d, t]

Build, built

Wide, white

Weighed, weight

Heard, hurt

Down, town

Dry, try

Send, sent

Boat, vote

Hit, heat

So, show

Sung, sun

Wine, vine

Wet, wait

They, day
Page, paid
Wrote, road

met	meat	mate
list	least	last
bay	bee	beer
bit	beat	bet

man	men	mean
heard	head	had
mate	met	meat
sit	set	sat

old	hold
art	heart
force	horse
sheet	heat

heard	head	had
mate	met	meat
sit	set	sat

at	ate
mad	made
win	wine
pin	pine
hid	hide
not	note

mate	Might	meet
bay	buy	boy
tip Bye	Type by	Tape buy

quit	quite	quiet
they	key	

Take : from here
to there

Bring : from there to here

1 bath	3 thin	5 thought
2 through	4 thick	6 death
1 use	3 Free	5 breeding
2 taught	4 clothed	6 These are

1 boys /ɔɪ/, bows /aʊ/	4 point /ɔɪ/	7 hour /aʊ/
2 noise /ɔɪ/	5 how /aʊ/	8 flower /aʊ/
3 found /aʊ/	6 boil /ɔɪ/	9 enjoy /ɔɪ/

sort	short
suit	shoot
catch	cash
choose	shoes

math
path
bath
both
south
north
fifth

Read the following words

math

mat

path

pat

bath

bat

both

boat

tenth

tent

fourth

fort

eighth

ate

What's the time? Yes, of course! Thanks a lot!
See you later! Pleased to meet you! Can't you hear me?
A piece of cake. The shop was closed. It's time to go.
What do you do? Where do you live? Give me a call.
Are you coming? Do you like it? Is he happy?

Read the following words

**so, to, on, honey, horse,
women, borough**

Read the following words

Buy, bye, by	Weak, week	Too, two	Sun, son
Write, right	Weigh, way	Piece, peace	

He **can** talk, he **can't** talk

- The word **island** sounds like **highland** because we don't say the letter **s** in this word.
- The word **iron** sounds like **lion** because we don't say the letter **r** in this word.
- The word **phrase** sounds like **days**.
- The word **tongue** sounds like **young**.

b	iː	tʃ
iː		iː
n	iː	z

Beach, bean

Knees, cheese

Read the following words :

Ruler

Beet

Sweat

Ice

Certify

Human

Eye, eyes

Situation

Sorry

Studies

Negative

Form

Go

Gone

Four

true

Good

Family

Soon

Invitation

For

Force

Suitcase

Fly

Flew

Finance

Final

Unite

Friday

Fragile

Flour

Revise

Wheat

Rash

wheelchair

International [ˌɪntəˈnæʃnəl], **internationalist**

[ˌɪntəˈnæʃnəlɪst], **internationalization**

[ˌɪntəˌnæʃnəlaɪˈzeɪʃən]

Unemployment [ˈʌnɪmˈplɔɪmənt], **Try** [traɪ], **future**

[ˈfjuːtʃəʳ], **satisfy** [ˈsætɪsfaɪ], **technique** [tekˈniːk],

generalization [ˌdʒenərəlaɪˈzeɪʃən], **toward** [təˈwɔːd],

clothes [kləʊðz], **supporter** [səˈpɔːtəʳ], **opponent**

[əˈpəʊnənt], **summarize** [ˈsʌməraɪz], **procedure** [prəˈsiːdʒəʳ],

proposition [ˌprɒpəˈzɪʃən], **demonstration** [ˌdemənˈstreɪʃən],

throughout [θruːˈaʊt], **daily** [ˈdeɪlɪ], **neighbour, neighbor**

US [ˈneɪbəʳ], **several** [ˈsevrəl], **juice** [dʒuːs], **piece** [piːs],

advice [ədˈvaɪs], **exercise** [ˈeksəsaɪz], **sentence**

[ˈsentəns], **difference** [ˈdɪfrəns], **place** [pleɪs], **nicely** [ˈnaɪslɪ],

goal [gəʊl], **necessity** [nɪˈsesɪtɪ], **communication**

[kəˌmjuːnɪˈkeɪʃən], **community** [kəˈmjuːnɪtɪ].

Greek alphabet notations

Lower case Greek alphabet

name	symbol	name	symbol	name	symbol
alpha	α	iota	ι	rho	ρ
beta	β	kappa	κ	sigma	σ
gamma	γ	lambda	λ	tau	τ
delta	δ	mu	μ	upsilon	υ
epsilon	ϵ	nu	ν	phi	ϕ
zeta	ζ	xi	ξ	chi	χ
eta	η	omicron	o	psi	ψ
theta	θ	pi	π	omega	ω

Greek Alphabet

[gri:k] ['ælfəbet]

alpha ['ælfə]	iota [aɪ'əʊtə]	['rəʊ]
beta ['bi:tə]	kappa	sigma [sɪgmə]
gamma ['gæmə]	lambda	tau [təʊ]
delta ['deltə]	mu [mjʊ:]	upsilon ['ʌpsɪ,lɒn]
epsilon [epsɪlən]	nu [nju:]	phi [faɪ]
zeta ['zi:tə]	xi [zaɪ]	chi []
eta ['i:tə]	omicron [əʊ'maɪkrɒn]	psi ['psɪ]
Theta ['θi:tə]	pi [paɪ]	omega ['əʊmɪgə]



Math dictionary

Level one

NEW EDITION

Oxford Basic Mathematics dictionary

- Helps you learn the most important words by English and French.
- Learn the most important words and how to use them.
- Phonetic symbols involving the Mathematical notions

Bellaouar Djamel *

Mathematics department, University of
Guelma

MATHEMATISCHES SEMINAR, BERIECH II ZU KIEL GERMANY

NOVEMBER - 2012



Read the following words

A

A set equipped with a distance, *un ensemble muni par une distance*

Abel ['eɪbəl] , *Abel* ^m

Abelian [ə'bi:liən] adjective , *abélien* ^{adj}

Abelian group, *groupe abélien* (commutatif)

Abelian law, *loi commutative*

Above [ə'boʊv], *au-dessus*

Absolute ['æbsəlu:t], *absolu(e)*

Absolute value, *valeur absolue*.

Absolutely [ˌæbsəˈlu:tli] , *absolument, absolument*
convergente (intégrale, série)

Add [æd], *ajouter*

Admit [ədˈmɪt], *admettre*

Algebra [ˈældʒɪbrə], *algèbre*

Algebra : the branch of mathematics that **deals** with variables or unknowns representing the arithmetic numbers.

Algebraic [ˌældʒɪˈbreɪɪk] adj, *algébrique* ^{adj}

Algebraic multiplicity, algebraic structure, algebraic and topological structure

Algorithm [ˈælgəˌrɪðəm], *algorithme*

Algorithm : a rule or procedure used to solve a mathematical problem

Analogous ^{adj} [əˈnæləgəs], *analogue* ^{adj}

Analysis [əˈnæləsɪs], pl **analyses** [əˈnælɪsɪz],
analyse ^f

Answer ['ɑ:nsə], *réponse*^f, *solution*^f

Antisymmetric [ˌæntɪsɪ'metrɪk], *antisymétrique* adj

Application [ˌæplɪ'keɪʃən], *application*^f

Appreciable [ə'pri:ʃəbl]

Applied [ə'plaɪd], *appliqué*

Applied Linear Algebra, *algèbre linéaire appliqué*

Approach [ə'prəʊtʃ], approach value, *valeur*
approchée adj

Approximation [əˌprɒksɪ'meɪʃən], *approximation*^f

Arbitrary ['ɑ:bɪtrəri] adj, *arbitraire*

Argument ['ɑ:gjʊmənt], *argument*^m

Argument, the argument of a complex number

Arithmetic [ə'riθmətik], *arithmétique*

Article ['ɑ:tɪkl], *article*^m

Associative [ə'səʊʃiətɪv], Mathematics, *associatif-ive*

Associativity, *associativité*,

Assume [ə'sju:m], *supposer, supposons que*,

Assumption [ə'sʌmpʃən], *hypothèse*

Assertion [ə'sɜ:ʃən] *affirmation*^m, *assertion*^m

Asymptotic, *asymptotique*

Axiom ['æksɪəm], *axiome*^m

Axiom : a statement regarded as self-evident; accepted without proof

B

Ball [bɔ:l], *boule*^f

Bar [bɑ:r], *barre*^f

Bar, we say X bar, *On dit X barre.*

Basic ['beɪsɪk], *fondamental*^{adj}, *essentiel*^{adj}, *élémentaire*^{adj}

Basis ['beɪsɪs] pl **bases**, *base*^f

Because [bi'kɒz], *puisque, car, comme*

Belong (s) [bi'lɒŋ], *appartenir à*

Best [best], *le meilleur, la meilleure*

Best approximation, *la meilleure approximation*

Bibliography [ˌbɪblɪ'ɒgrəfɪ], *bibliographie*^f, *référence*^f

Bijjective [baɪ'dʒektɪv], *bijectif*

Bijective function

Bilinear, *bilinéaire*, **Math.** *Application, forme bilinéaire pour un couple de variables*, *linéaire par rapport aux deux variables.*

Binary ['baɪnəri], *inaire*

Binary relation, *relation binaire*

Binomial [baɪ'nəʊmiəl], *Mathematics*, *binôme* ^m

Binomial : an expression with two terms

Bisection [baɪ'sekʃən], *division en deux parties égales*, *bissection* ^f

Bnach space, *un espace de Banach*

Body ['bɒdi], *Field, corps* ^m

Bound, [baʊnd], **bounds**, [baʊndz], *limite(s)*^{f(pl)}, *bornes*

Boundary ['baʊndəri], *limite*^f, *frontière*^f

Boundless ['baʊndlɪs], *infini*, *illimité*

Branch [brɑːntʃ], *branche*^f

By using the ..., *En utilisant ...*

C

Calculate ['kælkjələɪt], *calculer*^v

Calculus, pl **calculuses** ['kælkjʊləs], *calcul*^m

Canonical [kə'nɒnɪkəl], *canonique*^{adj}

Chapter ['tʃæptər], *chapitre*^m

characteristic [ˌkærɪktə'rɪstɪk], *caractéristique*^{adj}

characterization [ˌkærɪktərəɪ'zeɪʃən], *interprétation*,
caractérisation^f

Closed [kləʊzd], *fermé*^{adj}

Closure ['kləʊzə], *fermeture*^f
coefficient [,kəʊɪ'fɪʃənt] , *coefficient*^m
cofactor ['kəʊ,fæktə], *comatrice, cofacteur*^m
Collection [kə'lekʃən], *collection*^f
Column ['kɒləm], *colonne*^f
Combination [,kɒmbɪ'neɪʃən], *combinaison*^f
comment ['kɒment] , *commentaire*^m, *remarque*^f
Comments about the chapter **II**, *commentaires
sur le chapitre II*

Commutative ^{adj} [kə'mju:tətɪv], *lois* ^{fp} *commutatives*

Compact [kəm'pækt], *compact* ^{adj}

Compact self-adjoint operators on a Hilbert space

Comparison [kəm'pærɪsn], *comparaison* ^f

Complete [kəm'pli:t], *complet (-ète)* ^f, *un espace complet*

Complex ['kɒmpleks], *complexe* ^{adj}

Component [kəm'pəʊnənt], *composant*

Components [kəm'pəʊnənts], *les composants de X*

Composite ['kɒmpəzɪt], *Mathematics, composé*

Composite number, not prime, *nombre composé*

Compute [kəm'pjuz], *Calculer*

Concept ['kɒnsɛpt], *notion*^f, *idée*^f, *concept*^m

Conclusion [kən'kluːʒən], *conclusion*^f, *fin*^f

Condition [kən'dɪʃən], *condition*^f

Conjecture [kən'dʒektʃər], *conjecture*^f

Conjugate ['kɒndʒʊgeɪt], *conjuguée* (*matrice*)

Conjugate or Dual of an Operator

Constant ['kɒnstənt], *constante*^f, *un nombre constant*^{adj}

Contained [kən'teɪnd], contained in A.

Containing A

Continuous [kən'tɪnjʊəs], *continu(e)*

Contraction [kən'trækʃən], *contraction*^f

Contradiction [ˌkɒntrəˈdɪkʃən], *contradiction* ^f

Converge [kənˈvɜːdʒ], *converger* ^{verbe}

Convergence [kənˈvɜːdʒəns], *convergence* ^f

Convergence and Continuity

Convergent [kənˈvɜːdʒənt], *convergent(e)* ^{adj}

Conversely [kɒnˈvɜːslɪ], *inversement*

Convex [ˈkɒnˈveks], *convexe*

Coordinate [kəʊˈɔːdɪnɪt], Mathematics, *coordonné*

Corollary [kəˈrɒləri], *corollaire* ^m

Cosine [ˈkəʊsaɪn], *cosinus*

Countable [ˈkaʊntəbl] adjective , *dénombrable*

Countable dense subset, sous-ensemble dense dénombrable

Couple [ˈkʌpl], *couple* ^m

Course [kɔːs], *cours* nom masculin

Criterion [kraɪˈtɪəriən] noun, pl **criteria** or **criteria**

[kraɪˈtɪəriə], *critère* ^m

Cubic [ˈkjuːbɪk], *cubique*

D

Decomposition [ˌdi:kɒmpə'zɪʃən], *décomposition* ^f

Decreasing [di:'kriːsɪŋ], *décroissant* ^{adj}

Define [dɪ'faɪn], *définer, on définit*

Definite ['defɪnɪt], *défini-e*

Definite integral,

Definition [ˌdefɪˈnɪʃən], *définition*^f

Definitions and basic properties

Degree [diˈɡriː], *degré*^m

Demonstrable [ˈdemənstɹəbl] *démontrable*^{adj}

Demonstration [ˌdemənˈstreɪʃən], *démonstration*^f

Denominator [diˈnɒmɪneɪtə], *dénominateur*^m

Denote [diˈnəʊt], *indiquer, dénoter, on note*

Dense [dens], *dense*^{adj}

Density [ˈdensɪti], *densité*^f

derivation [ˌderɪ'veɪʃən], *dérivation*^f
Derivative [dɪ'rɪvətɪv], Mathematics, *dérivée*^f
Determinant [dɪ'tɜːmɪnənt], *déterminant*^m
Development [dɪ'veləpmənt], *développement*^m
diagonal [daɪ'æɡənəl], *diagonal*^{adj}, *diagonale*^{nom,adj}
Diagonalizable, *diagonalisable*^{adj}
Different ['dɪfrənt], *différent*
differential [ˌdɪfə'renʃəl], *différentiel, différentielle*
Differential equation, *équation différentielle*
Differential geometry, *géométrie différentielle*
Differential operator

Differentiation [ˌdɪfərənʃɪ'eɪʃən], Mathematics

différentiation^f

Dimension [daɪ'menʃən], *dimension*^f

Direct [daɪ'rekt], *direct-e*

Direct sum of subspaces, Direct sums

Disjoint [dɪs'dʒɔɪnt] adjective Mathematics,

disjoint

Disjoint sets, ensembles disjoints

Distance ['dɪstəns], *distance*^f

Distribution [dɪstrɪ'bjuːʃən], *distribution*^f

Distributions and Sobolev Spaces

Diverge [daɪ'vɜːdʒ], *diverger*^{verbe}

Divergence [daɪ'vɜːdʒəns], noun, *divergence*^f

Divergent, adjective [daɪ'vɜːdʒənt], *divergent*,
divergente

Divided [dɪ'vaɪdɪd], *divisé*

Divisibility, *la divisibilité*^f

Divisible [dɪ'vɪzəbl] , *divisible*^{adj} (by : par)

Division [dɪ'vɪʒən], *la division*

Domain [dəʊ'meɪn], *domaine*^m

Dot [dɒt], *pois*^m Mathematics, *point*^m

Double ['dʌbl], *double*^{adj}

Dual ['djʊəl], *duel*^m

E

Easy ['i:zi], *facile* ^{adj}, *simple* ^{adj}

easily ['i:zili] ^{adverb} **facilement**

Eigenspace, *espace propre*

Eigenvalue, *valeur propre*

Eigenvector, *vecteur propre*

Eigenvalues and eigenvectors of a symmetric matrix

Element ['elɪmənt], *élément* ^m

Elements of Hilbert Space

Empty ['emptɪ], *vide*, the set with no elements

Epsilon, *epsilon*, [ɛpsilɒn]

Equal ['i:kwəl], *Mathematics*, *égal*

Equality [ɪ'kwɒlɪti], *égalité* ^f

Equation [ɪ'kweɪʒən], Mathematics, Chemistry,
équation^f

Equipped [ɪ'kwɪpt], *muni-e*,

Equivalence [ɪ'kwɪvələns], *équivalence*

Equivalence relation

Equivalent [ɪ'kwɪvələnt], *équivalent*

Euclid's Algorithm

Euclidean [ju:'kliːdiən], *euclidien*, non-Euclidean
geometry, *géométrie*^f *non-euclidienne*

Evaluate [ɪ'væljʊeɪt], *évaluer*, *calculer*

Even ['i:vən], *pair*, *paire*^{adj}

Even function, *fonction paire*

Every ['evrɪ], for every, *tout, chaque, tous, pour tout*

Evident ['evɪdənt], *évident*^{adj}

Exact [ɪg'zækt], *solution exacte*

Example [ɪg'zɑ:mpl], *exemple*^m

Except [ɪk'sept], *sauf*

Exercise ['eksəsaɪz], *exercice*^m

Existence [ɪg'zɪstəns], *existence*^f

Expansion [ɪk'spænfən], *développement*^m

Exponential [ˌɛkspəʊ'nenʃəl], *exponentiel*

Expression [ɪk'spreʃən], *expression*^f

Extension [ɪk'stenʃən], *extension*^f

F

Factor ['fæktər], Mathematics, *facteur*^m, *élément*^m

Factorial [fæk'tɔ:riəl], *factoriel*

Factorization, *factorisation*

Factorize ['fæktə,raɪz], Mathematics, *mettre en facteurs*

Family ['fæmɪli], *famille*^f

Find [faɪnd], *trouver*, **we find**, *on trouve*

Finite ['faɪnaɪt], *limité, fini, finie*

Finite dimensional, *de dimension finie*

finite element method

First [fɜːst], *premier*

First order differential equations, *équations différentielles du premier ordre.*

Firstly [ˈfɜːstli] adverb , *d'abord, premièrement*

Fixed [fɪkst], unique fixed point, *point fixe unique*

Following [ˈfɒləʊɪŋ], *suivant, suivante*

For all, *pour tout*, **For every**, *pour tout*

Form [fɔːm], *forme*^f

Formula [ˈfɔːmjʊlə] pl formulas [ˈfɔːmjʊləs] or formulae [ˈfɔːmjʊliː], *formule*

Fraction [ˈfrækʃən] , Mathematics, *fraction*^f

Free [friː], *libre*

Famous ['feɪməs] *célèbre*

From the hypothesis, *d'après l'hypothèse*

Function ['fʌŋkʃən], *fonction*^f

Functional ['fʌŋkʃnəl], *fonctionnel, analyse
fonctionnelle*

Functional analysis, *analyse fonctionnelle*

Fundamental [ˌfʌndə'mentl], *fondamental, essentiel*

G

General ['dʒenərəl], *général*

generalization [ˌdʒenərələɪ'zeɪʃən],

généralisation^f

Geometry [dʒɪ'ɒmɪtri], *géométrie*^f

Graph [grɑ:f], *graphe*^m

Group [gru:p], *groupe*^m

H

Harmonic [hɑ:'mɒnɪk], Mathematics, *harmonique*

Heat [hi:t], *chaleur*^f

Heat equation, *équation de la chaleur*.

Hence [hens], *d'où*

High [haɪ], *haut*, higher dimensions

Hilbert Spaces

Homogeneous [ˌhəʊmə'dʒiːniəs], *homogène*

Homogeneous system, *système homogène*

hyperbolic [ˌhaɪpə'bɒlɪk], **hyperbolical**

[ˌhaɪpə'bɒlɪkəl], *hyperbolique*

Hyperbolic function noun Mathematics: *fonction*^f

hyperbolique.

Hypothesis [ˌhaɪ'pɒθɪsɪs] noun, pl **hypotheses**

[ˌhaɪ'pɒθɪsiːz], *hypothèse*^f

I

i- th column

Idea [aɪ'dɪə], *idée*^f

Identity [aɪ'dentɪtɪ], *identité*^f

Identity matrix, Identity map

If and only if, *si et seulement, si*

Image ['ɪmɪdʒ], *image*^f

Imaginary [ɪ'mædʒɪnəri], *imaginaire*

Imaginary number (Mathematics) : *nombre*^m

imaginaire

implication [ˌɪmplɪ'keɪʃən], *implication*^f

Indeterminate [ˌɪndɪ'tɜːmɪt]

indeterminate form of type zero over zero

Implies that, *implique*

important [ɪm'pɔ:tənt], *important-e*

Important, *the most important concept concerning sequences is convergence.*

Improper [ɪm'prɒpəʳ], *impropre*

Increasing [ɪn'kri:siŋ], *croissant, suite croissante*

Indefinite [ɪn'defɪnɪt], *indéfini-ie, illimité*

Indefinite integral

independence [ɪn'dɪpɛndəns], *indépendance*^f

independent [ɪn'dɪpɛndənt], *indépendant*

Index ['ɪndeks], *indice*

Induction [ɪn'dʌkʃən], *réurrence*

Introduce [ˌɪnrəˈdjuːs] *présenter*

inequality [ˌɪniˈkwɒlɪti], *inégalité*^f

Infinite [ˈɪnfɪnɪt], *infini, illimité*

Infinite dimensional, *de dimension infinie*

Infinitely [ˈɪnfɪnɪtli], *infiniment*

Infinity [ɪnˈfɪnɪti], *infinité*^f, *infini*^m

Infinity, the limit of f as x tends to infinity is a , *la limite de f lorsque x tend vers l'infini est a .*

Initial [ɪˈnɪʃəl], *initial*^{adj}

Initial condition, *condition initiale*

Initial value, *valeur initiale*

Injective : *injective*

Indeed [ɪn'diːd], *en effet*

Inner [ˈɪnəː], **inner product**, *produit scalaire*.

Inner product spaces, *espaces préhilbertiens*

Integer [ˈɪntɪdʒəː], *entier (nombre^m)*

Integrable, *intégrable*^{adj}

Integral [ˈɪntɪgrəl], *intégral*

Integral operator

Integration [ˌɪntɪ'greɪʃən], *intégration*^f

Interior [ɪn'tɪərɪəː], *intérieur (-eure^f)*

Interpolation [ɪn,tɜ:pə'leɪʃən], *interpolation*^f

Intersection [ˌɪntə'sekʃən] Mathematics,
intersection ^f

Interval ['ɪntəvəl], *intervalle* ^m

introduction [ˌɪntrə'dʌkʃən], *introduction* ^f

Inverse ['ɪnvɜːs], *inverse*

Invertible matrix, *matrice inversible*

Invertible, *inversible* ^{adj}

Irrational [ɪ'ræʃənəl], Mathematics, *irrationnel*
^{adj}

It follows that, *il vient*

Iterative ['ɪtəreɪtɪv], *itératif, itérative* ^{adj}

Iterative Methods for Solving Linear Systems

Jacobi's method

Kernel ['kɜːnl], *noyau* ^m

L

Law [ləʊ], *loi*^f

Least [liːst], *le plus petit, la plus petite*.

Least squares method,

Least upper bound of a set

Lemma ['lemə] noun, pl **lemmas** or **lemmata**

['lemətə], *lemme*

Let f be a function, *Soit f une fonction*

Limited ['lɪmɪtɪd], *limité, borné*^{adj}

Limit ['lɪmɪt], *la limite*^f

Line [laɪn], Mathematics, *ligne*^f

Linear ['lɪnɪəɹ], *linéaire*^{adj}

Linear Algebra

Linear Operator, linear maps, linear equation,

Linearly dependent

Linearly independent, *linéairement indépendant*

Log [lɒg]. *log* **logarithme**^m

Logarithm ['lɒgərɪθəm] *logarithme*^m

Logic ['lɒdʒɪk], *logique*^f

Lower ['ləʊəɹ], *inférieur (-eure)*

Lower bound

Lower triangular matrix, *matrice triangulaire*

inférieure

LU factorisation

M

Manner ['mænr̩], *manière*^f, *façon*^f

Map ['mæp], Mathematics, *application*^f

Mapping ['mæpɪŋ], Mathematics, *application*^f

Maps and their graphs

Mathematical [ˌmæθə'mætɪkəl], *mathématique*^{adj}

Mathematical induction,

Mathematician [ˌmæθəmə'tɪʃən],

mathématicien(ne)^{m(f)}

Mathematics [ˌmæθəˈmætɪks], *mathématiques* ^{fpl}

In applying mathematics

Matrix norm, *norme matricielle*

Matrix pl matrices ['meɪtrɪks], *matrice* ^f

Maximal ['mæksɪml], *maximal* ^{adj}

Maximal element

Maximum ['mæksɪməm], pl **maximums or maxima**, *maximum* ^m

Maximum principle, *principe du maximum*

Measurable ['meʒərəbl], *mesurable* ^{adj}

Measure ['meʒəʳ], *measure* ^f

Measure and integration

Method ['meθəd], *une méthode* ^f

Methods for Eigenvalues of Symmetric Matrices

Metric ['metrɪk], *métrique*. or distance function

Metric space, *un espace métrique*.

minimization [ˌmɪnɪmaɪ'zeɪʃən], *minimisation*^f

Minimization of Convex Functions

Minimum ['mɪnɪməm], pl **minimums** or **minima**,
minimum^m

modulus ['mɒdjʊləs], pl **moduli** ['mɒdjʊ,laɪ],

Mathematics, Physics, *module*^m

Monotone ['mɒnətəʊn], Mathématique, *monotone*^{adj}

Monotone matrix, *matrice monotone*

Monotonous, *monotone*^{adj}

Multilinear, *multilinéaire* ^{adj}

multiplication [ˌmʌltɪplɪˈkeɪʃən], *multiplication* ^f

Multiplicities of an eigenvalue

multiplicity [ˌmʌltɪˈplɪsɪtɪ], *la multiplicité* ^f

Multiplied by, Times, *fois*, *3 fois 4*.

Multiply [ˈmʌltɪplaɪ], *multiplier, fois*

N

Natural ['nætʃrəl], *naturel, entier*

Natural numbers : 0,1,2,...

Necessary ['nesɪsərɪ] , *nécessaire*

Necessary condition, *condition nécessaire.*

Negation, *négation* ^f

Negative ['negətɪv], *négatif, négative.*

Neighbourhood, neighborhood US ['neɪbəhʊd], *voisinage*

Non- [nɒn], *non, non linéaire, ...*

Noncommutative, nonnegative, ...

Nonempty set, *un ensemble non vide.*

Nonhomogeneous

Nonlinear [,nɒn'lɪniə], *non linéaire*

Nonlinear Systems and Numerical Optimization

Nonzero vector, *un vecteur non nul*

Norm [nɔ:m], *la norme*

Normal ['nɔ:məl], *normal*

Normed linear space, *espace vectoriel normé*

Normed space [nɔ:məd], *espace normé*

Norms and condition numbers

Notation [nəʊ'teɪʃən], , Mathematics, *notation* ^f

n-th [enθ], *le n-ième*

nth prime, *le n-ième nombre premier.*

Number ['nʌmbər], *nombre* ^m

Numerator ['nju:məreɪtər], Mathematics,
numérateur ^m

Numerical [nju:'merɪkəl], *Analyse numérique*

Numerical integration, *intégration numérique*

Numerical Solution of Ordinary Differential Equations

O

Odd [ɒd], *impair, un entier impair, une fonction impaire*

Odd function, *fonction impaire*

On the other hand, *d'autre part*

Open ['əʊpən], *ouvert*

Operation [,ɒpə'reɪʃən], *opération*^f

Operator ['ɒpəreɪtəʳ], *opérateur*^m

Optimization [,ɒptɪmaɪ'zeɪʃən], *optimisation*^f

Order ['ɔːdəʳ], *ordre*^m

Order relation, *relation d'ordre*

Ordinary ['ɔ:dnrɪ], *ordinaire*

Orthogonal [ɔ:'θɒgənl], *orthogonal, polynôme
orthogonaux, matrice orthogonale*

Orthonormal basis, *une base orthonormée*

Orthonormal, *orthonormé-e*

Otherwise ['ʌðəwaɪz], *sinon*

Over ['əʊvər], *sur*

P

Parameter [pə'ræmɪtər], Mathematics, *paramètre*^m

Partial ['pɑːʃəl], *partiel*

Partial Differential Equations

Particular [pə'tɪkjʊlər], *particulier, particulière*

Plus [plʌs], *plus*

Polar ['pəʊlər], *polaire*^{adj}

Polynomial [ˌpɒlɪ'nɒmɪəl], *polynôme*^m

Polynomial interpolation, *polynôme et interpolation*

Positivity, *positivité*.

Power ['paʊər], *puissance*^f

Previous ['priːviəs], *précédent*, look the previous formula.

Prime [praɪm], Mathématique, *prime*, *f* **prime** : *f* *prime*

Prime [praɪm], *premier*

prime number, *un nombre premier*, 2,
3,5,7,11,13,....

Primitive ['prɪmɪtɪv], *primitif*^m

Principle ['prɪnsəpl], *principe*^m

Probability [ˌprɒbə'bɪlɪtɪ], *probabilité*^f

Problem ['prɒbləm], *problème*^m

Product ['prɒdʌkt], *produit*^m

Proof [pru:f], *preuve*^f

Property ['prɒpətɪ], *propriété*^f

proposition [ˌprɒpə'zɪʃən], *proposition*

prove [pru:v], *prouver*, *démontrer*

Prove that, *prouver que, montrer que, démontrer que.*

Q

Quadratic [kwɒ'drætɪk], *quadratique* ^{adj.}

Quadratic forms, *formes quadratiques*

Quadrature ['kwɒdrətʃər], *quadrature* ^f

Quantity ['kwɒntɪtɪ], *quantité* ^f

Quasi- ['kweɪzɑɪ], *quasi-*, norms and quasi-norms

Question ['kwɛstʃən], *question* ^f

Quotient ['kwɒʃənt], Mathematics, *quotient* ^m

R

Real numbers, *nombres réels*.

Radius ['reɪdɪəs] noun, pl **radiuses** , *rayon*^m

Range [reɪndʒ], the range of f , *L' image = f(E)*, the value of f

Rank [ræŋk], *le rang*

rational number ['ræʃənəl] , *un nombre rationnel*

Real [riəl], Mathematics, *réel*

Recall that, *rappelons que*

Reduction [ri'dʌkʃən], *réduction*^f

Reduction of a quadratic form to a sum of squares

Reference ['refrəns], *bibliographie*^f, *référence*^f

reflexive [ri'fleksɪv], *Mathématique*, *réflexif*, *-ive*

Regular ['regjʊləʳ], *régulier*

Remark [rɪ'mɑ:k], *remarque*^f

representation [ˌreprɪzen'teɪʃən], *représentation*^f

Residue ['rezɪdjuː], *résidu*^m

Reciprocal [rɪ'sɪprəkəl], *récioproque, inverse*

Resolve [rɪ'zɒlv], *résoudre*^v

Rest [rest], *le reste* n. m.

Result [rɪ'zʌlt], *résultat*^m

Ring [rɪŋ], *anneau*^m

Root [ru:t], *racine*^f

Row [rəʊ], *la ligne*^f

Rule [ru:l], *règle*^f

S

Said [sed], **A sequence is said to be Cauchy if,** *Une suite est dite de Cauchy, si*

Sample ['sɑ:mpəl], *échantillon* ^m

Scalar ['skeɪlə] Mathematics, *scalaire* ^{m,adj}

Scalar product, *Produit scalaire*

Section ['sekʃən], *section* ^f, *partie* ^f

Self-adjoint [self], *autoadjoint (opérateur)*

Semi- ['semɪ], *semi-*,

Separability, *séparabilité*

Separable ['sepərəəbl], *séparable* ^{adj}

Separation [ˌsepə'reɪʃən], *séparation*.

Sequence ['si:kwəns], *suite*^f

Series ['siəri:z], Mathematics, *série*^f, *suite*^f

Set [set], *collection*^f, *ensemble*^m

Set of n -th degree polynomials, *L'ensemble des polynômes de degré n* .

Setting ['setɪŋ], *posons, on pose*

Several ['sevrəl], *plusieurs*, **several variables**, *plusieurs variables*

Show that [ʃəʊ], *montrer que*

Sign [saɪn], *le signe*^m

Subsequent ['sʌbsɪkwənt], in the subsequent chapters, *à venir*

Similar ['sɪmɪlər], *semblable*^{adj}

Similar matrices, *matrices semblables*

Similarly, we have ['sɪmɪləli], *de la même façon, on a*

Simplification [,sɪmplɪfɪ'keɪʃən], *simplification*^f

Simultaneous [,sɪmə'lteɪnɪəs], *simultané, simultanément*

Simultaneous nonlinear equations

Since f is linear, comme f est linéaire

Sine [saɪn], *sinus*, **sine x**, *sinus x*

Solution [sə'lju:ʃən], *solution*^f

Solution of systems of linear equations

Some [sʌm], some examples, *quelques exemples*

Space [speɪs], *espace*

Special ['speʃəl], *spécial, particulier*

Special matrices

Spectral ['spektrəl], *le rayon spectral*

Spectral analysis, *Analyse spectrale*

Spectre, specter US ['spektər], *spectre* ^m

Square [skwɛər], *carré* ^m

Square matrix of order n , *matrice carrée d'ordre n* .

Standard ['stændəd], *standard*,

Standard basis, *la base canonique*

Step [step], *étape*, two steps, *deux étapes*

Strictly ['strɪktlɪ], *d'une manière stricte*

Strictly less than, *strictement inférieur-e à*

Strong [strɒŋ], *fort*^{adj}

Strong convergence and weak convergence

Structure ['strʌktʃəɹ], *structure*^f

Study ['stʌdɪ], *étude*^f

Sub [sʌb], *subsequence, subspace,, sous-suite, sous-espace,*

Subsequence, *sous-suite*^f

subset ['sʌb,set], *sous-ensemble*^m

Subspace ['sʌb,speɪs], *un sous-espace*^m

substitution [sʌbstɪ'tju:ʃən], *remplacement*^m,
substitution^f

Successive [sək'sesɪv] , *successive itérations.*

Such that, *tel que, tels que, telle que, telles que*

Sufficient [sə'fɪʃənt], *suffisant* ^{adj}

Sufficient condition

Summation [sʌ'meɪʃən], *addition* ^f

Sup [sʌp], *sup, maths, supérieur, the sup of A, le sup de A*

Surjective [sɜ:'dʒektɪv], *surjectif*

Symmetric [sɪ'metrɪk], *Mathematics, symétrique*

Symmetrically [sɪ'metrɪkəlɪ] *adverb*

symétriquement, avec symétrie

Symmetry ['sɪmɪtrɪ] *noun symétrie* ^f

Symmetric positive definite matrices

System ['sɪstəm], *ystème*^m

T

Table ['teɪbl], *tableau*^m, *liste*^f

TD [ti:'di:], *abréviation de travaux dirigés*
(Université)

Technique [tek'ni:k], *technique*^f

The dimension of a vector space

The intersection of S and T , the union of S and T.

The set ofsuch that, {...../.....}, *L'ensemble de
...tel que ...*

Theorem ['θɪərəm], *théorème*^m

Theory ['θɪəri], *théorie*^f

Therefore ['ðɛəfɔːr] , *donc, par conséquent*

This means, *c'est-à-dire*

Times [taɪmz], *multiplier, fois*, **3 times 4**, *3 fois 4*

To present, to show, to prove, ...

Topologic [ˌtɒpəˈlɒdʒɪk], **topological** [ˌtɒpəˈlɒdʒɪkəl],
topologique ^{adj}

Topological space, *espace topologique* ^{adj}

Topology [təˈpɒlədʒɪ], *topologie* ^f

Trace [treɪs], *la trace* ^f,

Trace, the trace of a matrix, *la trace d'une matrice*

Transcendental [ˌtrænsɛnˈdɛntl], *Mathématique*,
transcendant

Transcendental number, *un nombre transcendant*

Transitive ['trænzɪtɪv] , *transitif*^{adj}

Transpose [træns'pəʊz], *transposer*

Transpose, A transpose, A transposée

Triangle ['traɪæŋɡl], *triangle*^m

Triangle inequality, *inégalité triangulaire*

Triangular [traɪ'æŋɡjələ], *triangulaire*^{adj}

Tridiagonal matrices

tridimensional [,traɪdɪ'menʃənəl], *tridimensionnel, à trois dimensions*

Trigonometric formulae, *formules trigonométriques*

Trigonometric, trigonometrical [,trɪgənə'metrɪkəl], *trigonométrique, série trigonométrique*

Trivial ['trɪvɪəl], *trivial, -e, -iaux*

Twice [twɑɪs], *deux fois*

U

Unbounded [$\Delta\eta$ 'baʊndɪd], *illimité, non borné*

Unbounded operator, *opérateur non borné*

Uncountable [$'\Delta\eta$ 'kaʊntəbl], *non dénombrable, the set of real numbers is not uncountable.*

Unicity, *unicité*^f

Uniform [$'ju:nɪfɔ:m$], *uniforme*

Uniformly [$'ju:nɪfɔ:mli$], *uniformément*, a map uniformly continuous, *application uniformément continue.*

Union [$'ju:njən$], *union*

Unique [ju:'ni:k], *unique*

Uniqueness [ju:'ni:kni:s], *unicité* ^f

Unit ['ju:ni:t], *unité* ^f

unitary ['ju:ni:təri] , *matrice unitaire, groupe unitaire, application unitaire*

Unknown ['ʌn'nəʊn], *inconnu*

Upper ['ʌpə], *upper bound, la borne supérieure*

Upper triangular matrix, *matrice triangulaire supérieure*

Using integration by parts gives

Using the last equation gives

Using theorem 1.2, *En utilisant le théorème 1.2*,

V

Value, values ['vælju:], *valeur*^f

Variable ['vɛərɪəbl], *variable*

Variation [ˌvɛərɪ'eɪʃən], *variation*^f

Vector ['vektə], Mathematics, *vecteur*^m

Vector space, *un espace vectoriel ou un espace vectoriel normé*

Various ['vɛərɪəs] *différent*

W, Z, X

Wave [weɪv], wave equation, *équation des ondes*

We distinguish two cases, *On distingue deux cas*

We denote by , *on note par*

We have, we've, *on a, nous avons*

We obtain, *on trouve*

We put, *posons, on pose*

We see that, *on voit que*

Weak [wi:k], weak convergence, *convergence faible*

Weak topology, *la topologie faible*

Whence [wens], *d'où*

Where, *où*

Work [wɜ:k], *travail, in this work we prove that, dans ce travail montrons que*

X, x [eks], *X, x to the power n.*

A

A set equipped with a distance, *un ensemble muni par une distance*

Abel ['eɪbl] , *Abel*^m

Abelian [ə'bi:liən] adjective , *abélien*^{adj}

Abelian group, *groupe abélien* (commutatif)

Abelian law, *loi commutative*

Above [ə'bʌv], *au-dessus*

Absolute ['æbsəlu:t], *absolu(e)*

Absolute value, *valeur absolue*.

Absolutely [ˌæbsəˈlu:tli] , *absolument, absolument*
convergente (intégrale, série)

Add [æd], *ajouter*

Admit [ədˈmɪt], *admettre*

Algebra [ˈældʒɪbrə], *algèbre*

Algebra : the branch of mathematics that **deals** with variables or unknowns representing the arithmetic numbers.

Algebraic [ˌældʒɪˈbreɪɪk] adj, *algébrique* adj

Algebraic multiplicity, algebraic structure, algebraic and topological structure

Algorithm [ˈælgəˌrɪðəm], *algorithme*

Algorithm : a rule or procedure used to solve a mathematical problem

Analogous adj [əˈnæləgəs], *analogue* adj

Analysis [əˈnæləsɪs], pl **analyses** [əˈnælɪsɪz],
analyse f

Answer ['ɑ:nsə^r], *réponse*^f, *solution*^f

Antisymmetric [ˌæntɪsɪ'metrɪk], *antisymétrique*^{adj}

Application [ˌæplɪ'keɪʃən], *application*^f

Appreciable [ə'pri:ʃəbl]

Applied [ə'plaid], *appliqué*

Applied Linear Algebra, *algèbre linéaire appliqué*

Approach [ə'prəʊtʃ], approach value, *valeur approchée*
adj

Approximation [ə,prɒksɪ'meɪʃən], *approximation*^f

Arbitrary ['ɑ:bɪtrəri] adj, *arbitraire*

Argument ['ɑ:gjʊmənt], *argument*^m

Argument, the argument of a complex number

Arithmetic [ə'riθmətik], *arithmétique*

Article ['ɑ:tɪkl], *article*^m

Associative [ə'səʊʃiətɪv], Mathematics, *associatif-ive*

Associativity, *associativité*,

Assume [ə'sju:m], *supposer, supposons que*,

Assumption [ə'sʌmpʃən], *hypothèse*

Assertion [ə'sɜ:ʃən] *affirmation*^m, *assertion*^m

Asymptotic, *asymptotique*

Axiom ['æksɪəm], *axiome*^m

Axiom : a statement regarded as self-evident; accepted without proof

B

Ball [bɔ:l], *boule*^f

Bar [bɑ:r], *barre*^f

Bar, we say *X bar*, *On dit X barre*.

Basic ['beɪsɪk], *fondamental*^{adj}, *essentiel*^{adj}, *élémentaire*^{adj}

Basis ['beɪsɪs] pl **bases**, *base*^f

Because [bi'kɒz], *puisque, car, comme*

Belong (s) [bi'lɒŋ], *appartenir à*

Best [best], *le meilleur, la meilleure*

Best approximation, *la meilleure approximation*

Bibliography [,bɪbli'ɒgrəfi], *bibliographie*^f, *référence*^f

Bijjective [baɪ'dʒektɪv], *bijectif*

Bijjective function

Bilinear, *bilinéaire*, **Math.** *Application, forme bilinéaire pour un couple de variables*, linéaire par rapport aux deux variables.

Binary ['baɪnəri], *binaire*

Binary relation, *relation binaire*

Binomial [baɪ'nəʊmiəl], *Mathematics*, *binôme*^m

Binomial : an expression with two terms

Bisection [baɪ'sekʃən], *division en deux parties égales*, *bissection*^f

Bnach space, *un espace de Banach*

Body ['bɒdi], *Field, corps*^m

Bound, [baʊnd], **bounds**, [baʊndz], *limite(s)*^{f(pl)}, *bornes*

Boundary ['baʊndərɪ], *limite*^f, *frontière*^f

Boundless ['baʊndlɪs], *infini*, *illimité*

Branch [brɑːntʃ], *branche*^f

By using the ..., *En utilisant ...*

C

Calculate ['kælkjʊleɪt], *calculer*^v

Calculus, pl **calculuses** ['kælkjʊləs], *calcul*^m

Canonical [kə'nɒnɪkəl], *canonique*^{adj}

Chapter ['tʃæptə^r], *chapitre*^m

characteristic [ˌkærɪktə'rɪstɪk], *caractéristique*^{adj}

characterization [ˌkærɪktərəɪ'zeɪʃən], *interprétation*,
caractérisation^f

Closed [kləʊzd], *fermé*^{adj}

Closure ['kləʊzə^r], *fermeture*^f
coefficient [ˌkəʊɪ'fɪʃənt] , *coefficient*^m
cofactor ['kəʊ,fæktə^r], *comatrice, cofacteur*^m
Collection [kə'lekʃən], *collection*^f
Column ['kɒləm], *colonne*^f
Combination [ˌkɒmbɪ'neɪʃən], *combinaison*^f
comment ['kɒment] , *commentaire*^m, *remarque*^f
Comments about the chapter **II**, *commentaires
sur le chapitre II*

Commutative ^{adj} [kə'mju:tətɪv], *lois* ^{fp1} *commutatives*

Compact [kəm'pækt], *compact* ^{adj}

Compact self-adjoint operators on a Hilbert space

Comparison [kəm'pærɪsn], *comparaison* ^f

Complete [kəm'pli:t], *complet (-ète^f)*, *un espace complet*

Complex ['kɒmpleks], *complexe* ^{adj}

Component [kəm'pəʊnənt], *composant*

Components [kəm'pəʊnənts], *les composants de X*

Composite ['kɒmpəzɪt], *Mathematics*, *composé*

Composite number, not prime, *nombre composé*

Compute [kəm'pjʊ:t], *Calculer*

Concept ['kɒnsept], *notion*^f, *idée*^f, *concept*^m

Conclusion [kən'kluːʒən], *conclusion*^f, *fin*^f

Condition [kən'dɪʃən], *condition*^f

Conjecture [kən'dʒektʃər], *conjecture*^f

Conjugate ['kɒndʒʊgeɪt], *conjuguée (matrice)*

Conjugate or Dual of an Operator

Constant ['kɒnstənt], *constante*^f, *un nombre constant*^{adj}

Contained [kən'teɪnd], contained in A .

Containing A

Continuous [kən'tɪnjʊəs], *continu(e)*

Contraction [kən'trækʃən], *contraction*^f

contradiction [ˌkɒntrəˈdɪkʃən], *contradiction* ^f

Converge [kənˈvɜːdʒ], *converger* ^{verbe}

Convergence [kənˈvɜːdʒəns], *convergence* ^f

Convergence and Continuity

Convergent [kənˈvɜːdʒənt], *convergent(e)* ^{adj}

Conversely [kɒnˈvɜːsli], *inversement*

Convex [ˈkɒnˈveks], *convexe*

Coordinate [kəʊˈɔːdɪnɪt], Mathematics, *coordonné*

Corollary [kəˈrɒləri], *corollaire* ^m

Cosine [ˈkɒsaɪn], *cosinus*

Countable [ˈkaʊntəbl] adjective , *dénombrable*

Countable dense subset, *sous-ensemble dense dénombrable*

Couple [ˈkʌpl], *couple* ^m

Course [kɔːs], *cours* nom masculin

Criterion [kraɪˈtɪəriən] noun, pl **criteria** or **criteria**

[kraɪˈtɪəriə], *critère* ^m

Cubic [ˈkjuːbɪk], *cubique*

D

Decomposition [ˌdi:kɒmpə'zɪʃən], *décomposition* ^f
Decreasing [di:'kriːsɪŋ], *décroissant* ^{adj}
Define [dɪ'faɪn], *définer, on définit*
Definite ['defɪnɪt], *défini-e*
Definite integral,

Definition [ˌdefɪˈnɪʃən], *définition*^f

Definitions and basic properties

Degree [dɪˈɡriː], *degré*^m

Demonstrable [ˈdemənstɹəbl] *démontrable*^{adj}

Demonstration [ˌdemənˈstreɪʃən], *démonstration*^f

Denominator [dɪˈnɒmɪneɪtəʳ], *dénominateur*^m

Denote [dɪˈnəʊt], *indiquer, dénoter, on note*

Dense [dens], *dense*^{adj}

Density [ˈdensɪtɪ], *densité*^f

derivation [ˌderɪ'veɪʃən], *dérivation*^f
Derivative [dɪ'rɪvətɪv], Mathematics, *dérivée*^f
Determinant [dɪ'tɜːmɪnənt], *déterminant*^m
Development [dɪ'veləpmənt], *développement*^m
diagonal [daɪ'æɡənəl], *diagonal*^{adj}, *diagonale*^{nom,adj}
Diagonalizable, *diagonalisable*^{adj}
Different ['dɪfrənt], *différent*
differential [ˌdɪfə'renʃəl], *différentiel, différentielle*
Differential equation, *équation différentielle*
Differential geometry, *géométrie différentielle*
Differential operator

Differentiation [ˌdɪfərənʃɪ'eɪʃən], Mathematics

différentiation^f

Dimension [daɪ'menʃən], *dimension*^f

Direct [daɪ'rekt], *direct-e*

Direct sum of subspaces, Direct sums

Disjoint [dɪs'dʒɔɪnt] adjective Mathematics,

disjoint

Disjoint sets, ensembles disjoints

Distance ['dɪstəns], *distance*^f

Distribution [dɪstrɪ'bjuːʃən], *distribution*^f

Distributions and Sobolev Spaces

Diverge [daɪ'vɜːdʒ], *diverger*^{verbe}

Divergence [daɪ'vɜːdʒəns], noun, *divergence*^f

Divergent, adjective [daɪ'vɜːdʒənt], *divergent*,
divergente

Divided [dɪ'vaɪdɪd], *divisé*

Divisibility, *la divisibilité*^f

Divisible [dɪ'vɪzəbl] , *divisible*^{adj} (by : par)

Division [dɪ'vɪʒən], *la division*

Domain [dəʊ'meɪn], *domaine*^m

Dot [dɒt], *pois*^m Mathematics, *point*^m

Double ['dʌbl], *double*^{adj}

Dual ['djʊəl], *duel*^m

E

Easy ['i:zi], *facile* ^{adj}, *simple* ^{adj}

easily ['i:zili] ^{adverb} **facilement**

Eigenspace, *espace propre*

Eigenvalue, *valeur propre*

Eigenvector, *vecteur propre*

Eigenvalues and eigenvectors of a symmetric matrix

Element ['elɪmənt], *élément* ^m

Elements of Hilbert Space

Empty ['emptɪ], *vide*, the set with no elements

Epsilon, *epsilon*, [ɛpsilɒn]

Equal ['i:kwəl], *Mathematics*, *égal*

Equality [i'kwɒlɪti], *égalité* ^f

Equation [ɪ'kweɪʒən], Mathematics, Chemistry,

équation^f

Equipped [ɪ'kwɪpt], *muni-e*,

Equivalence [ɪ'kwɪvələns], *équivalence*

Equivalence relation

Equivalent [ɪ'kwɪvələnt], *équivalent*

Euclid's Algorithm

Euclidean [ju:'klɪdɪən], *euclidien*, non-Euclidean

geometry, *géométrie*^f *non-euclidienne*

Evaluate [ɪ'væljʊeɪt], *évaluer*, *calculer*

Even ['i:vən], *pair*, *paire*^{adj}

Even function, *fonction paire*

Every ['evrɪ], for every, *tout, chaque, tous, pour tout*

Evident ['evɪdənt], *évident*^{adj}

Exact [ɪg'zækt], *solution exacte*

Example [ɪg'zɑ:mpl], *exemple*^m

Except [ɪk'sept], *sauf*

Exercise ['eksəsaɪz], *exercice*^m

Existence [ɪg'zɪstəns], *existence*^f

Expansion [ɪk'spænfən], *développement*^m

Exponential [ˌekspeɪ'nenʃəl], *exponentiel*

Expression [ɪk'spreʃən], *expression*^f

Extension [ɪk'stenʃən], *extension*^f

F

Factor ['fæktər], Mathematics, *facteur*^m, *élément*^m

Factorial [fæk'tɔ:riəl], *factoriel*

Factorization, *factorisation*

Factorize ['fæktə,raɪz], Mathematics, *mettre en facteurs*

Family ['fæmɪli], *famille*^f

Find [faɪnd], *trouver*, **we find**, *on trouve*

Finite ['faɪnaɪt], *limité, fini, finie*

Finite dimensional, *de dimension finie*

finite element method

First [fɜːst], *premier*

First order differential equations, *équations différentielles du premier ordre.*

Firstly [ˈfɜːstli] adverb , *d'abord, premièrement*

Fixed [fɪkst], unique fixed point, *point fixe unique*

Following [ˈfɒləʊɪŋ], *suivant, suivante*

For all, *pour tout*, **For every**, *pour tout*

Form [fɔːm], *forme*^f

Formula [ˈfɔːmjʊlə] pl formulas [ˈfɔːmjʊləs] or formulae [ˈfɔːmjʊliː], *formule*

Fraction [ˈfrækʃən] , Mathematics, *fraction*^f

Free [friː], *libre*

Famous ['feɪməs] *célèbre*

From the hypothesis, *d'après l'hypothèse*

Function ['fʌŋkʃən], *fonction*^f

Functional ['fʌŋkʃnəl], *fonctionnel, analyse
fonctionnelle*

Functional analysis, *analyse fonctionnelle*

Fundamental [ˌfʌndə'mentl], *fondamental, essentiel*

G

General ['dʒenərəl], *général*

generalization [ˌdʒenərələɪ'zeɪʃən],

généralisation **f**

Geometry [dʒɪ'ɒmɪtri], *géométrie* **f**

Graph [grɑːf], *graphe* **m**

Group [gruːp], *groupe* **m**

H

Harmonic [hɑ:'mɒnɪk], Mathematics, *harmonique*

Heat [hi:t], *chaleur*^f

Heat equation, *équation de la chaleur*.

Hence [hens], d'où

High [haɪ], **haut**, higher dimensions

Hilbert Spaces

Homogeneous [ˌhəʊmə'dʒiːniəs], *homogène*

Homogeneous system, *système homogène*

hyperbolic [ˌhaɪpə'bɒlɪk], **hyperbolical** [ˌhaɪpə'bɒlɪkəl], *hyperbolique*

Hyperbolic function noun Mathematics : *fonction*^f *hyperbolique*.

Hypothesis [ˌhaɪ'pɒθɪsɪs] noun, pl **hypotheses** [ˌhaɪ'pɒθɪsɪz], *hypothèse*^f

I

i- th column

Idea [aɪ'diə], *idée* ^f

Identity [aɪ'dentɪtɪ], *identité* ^f

Identity matrix, Identity map

If and only if, si et seulement, si

Image ['ɪmɪdʒ], *image* ^f

Imaginary [ɪ'mædʒɪnəri], *imaginaire*

Imaginary number (Mathematics) : *nombre* ^m *imaginaire*

implication [ɪm'plɪ'keɪʃən], *implication* ^f

Indeterminate [ɪndɪ'tɜːmɪt]

indeterminate form of type zero over zero

Implies that, implique

important [ɪm'pɔːtənt] , *important-e*

Important, the most important concept concerning sequences is convergence.

Improper [ɪm'prɒpəɹ], *improper*

Increasing [ɪn'kriːsɪŋ], *croissant, suite croissante*

Indefinite [ɪn'defɪnɪt], *indéfini-ie, illimité*

Indefinite integral

independence [ɪndɪ'pendəns], *indépendance* ^f

independent [ɪndɪ'pendənt], *indépendant*

Index ['ɪndeks], *indice*

Induction [ɪn'dʌkʃən], *réurrence*

Introduce [ˌɪntrəˈdjuːs] *présenter*

inequality [ˌɪniˈkwɒlɪtɪ], *inégalité* ^f

Infinite [ˈɪnfɪɪt], *infini, illimité*

Infinite dimensional, *de dimension infinie*

Infinitely [ˈɪnfɪɪtlɪ], *infiniment*

Infinity [ɪnˈfɪɪtɪ], *infinité* ^f, *infini* ^m

Infinity, the limit of f as x tends to infinity is a , *la limite de f lorsque x tend vers l'infini est a .*

Initial [ɪˈnɪʃəl], *initial* ^{adj}

Initial condition, *condition initiale*

Initial value, *valeur initiale*

Injective : *injective*

Indeed [ɪnˈdiːd], *en effet*

Inner [ˈɪnə], **inner product**, *produit scalaire.*

Inner product spaces, *espaces préhilbertiens*

Integer [ˈɪntɪdʒə], *entier (nombre* ^m)

Integrable, *intégrable* ^{adj}

Integral [ˈɪntɪgrəl], *intégral*

Integral operator

Integration [ˌɪntɪˈgreɪʃən], *intégration* ^f

Interior [ɪnˈtɪərɪə], *intérieur (-eure)* ^f

Interpolation [ɪnˌtɜːpəˈleɪʃən], *interpolation* ^f

Intersection [ˌɪntəˈsekʃən] Mathematics, *intersection* ^f

Interval [ˈɪntəvəl], *intervalle* ^m

introduction [ˌɪntrəˈdʌkʃən], *introduction* ^f

Inverse [ˈɪnvɜːs], *inverse*

Invertible matrix, *matrice inversible*

Invertible, *inversible* ^{adj}

Irrational [ɪˈræʃənəl], Mathematics, *irrationnel* ^{adj}

It follows that, *il vient*

Iterative [ˈɪtəreɪtɪv], *itératif, itérative* ^{adj}

Iterative Methods for Solving Linear Systems

Jacobi's method

Kernel [ˈkɜːnl], *noyau* ^m

L

Law [lɔː], *loi* ^f

Least [liːst], *le plus petit, la plus petite*.

Least squares method,

Least upper bound of a set

Lemma [ˈlemə] noun, pl **lemmas** or **lemmata** [ˈlemətə], *lemme*

Let f be a function, *Soit f une fonction*

Limited [ˈlɪmɪtɪd], *limité, borné* ^{adj}

Limit [ˈlɪmɪt], *la limite* ^f

Line [laɪn], Mathematics, *ligne*^f

Linear ['lɪnɪə], *linéaire*^{adj}

Linear Algebra

Linear Operator, linear maps, linear equation, ...

Linearly dependent

Linearly independent, *linéairement indépendant*

Log [lɒg]. *log* logarithme^m

Logarithm ['lɒgəriθəm] *logarithme*^m

Logic ['lɒdʒɪk], *logique*^f

Lower ['ləʊə], *inférieur* (-eure)^f

Lower bound

Lower triangular matrix, *matrice triangulaire inférieure*

LU factorisation

M

Manner ['mænə], *manière*^f, *façon*^f

Map ['mæp], Mathematics, *application*^f

Mapping ['mæpɪŋ], Mathematics, *application*^f

Maps and their graphs

Mathematical [ˌmæθə'mætɪkəl], *mathématique*^{adj}

Mathematical induction,

Mathematician [ˌmæθəmə'tɪʃən], *mathématicien(ne)*^{m(f)}

Mathematics [ˌmæθə'mætɪks], *mathématiques* ^{fpl} *In applying mathematics*

Matrix norm, *norme matricielle*

Matrix pl matrices ['meɪtrɪks], *matrice* ^f

Maximal ['mæksɪml], *maximal* ^{adj}

Maximal element

Maximum ['mæksɪməm], pl **maximums or maxima**, *maximum* ^m

Maximum principle, *principe du maximum*

Measurable ['meʒərəbl], *mesurable* ^{adj}

Measure ['meʒər], *measure* ^f

Measure and integration

Method ['meθəd], *une méthode* ^f

Methods for Eigenvalues of Symmetric Matrices

Metric ['metrɪk], *métrique*. or distance function

Metric space, *un espace métrique*.

minimization [ˌmɪnɪmaɪ'zeɪʃən], *minimisation* ^f

Minimization of Convex Functions

Minimum ['mɪnɪməm], pl **minimums or minima**, *minimum* ^m

modulus ['mɒdʒʊləs], pl **moduli** ['mɒdʒʊˌlaɪ], Mathematics, Physics, *module*
^m

Monotone ['mɒnətəʊn], *Mathématique*, *monotone* ^{adj}

Monotone matrix, *matrice monotone*

Monotonous, [mB@nKtBnBs], *monotone* ^{adj}

Multilinear, *multilinéaire*^{adj}

multiplication [ˌmʌltɪplɪ'keɪʃən], *multiplication*^f

Multiplicities of an eigenvalue

multiplicity [ˌmʌltɪ'plɪsɪtɪ], *la multiplicité*^f

Multiplied by, Times, *fois, 3 fois 4.*

Multiply ['mʌltɪplaɪ], *multiplier, fois*

N

Natural ['nætʃrəl], *naturel, entier*

Natural numbers : 0,1,2,...

Necessary ['nesɪsərɪ], *nécessaire*

Necessary condition, *condition nécessaire.*

Negative ['negətɪv], *négatif, négative.*

Neighbourhood, neighborhood US ['neɪbəhʊd], *voisinage*

Non- [nɒn], *non, non linéaire,*

Noncommutative, nonnegative, ...

Nonempty set, *un ensemble non vide.*

Nonhomogeneous

Nonlinear [ˌnɒn'lɪnɪəʳ], *non linéaire*

Nonlinear Systems and Numerical Optimization

Nonzero vector, *un vecteur non nul*

Norm [nɔ:m], *la norme*

Normal ['nɔːməl], *normal*

Normed linear space, *espace vectoriel normé*

Normed space [nɔːməd], *espace normé*

Norms and condition numbers

Notation [nəʊ'teɪʃən], , *Mathematics*, *notation* ^f

n-th [enθ], *le n-ième*

nth prime, *le n-ième nombre premier.*

Number ['nʌmbəʳ], *nombre* ^m

Numerator ['njuːməreɪtəʳ], *Mathematics*, *numérateur* ^m

Numerical [njuː'merɪkəl], *Analyse numérique*

Numerical integration, *intégration numérique*

Numerical Solution of Ordinary Differential Equations

O

Odd [ɒd], *impair, un entier impair, une fonction impaire*

Odd function, *fonction impaire*

On the other hand, d'autre part

Open ['əʊpən], *ouvert*

Operation [ˌɒpə'reɪʃən], *opération* ^f

Operator ['ɒpəreɪtəʳ], *opérateur* ^m

Optimization [ˌɒptɪmaɪ'zeɪʃən], *optimisation* ^f

Order ['ɔːdəʳ], *ordre* ^m

Order relation, *relation d'ordre*

Ordinary ['ɔ:dnrɪ], *ordinaire*

Orthogonal [ɔ:'θɒgənl], *orthogonal, polynôme orthogonal, matrice orthogonale*

Orthonormal basis, *une base orthonormée*

Orthonormal, *orthonormé-e*

Otherwise ['ʌðəwaɪz], *sinon*

Over ['əʊvəʳ], *sur*

P

Parameter [pə'ræmɪtəʳ], *Mathematics, paramètre* ^m

Partial ['paɪʃəl], *partiel*

Partial Differential Equations

Particular [pə'tɪkʃʊləʳ], *particulier, particulière*

Plus [plʌs], *plus*

Polar ['pəʊləʳ], *polaire* ^{adj}

Polynomial [ˌpɒlɪ'nəʊmɪəl], *polynôme* ^m

Polynomial interpolation, *polynôme et interpolation*

Positivity, *positivité.*

Power ['paʊəʳ], *puissance* ^f

Previous ['pri:vɪəs], *précédent*, look the previous formula.

Prime [praɪm], *Mathématique, prime, f prime : f prime*

Prime [praɪm], *premier*

prime number, *un nombre premier, 2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13, ...*

Primitive ['prɪmɪtɪv], *primitif*^m

Principle ['prɪnsəpl], *principe*^m

Probability [,prɒbə'bɪlɪtɪ], *probabilité*^f

Problem ['prɒbləm], *problème*^m

Product ['prɒdʌkt], *produit*^m

Proof [pru:f], *preuve*^f

Property ['prɒpətɪ], *propriété*^f

proposition [,prɒpə'zɪʃən], *proposition*

prove [pru:v], *prouver, démontrer*

Prove that, *prouver que, montrer que, démontrer que.*

Q

Quadratic [kwɒ'drætɪk], *quadratique*^{adj.}

Quadratic forms, *formes quadratiques*

Quadrature ['kwɒdrətʃər], *quadrature*^f

Quantity ['kwɒntɪtɪ], *quantité*^f

Quasi- ['kweɪzəɪ], *quasi-, norms and quasi-norms*

Question ['kwestʃən], *question*^f

Quotient ['kwɒʃənt], *Mathematics, quotient*^m

R

ä, *real numbers, nombres réels.*

Radius [ˈreɪdɪəs] noun, pl **radiuses** , *rayon*^m
Range [reɪndʒ], the range of f , *L' image = f(E)*, the value of f
Rank [ræŋk], *le rang*
rational number [ˈræʃənəl] , *un nombre rationnel*
Real [rɪəl], Mathematics, *réel*
Recall that, *rappelons que*
Reduction [rɪˈdʌkʃən], *réduction*^f
Reduction of a quadratic form to a sum of squares
Reference [ˈrefrəns], *bibliographie*^f, *référence*^f
reflexive [rɪˈfleksɪv], *Mathématique*, *réflexif*, *-ive*
Regular [ˈregjʊləʳ], *régulier*
Remark [rɪˈmɑːk], *remarque*^f
representation [ˌreprɪzenˈteɪʃən], *représentation*^f
Residue [ˈrezɪdjuː], *résidu*^m
Reciprocal [rɪˈsɪprəkəl], *récioproque*, *inverse*
Resolve [rɪˈzɒlv], *résoudre*^v
Rest [rest], *le reste* n. m.
Result [rɪˈzʌlt], *résultat*^m
Ring [rɪŋ], *anneau*^m
Root [ruːt], *racine*^f
Row [rəʊ], *la ligne*^f
Rule [ruːl], *règle*^f

S

Said [sed], A sequence is said to be Cauchy if, *Une suite est dite de Cauchy, si*

Sample ['sɑ:mpəl], *échantillon* ^m

Scalar ['skeɪləʳ] Mathematics, *scalaire* ^{m,adj}

Scalar product, *Produit scalaire*

Section ['sekʃən], *section* ^f, *partie* ^f

Self-adjoint [self], *autoadjoint (opérateur)*

Semi- ['semi], *semi-*,

Separability, *séparabilité*

Separable ['sepərəbəl], *séparable* ^{adj}

Separation [,sepə'reɪʃən], *séparation*.

Sequence ['si:kwəns], *suite* ^f

Series ['siəri:z], Mathematics, *série* ^f, *suite* ^f

Set [set], *collection* ^f, *ensemble* ^m

Set of n -th degree polynomials, *L'ensemble des polynômes de degré n .*

Setting ['setɪŋ], *posons, on pose*

Several ['sevrəl], *plusieurs*, **several variables**, *plusieurs variables*

Show that [ʃəʊ], *montrer que*

Sign [saɪn], *le signe* ^m

Subsequent ['sʌbsɪkwənt], *in the subsequent chapters, à venir*

Similar ['sɪmɪləʳ], *semblable* ^{adj}

Similar matrices, *matrices semblables*

Similarly, we have ['sɪmɪləli], *de la même façon, on a*

Simplification [ˌsɪmplɪfɪˈkeɪʃən], *simplification*^f

Simultaneous [ˌsɪməlˈteɪnɪəs], *simultané, simultanément*

Simultaneous nonlinear equations

Since f is linear, comme f est linéaire

Sine [saɪn], *sinus*, **sine x**, *sinus x*

Solution [səˈluːʃən], *solution*^f

Solution of systems of linear equations

Some [sʌm], *some examples, quelques exemples*

Space [speɪs], *un espace*

Special ['speʃəl], *spécial, particulier*

Special matrices

Spectral ['spektrəl], *le rayon spectral*

Spectral analysis, *Analyse spectrale*

Spectre, specter US ['spektər], *spectre*^m

Square [skwɛər], *carré*^m

Square matrix of order n, *matrice carrée d'ordre n.*

Standard ['stændəd], *standard,*

Standard basis, *la base canonique*

Step [step], *étape, two steps, deux étapes*

Strictly ['strɪktli], *d'une manière stricte*

Strictly less than, *strictement inférieur-e à*

Strong [strɒŋ], *fort* ^{adj}

Strong convergence and weak convergence

Structure ['strʌktʃəɹ], *structure* ^f

Study ['stʌdɪ], *étude* ^f

Sub [sʌb], *subsequence, subspace,, sous-suite, sous-espace,*

Subsequence, *sous-suite* ^f

subset ['sʌb, set], *sous-ensemble* ^m

Subspace ['sʌb, speɪs], *un sous-espace* ^m

substitution [sʌbstɪ'tju:ʃən], *remplacement* ^m, *substitution* ^f

Successive [sək'sesɪv] , *successive itérations.*

Such that, *tel que, tels que, telle que, telles que*

Sufficient [sə'fɪʃənt], *suffisant* ^{adj}

Sufficient condition

Summation [sʌ'meɪʃən], *addition* ^f

Sup [sʌp], *sup, maths, supérieur, the sup of A, le sup de A*

Surjective [sɜ:'dʒektɪv], *surjectif*

Symmetric [sɪ'metrɪk], *Mathematics, symétrique*

Symmetrically [sɪ'metrɪkəlɪ] **adverb** *symétriquement, avec symétrie*

Symmetry ['sɪmɪtrɪ] **noun** *symétrie* ^f

Symmetric positive definite matrices

System ['sɪstəm], *systeme* ^m

T

Table ['teɪbl], *tableau* ^m, *liste* ^f

TD [ti:'di:], abréviation de *travaux dirigés* (Université)

Technique [tek'ni:k], *technique* ^f

The dimension of a vector space

The intersection of S and T , the union of S and T.

The set ofsuch that, {...../.....}, *L'ensemble de ...tel que ...*

Theorem ['θɪərəm], *théorème* ^m

Theory ['θɪəri], *théorie* ^f

Therefore ['ðeəfɔ:r] , *donc, par conséquent*

This means, *c'est-à-dire*

Times [taɪmz], *multiplier, fois, 3 times 4, 3 fois 4*

To present, to show, to prove, ...

Topologic [ˌtɒpə'lɒdʒɪk], **topological** [ˌtɒpə'lɒdʒɪkəl], *topologique* ^{adj}

Topological space, *espace topologique* ^{adj}

Topology [tə'pɒlədʒɪ], *topologie* ^f

Trace [treɪs], *la trace* ^f,

Trace, the trace of a matrix, *la trace d'une matrice*

Transcendental [ˌtrænsen'dentl], *Mathématique, transcendant*

Transcendental number, *un nombre transcendant*

Transitive ['trænzɪtɪv] , *transitif*^{adj}

Transpose [træns'pəʊz], *transposer*

Transpose, A transpose, A transposée

Triangle ['traɪæŋɡl], *triangle*^m

Triangle inequality, *inégalité triangulaire*

Triangular [traɪ'æŋɡjʊləɹ], *triangulaire*^{adj}

Tridiagonal matrices

tridimensional [,traɪdɪ'menʃənl], *tridimensionnel, à trois dimensions*

Trigonometric formulae, *formules trigonométriques*

Trigonometric, trigonometrical [,trɪɡənə'metrɪkəl], *trigonométrique, série trigonométrique*

Trivial ['trɪvɪəl], *trivial, -e, mpl -iaux*

Twice [twɑɪs], *deux fois*

U

Unbounded [ʌn'baʊndɪd], *illimité, non borné*

Unbounded operator, *opérateur non borné*

Uncountable ['ʌn'kaʊntəbl], *non dénombrable, the set of real numbers is not uncountable.*

Unicity, *unicité*^f

Uniform ['ju:nɪfɔ:m], *uniforme*

Uniformly ['ju:nɪfɔ:mlɪ], *uniformément, a map uniformly continuous, application uniformément continue.*

Union ['ju:njən], *union*

Unique [ju:'ni:k], *unique*

Uniqueness [ju:'ni:knɪs], *unicité*^f

Unit ['ju:nɪt], *unité*^f

unitary ['ju:nɪtəri], *matrice unitaire, groupe unitaire, application unitaire*

Unknown ['ʌn'nəʊn], *inconnu*

Upper ['ʌpə], upper bound, *la borne supérieure*

Upper triangular matrix, *matrice triangulaire supérieure*

Using integration by parts gives

Using the last equation gives

Using theorem 1.2, *En utilisant le théorème 1.2*,

V

Value, values ['vælju:], *valeur*^f

Variable ['vɛəriəbl], *variable*

Variation [,vɛəri'eɪʃən], *variation*^f

Vector ['vektə], Mathematics, *vecteur*^m

Vector space, *un espace vectoriel ou un espace vectoriel normé*

Various ['vɛəriəs] *différent*

W, Z, X

Wave [weɪv], wave equation, *équation des ondes*

We distinguish two cases, *On distingue deux cas*

We denote by , *on note par*

We have, we've, *on a, nous avons*

We obtain, *on trouve*

We put, *posons, on pose*

We see that, *on voit que*

Weak [wi:k], weak convergence, *convergence faible*

Weak topology, *la topologie faible*

Whence [wens], *d'où*

Where, *où*

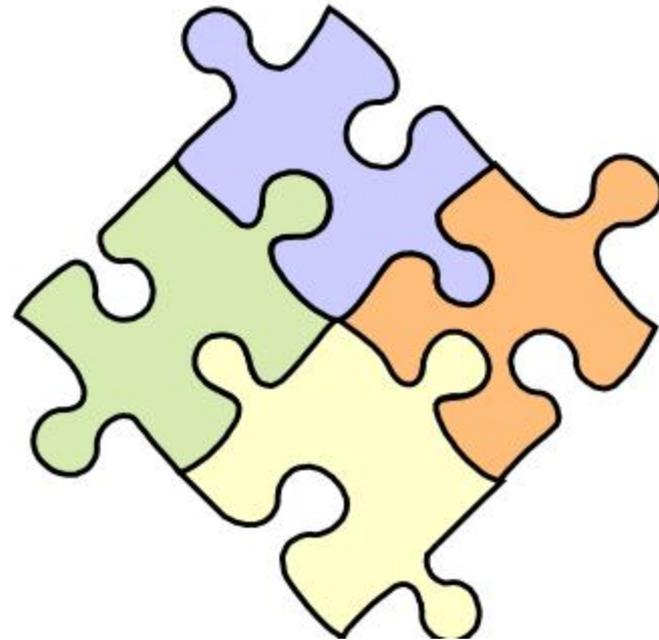
Work [wɜ:k], *travail, in this work we prove that, dans ce travail montrons que*

X, x [eks],

X, x to the power n.

أساسيات اللغة الإنجليزية

Basics of English Language



Numbers

Cardinal numbers (adjectives and pronouns)

1 one

2 two

3 three

4 four

5 five

6 six

7 seven

8 eight

9 nine

10 ten

11 eleven

12 twelve

13 **thirteen**

14 **fourteen**

15 **fifteen**

16 **sixteen**

17 **seventeen**

18 **eighteen**

19 **nineteen**

20 twenty

Twenty	20		
Thirty	30		
Forty	40	Hundred	100
Fifty	50	Thousand	1000
Sixty	60	Million	1000000
Seventy	70		
Eighty	80		
Ninety	90		

1st	First
2nd	Second
3rd	Third
4th	Fourth
5th	Fifth
6th	Sixth
7th	Seventh
8th	Eighth
9th	Ninth
10th	Tenth

11th	Eleventh
12th	Twelfth
13th	Thirteenth
14th	Fourteenth
15th	Fifteenth
20th	Twentieth
30th	Thirtieth
40th	Fortieth
50th	Fiftieth
51st	Fifth First

62nd	Sixth Second
83rd	Eighth Third
100th	Hundredth
1000th	Thousandth
1000000th	Millionth
-	Last

07, 76, 52, 61, 24,
37, 43, 26, 62,
55, 61, 74, 82,
89, 98, 67, 79.

1. One **hundred** thirty one **131**
2. Nine hundred eight 908
3. Three hundred twelve **312**
4. Five hundred eleven 511
5. One thousand two hundred thirty five **1235**
6. Three thousand five hundred twelve 3512
7. Fourteen thousand three hundred five 14305
8. Six hundred fifty one thousand three hundred forty five **651345**
9. Two million four hundred fifty three thousand two hundred twelve **2453212**

131

908

312

511

1235

3512

14305

651345

2453212

Cardinal numbers (adjectives and pronouns)

21 twenty-one

22 twenty-two

23 twenty-three

24 **twenty-four**

25 twenty-five

26 twenty-six

27 twenty-seven

28 twenty-eight

29 twenty-nine

30 thirty

31 thirty-one etc

40 forty

50 fifty

60 sixty

70 seventy

80 eighty

90 ninety

100 a hundred

1,000 a thousand

1,000,000 a million

Cardinal numbers (adjectives and pronouns)

- 400 four hundred
- 140 a/one hundred and forty
- 1006 a/one thousand and, six
- 5000 five thousand
- 260,127 two hundred and sixty thousand, one hundred and twenty-seven

- 713 seven hundred **and** thirteen
- 5102 five thousand, one hundred and two
- 6100 six thousand, one hundred
- 320,410 three hundred and twenty thousand, four hundred and ten
- 303,000,000 three hundred and three million

Ordinal numbers (adjectives and pronouns)

- first
- second
- third
- fourth
- fifth
- sixth
- seventh
- eighth
- ninth
- tenth

- eleventh
- twelfth
- thirteenth
- fourteenth
- fifteenth
- sixteenth
- seventeenth
- eighteenth
- nineteenth
- twentieth

Ordinal numbers (adjectives and pronouns)

- twenty-first
- twenty-second
- twenty-third
- twenty-fourth
- twenty-fifth
- twenty-sixth
- twenty-seventh
- twenty-eighth
- twenty-ninth
- thirtieth

- thirty-first et
- fortieth
- fiftieth
- sixtieth
- seventieth
- eightieth
- ninetieth
- hundredth
- thousandth
- millionth

Grammar words

Three of the most important parts of speech

- 1. Nouns**
- 2. Pronouns**
- 3. Verbs**

Grammer word	meaning	example
noun	The name of things	Djamel, Book, girl, pen
verb	Something we do	Speak, Do, read, write
adjective	Describes a person or thing	Hard , Good, bad, happy, long, slow, ...
adverb	Describes a verb	Hard , Slowly, badly, well,...
preposition	A little word used before a noun or pronoun	In, on , by, at, for, nor and, so,...
singular	Just one	Book, house, man,...
plural	More than one	Books , houses, men,..
phrase	A group of words (not a complete sentence)	If and only if, In a house, at home, An old man,...
sentence	A complete idea, beginning with a capital letter and ending with a full stop.	The man went into the room and closed the door.
paragraph	A short part of a text (one or more sentences) Beginning on a new line	If you need a bride of there are several ones in the mathematics department especially in the class of Master 1 . But I don't know which kind of girl you would like to prefer.
Question	A set of words that begin with a capital letter and end with a question mark	Do you like English ? Don't eat too much ? Can I go before you ?
Answer	Reply to a question	Yes, I am, no, I don't

Paragraph

If you need a bride of **marriage**, there are **several ones** in the mathematics department **especially** in the class of **Master 1**. But I don't know which kind of girl you would like to prefer.

Pronouns

الضمائر واستخدامها

English Pronouns



Personal pronouns	Object pronouns	Possessive adjectives	Possessive pronouns	Reflexive Pronouns
I	Me	My	Mine	Myself
You	You	Your	Yours	Yourself
He	Him	His	His	Himself
She	Her	Her	Hers	Herself
It	It	Its	.....	Itself
We	Us	Our	Ours	Ourselves
You	You	Your	Yours	Yourselves
they	them	their	theirs	themselves

- **I** work at the university. **I** teach mathematics.
- **I** didn't find Maria at home but **I** left **her** a message.
- Don't touch that book, it is **mine**
- **I** nearly finished **my** work.

Reflexive-Emphatic pronouns**Personal pronouns****Possessive adjectives****Possessive pronouns****before verbs
as subjects****after verbs
as objects****followed by nouns****not followed
by nouns**

myself

I

me

my

mine

yourself

you

you

your

yours

himself

he

him

his

his

herself

she

her

her

hers

itself

it

it

its

ourselves

we

us

our

ours

yourselves

you

you

your

yours

themselves

they

them

their

theirs

Person	Subject pronouns	Object pronouns	Possessive pronouns	Reflexive or emphatic pronouns
First person singular	I	me	my, mine	myself
First person plural	we	us	our, ours	ourselves
Second person singular and plural	you	you	your, yours	yourself, yourselves
Third person singular	he she it	him her it	his, his her, hers its (with no apostrophe)	himself herself itself
Third person plural	they	them	their, theirs	themselves

Does *your* dog bite?



Oh no! I trained it *myself* not to bite.

Ouch! It bit me! See for *yourself*!
I thought you said *your* dog didn't bite.



But that dog isn't *mine*! It's *his*.

1. I speak English.
2. The room is cleaned by **me**.
3. It's **my** car.
4. It's **mine**.
she's a friend of **mine**.
5. I hurt **myself**.

- **You** speak English
- The room is cleaned **you**
- It's **your** car
- It's **yours**
- you hurt **yourself**

1. **He** speaks English.
2. The room is cleaned by **him**.
3. It's **his** car.
4. It's **his**.
5. He **hurt himself**.
6. I wrote a letter to **him** but **he** didn't replay.

He opened **his** mouth and shut **his** eyes

1. **She** speaks English
2. The room is cleaned by **her**
3. It's **her** car
4. It's **hers**
5. She **hurt herself**

1. **It** speaks English
2. The room is cleaned by **it**
3. It's **its** car
4. It's(**its**)
5. It **hurt** **itself**

1. **You** speak English
2. The room is cleaned by **you**
3. It's **your** car
4. It's **yours**
5. You **hurt yourselves**

The new **book helps you** learn the most important sentences.



1. **We** speak English
2. The room is cleaned by **us**
3. It's **our** car
4. It's **ours**
5. We **hurt ourselves**

She laughed at **us**.

She gave **us** a smile.

She spoke to **us**.

1. **They** speak English
2. The room is cleaned by **them**
3. It's **their** car
4. It's **theirs**
5. They **hurt themselves**

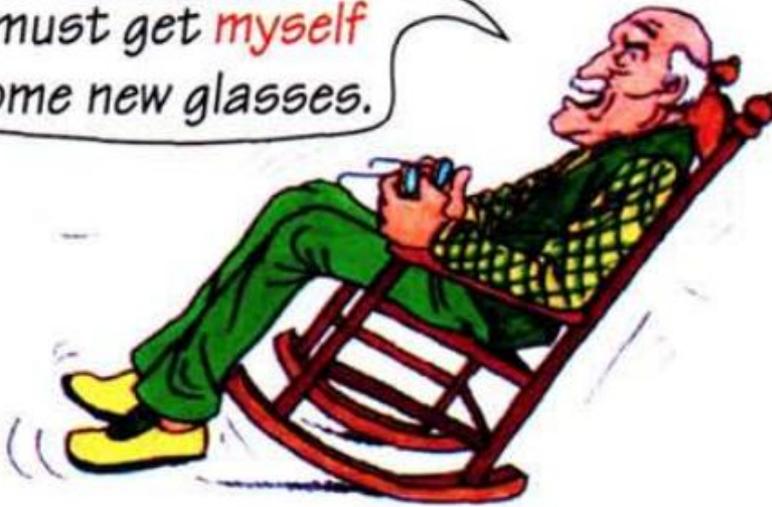
Can you give me **their** address please?

- Her birthday isn't near mine.
- I speak to her every day.
- The teacher spoke to us yesterday.
- Smoking is bad for your health.
- Did you hurt yourself ?
- This soup is very hot, I can't drink it
- Some old people talk to themselves.
- I must get myself some new clothes.

my sister, her husband, and their three children.
my sister, her husband, my brother and his wife.
his wife and two sons [his wife and his two sons]

Note the difference : - **selves** / **each other**

I must get **myself**
some new glasses.



Some old people talk to **themselves**.



They are talking to **each other**.



Relative pronouns

1. which
2. who
3. whose
4. whom
5. That
6.

1. **That** replaces **who** or **which** but is never used after commas or prepositions. **That** usually follows superlatives and words like something, nothing, anything, all, none, many, few.

Ann, **who** is very clever, did the puzzle in five minutes. ("That" is impossible here.)

There's **something that** you don't know.

She's the **tallest** girl **that** I've ever seen.

2. **Prepositions in Relative Clauses.** We avoid using prepositions before relative pronouns.

That's the girl **with** whom I went to the party. (very formal)

That's the girl (who/that) I went to the party **with**. (less formal, more usual)

3. **Who, whom, which, that** can be omitted when there is a noun or a pronoun (I, you, etc) between the relative pronoun and the verb, that is, when they are the objects of the relative clause.

The clock (which/that) I bought yesterday does not work. (**Which/that** can be omitted.)

Where is the ring (which/that) **George** gave you? (**Which/that** can be omitted.)

A person **who** repairs cars is a mechanic. (**Who** can't be omitted).

1. That man **who** told me.
2. That man **whom** I spoke.
3. This car **which** I bought.
4. This man **that/whom** I can trust.
5. I talked to Ali **who** went yesterday.

Complete the sentences using relatives as in the example:



1. A painter is someone *who* ...
paints pictures.



2. A supermarket is a place



3. A tiger is an animal



4. A builder is someone



5. A widow is a woman



6. You can't live in a house

Underline the correct item.

e.g. That's the house where/**which** I grew up.

That's the woman **who's**/**whose** son won the gold medal.

This is the car **which**/**who** belongs to my father.

He is the actor **who**/**whom** won the Academy Award.

The girl **which**/**whom** you met at the party is my sister.

The reason **which**/**why** I didn't call you was that I came home late.

The house **which**/**where** was broken into is my uncle's.

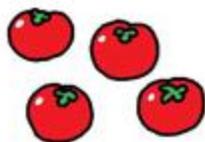
The hotel **where**/**that** we stayed was near the beach.

I'll never forget the day **whom**/**when** I got married.

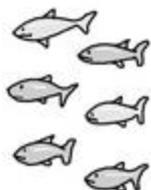
A butcher is someone **whose**/**who** sells meat.

The earrings **which**/**who** she gave me were very expensive.

a, an



four



some



two



three



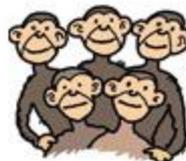
a lot of



a lot of



a pair of



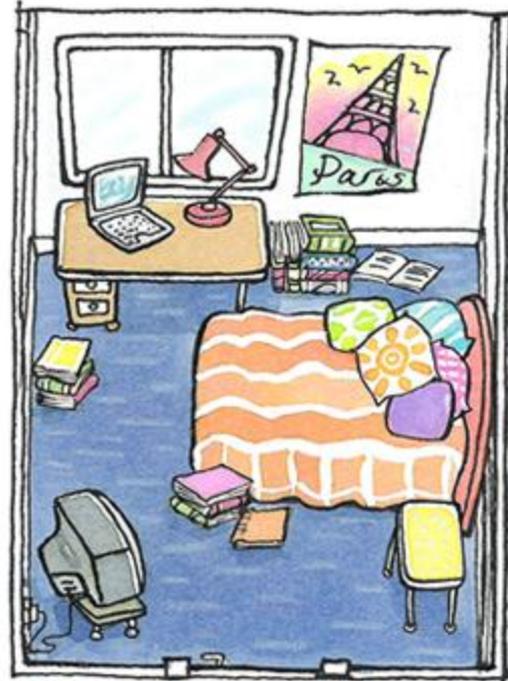
five



Dear Kate

This is my new room at university. It's quite nice and has got everything in it that I need. There's a bed and a small table next to it. I've put lots of cushions on the bed. Under the window I've got a desk. There's a lamp and my laptop on the desk. The walls are white and I've hung a poster of Paris near the desk so I can see it when I'm working. The carpet is dark blue. At the moment, all my books are on the floor. There's a TV in the corner. I'm happy here.

See you soon.
Love, Tom



a/an (the indefinite article)

- The form **a** is used before a word beginning with a consonant, or a vowel with a consonant sound :

a man **a** hat **a** university **a** European

- The form **an** is used before words beginning with a vowel (**a, e, i, o, u**) or words beginning with a mute **h** :

an apple **an** island **an** uncle
an egg **an** onion **an** hour

- The definite article

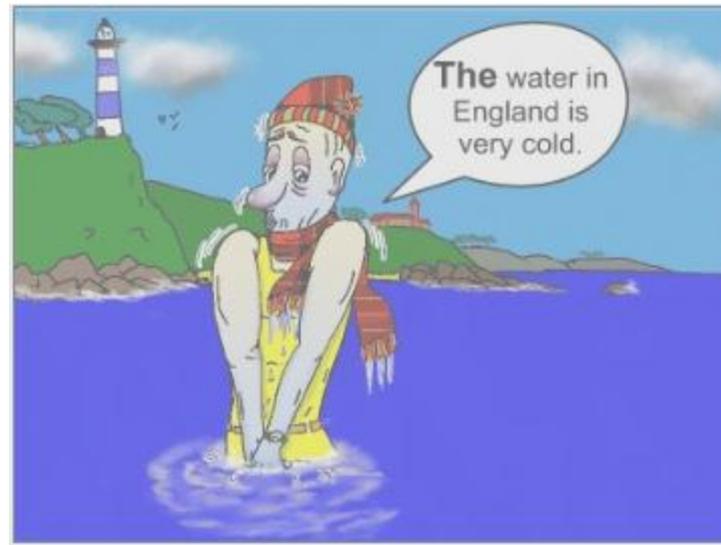
The is the **definite** article in the **singular** and **plural**.

Example: **The cat** is in the house.
The cats are in the house.

- The indefinite article

A is the **indefinite** article in the **singular**.
In the **plural**, there is **no article**.

Example: There is **a cat** in our garden.
There are **cats** in our garden.



I'm afraid of ~~the~~ water

I'm afraid of water

Fill in: a, an or the.

Last night I went to 1) *an* Indonesian restaurant. I had
2) very nice meal with 3) good friend, Helen.
4) waiter was Chinese. 5) food was great. We
drank 6) bottle of Coke. When we asked for 7) bill we
didn't have enough money, so we had to do 8) washing-
up. It was not 9) good way to end 10) evening.

a few/few

(adjectives) are used before plural nouns.

a few people / few people

The

With words which are the only one of their type

Examples :

The question

The sea

The earth

The sun

The moon

*With a **special** person or things*

This is **the** car that I wanted to buy.

The book on the table is mine.

The man you saw yesterday is my uncle.

There are **the** cars
that I like.

It is nice. I like it.



They are nice. I like them.



Demonstrative Pronouns

This

This is a table. **This** is a pen.

That

That is my brother.

1. **These** books are yours.
2. **Those** are my friends.

The

Fill in “the” where necessary.

1. Is .. ~~X~~ .. Lisbon .. *the* .. capital of .. ~~X~~ .. Portugal?
2. Is Malta in Mediterranean?
3. Is Paris in United Kingdom or in France?
4. Where is Sahara Desert?
5. What is biggest island in Greece?
6. What is capital of Italy?
7. Is Indian Ocean bigger than Arctic Ocean?
8. Is Everest the highest mountain in world?
9. Where are Malta and Corsica?
10. Where are Mississippi River and Thames?

The

With words which are the only one of their type

Examples :

1. **The** sea
2. **The** earth
3. **The** sun
4. **The** moon

With a special person or thing

Examples :

1. This is **the** car that I wanted to buy.
2. **The** book on the table is mine.
3. **The** man you saw yesterday is my uncle.

Before superlative

Example :

He is **the** tallest boy in the class.

We don't use "the" with

a) The uncountable nouns :

Example :

Sugar, milk, coffee, ...

b) With plural nouns meaning a class :

Example :

1. Dogs are faithful friends
2. Mothers feed their babies

The children are making a noise.

WILL: What's on TV tonight?

SUE: There's a sci-fi film on at eight o'clock, but I can't remember name of it.

WILL: I'd like to watch it. What time's dinner?

SUE: About eight. I don't want to watch and eat at same time.

WILL: No. We can record the film and watch it later tonight.

SUE: I won't because I'm in middle of reading an exciting book. I want to finish it. If you record it, I'll watch it sometime next week.

WILL: OK.



Fill in “a”, “an” or “the” where necessary.

1. Is .. *a* .. tomato ... *a* ... fruit or ... *a* .. vegetable?
2. Is apple red or blue?
3. What is capital of France?
4. When we visited London we stayed at Hilton Hotel.
5. Does River Seine run through Paris or Madrid?
6. Is Indian Ocean larger than Mediterranean Sea?
7. Is New York in USA or in Canada?
8. Is elephant bigger than alligator?
9. Does Amazon run through Africa or South America?

**This,
these**

This, these

*(used to show **near** things or people)*

This book is mine, **these** books are mine.

That, those

*(used to show **far** things or people)*

Look **that** picture, look **those** pictures, **those** boys are my friends.

On **that** day, ...

This week.

I like **this** photo better than that one.

There is

and

There are

There is one living-room
in my house.

There are three bedrooms
in my house.

There are four principal parts of any
verb In English :

1. The **infinitive** (the basic form of the verb).
2. The **present participle**.
3. The **past**.
4. The **past participle**.

قواعد الصفات

English Adjectives



- معظم الأسماء من أفعال اللغة الانجليزية له صفة Adjective.
- الصفات لا يمكن أن تجمع أبداً.

Smarts boys. ✗

Smart boys.

They need smarts. (noun)

- يمكن صياغة الصفات من الأسماء في اللغة الانجليزية على أشكال

بإضافة "-y"

need ⇒ needy

وبعض الصفات تصاغ بإضافة "-ly" لآخر الاسم. مثل:

love ⇒ lovely

وبعض الصفات تصاغ بإضافة "-ing" لآخر فعل الاسم. مثل:

bore ⇒ boring

وبعض الصفات تصاغ بإضافة "-less" لآخر الاسم ولكن معنى الصفة يصبح عكس معنى الاسم. مثل:

care ⇒ careless

وبعض الصفات يكون شكلها هو نفسه شكل التصريف الثالث لأفعال الأسماء. مثل:

make ⇒ made, close ⇒ closed

وقليل من الصفات تصاغ بإضافة "-en" لآخر الاسم. مثل:

wood ⇒ wooden

وقليل من الصفات تصاغ بإضافة "-ous" لآخر الاسم. مثل:

danger ⇒ dangerous

وقليل من الصفات تصاغ بإضافة "-able" لآخر الاسم. مثل:

honor ⇒ honorable

وقليل من الصفات تصاغ بإضافة "-ic" لآخر الاسم. مثل:

atom ⇒ atomic

وقليل من الصفات تصاغ بإضافة "-al" لآخر اسم الاسم. مثل:

education ⇒ educational

وقليل من الصفات تصاغ بإضافة "-an" لآخر الاسم. مثل:

republic ⇒ republican

وقليل من الصفات تصاغ بإضافة "-cal" لآخر الاسم. مثل:

history ⇒ historical

وقليل من الصفات تصاغ بإضافة "-ful" لآخر الفعل. مثل:

play ⇒ playful

وقليل من الصفات يختلف شكلها نهائياً عن اسمها. مثل:

intelligence ⇒ smart , clever

وقليل من الصفات يكون شكلها نفس شكل فعل الاسم:

Complete ⇒ Complete

يمكن صياغة الصفات المضادة بإضافة في أول الصفة المقاطع "dis- , un- , il- , in- , im-". مثل:

happy ⇒ unhappy
accurate ⇒ inaccurate
possible ⇒ impossible
legal ⇒ illegal
honest ⇒ dishonest

كما يمكن صياغة الصفات المضادة للصفات المنتهية بالمقطع "-less" بإضافة المقطع "-ful" في آخر الصفة. مثل:

helpless ⇒ helpful
hopeless ⇒ hopeful
useless ⇒ useful

?

لا يجوز أن تسبق الصفات إحدى أدوات التنكير "a , an" إلا إذا جاء الصفة والموصوف معاً.

He is **a** hero.

He is **smart**.

الصفة في اللغة الانجليزية تأتي قبل الموصوف على عكس اللغة العربية.

Red robe

Beautiful girl

أنواع الصفات:

أولاً/ النسبة إلى اسم علم:

Arabic language
English grammar

ثانياً/ صفات الملكية:

my/your/his/her/its name
our/your/their names.

يمكن إضافة كلمة "own" قبل صفة الملكية لتأكيد المعنى. مثل:

(I will/I'll) write with my own pen.

كما تضاف كلمة "own" أيضاً لمنع الالتباس.

He did his work.

He did his own work.

?

ثالثاً/ الصفات الوصفية:

هي صفات تبين نوعية الموصوف أو شكله أو لونه أو حالته

a long street, a beautiful girl, an old house

She is a beautiful girl. He is smart.

?

ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

Order of adjectives

size

age

shape

colour

origin

material

noun

large

old

rectangular

brown

French

wooden

bed.

Comparatives

I must work **as**
hard **as** I can. ?

Short adj

Hot, long, short, tall, sad, cold, small
Big, near, new, fat, full, ...

adj + er + than

long adj

Beautiful, slowly, hungry,
difficult,...

More + adj + than

Examples:

1. Loubna is **taller than** Maria.
2. Maria isn't **taller than** Loubna.
3. He's **bigger than** his sister.
4. Ali is **taller than** his brother.
5. I want a bicycle **larger than** this.

1. I want a car **more beautiful than** this.
2. Our university is **more beautiful than** others.
3. I like apples **more than** oranges.

درجة التفضيل العليا Superlative: للمقارنة بين ثلاثة أو أكثر.

Superlatives

Short adj

The + adj + est

Our country is **the largest** in Africa.

Where is the **nearest** hospital from here ?

long adj

The + most + adj

Our country is **the most beautiful** in the world.

You are the **most kind**.

Ali is **the tallest** of his brothers.

Ali is **more interested than** Ahmad.

Ali is **the most interested of** his friends.

Adjectives of:	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
one syllable	tall	taller (than)	the tallest (of/in)
two syllables ending in -er , -ly , -y , -w	happy friendly	happier (than) friendlier (than)	the happiest (of/in) the friendliest (of/in)
two or more syllables	modern beautiful	more modern (than) more beautiful (than)	the most modern (of/in) the most beautiful (of/in)

remark

large-larger-largest

heavy-heavier-heaviest

big-bigger-biggest

37 Fill in the blanks with the correct comparative and superlative forms.

- | | | | | | |
|--------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|--------------|-------|-------|
| 1. thin | ... <i>thinner</i> | <i>.thinnest</i> | 5. difficult | ..... | ..... |
| 2. long | ..... | ..... | 6. easy | ..... | ..... |
| 3. wet | ..... | ..... | 7. exciting | ..... | ..... |
| 4. dangerous | ..... | ..... | 8. hot | ..... | ..... |

Comparison of Adverbs

	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
adverbs with the same form as adjectives	fast	faster	the fastest
two-syllable adverbs ending in -ly	early	earlier	the earliest
two-syllable or compound adverbs (adjective + -ly) (clear - clearly)	often clearly	more often more clearly	the most often the most clearly

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
poor	poorer	poorest
rich	richer	richest
low	lower	lowest
high	higher	highest
large	larger	largest



The red book is **as old as** the blue book but it **isn't as thick as** the blue one.



The ring is **less expensive than** the necklace. The earrings are **the least expensive of** all.



The more he eats, **the fatter** he gets.

Comparisons

Did you catch any **big** fish today?

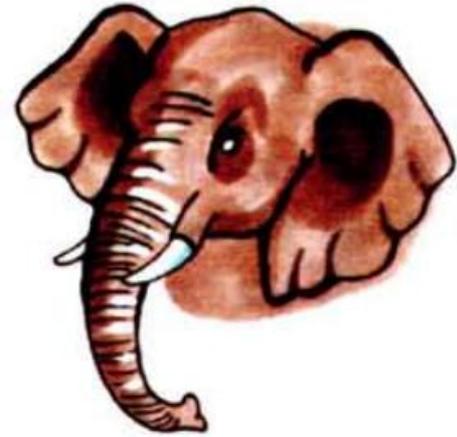


Yes, they are **bigger than** the ones I caught yesterday. They are **as big as** baby elephants.

Fishing is not allowed here and I'm the warden, you know.



And I am **the biggest liar in** the world.



1. heavy, dangerous, fierce, fast

An elephant ... *is heavier than a tiger.*

An elephant *is less dangerous than a tiger.*

A tiger is ... *fiercer than an elephant.*

An elephant isn't ... *as fast as a tiger.*

This restaurant is **better than** that one

Irregular adj

Positive form	Comparative form	Superlative form
good	better	best
Bad, ill	worse	worst
Little	less	least
Much, many	more	most
far	farther	farthest

1. He knows **more than** I did at his age.
2. Who has got the **most**.
3. Life in the country is **better than** in the city.

He is **better than** her.

He is **the best of** his friends.

Ahmed is **the best**.

Comparative of equality

As + adj + as

- Selma is as old as Maria.
- The girl is as happy as the boy.
- The woman is not as sad as the boy.

1. I must work as hard as I can.
2. he saw the accident as he was going to school.
3. Ali is as tall as Ahmad.

Positive Comparative Superlative

dark darker darkest

tall taller tallest

useful more useful most useful

Comparisons with like and as

1. He swims **like** a fish.
2. I will do the same **as** you.
3. I think I'm **as** good **as** him.

Write as in the example :

Julie



car



1. ... *This is Julie's car.*
... *It's her car.*
... *It's hers.*

the girls



house



2.
.....
.....

John

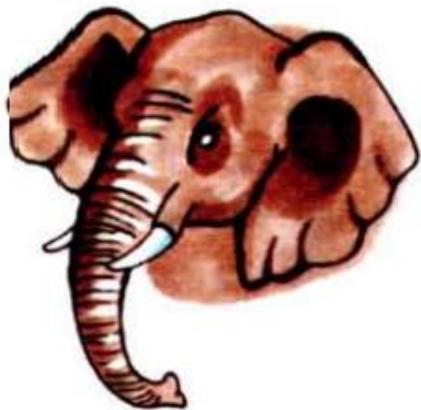


records



3.
.....
.....

Use the adjectives and write comparisons as in the example :



1. heavy, dangerous, fierce, fast

An elephant ... *is heavier than a tiger.*

An elephant *is less dangerous than a tiger.*

A tiger is ... *fiercer than an elephant.*

An elephant isn't ... *as fast as a tiger.*



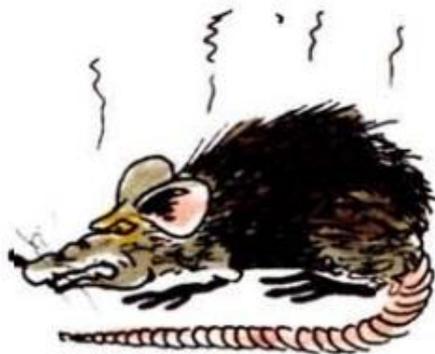
2. expensive, cheap, slow, comfortable

A car is

A bicycle is

A car isn't

A bicycle is



3. dirty, friendly, intelligent, noisy

A rat is

A rat is

A dog is

A rat isn't

Adverbs

١) ظروف الزمان **Time**: تعبر عن زمن حدوث الفعل. مثل:

yesterday , today , tomorrow , now , then
, soon , recently , ...

٢) ظروف المكان **Place**:

back , across , in , on , here , there , above, ...

٣) ظروف الحالة **Manner**:

well , badly , hard , fast , slowly , quickly , ...

٤) ظروف التكرار **Frequency**: تعبر عن مدى تكرار حدوث الفعل. مثل:

generally , rarely , always , never , sometimes ,
often ...

٤) ظروف الدرجة **Degree**: تعبر عن درجة الحدث. مثل:

very , much , really , quite , too , so , either , ...

٥) ظروف الاستفهام **Interrogative**: تستخدم لصياغة السؤال. مثل:

when , where , how , why

٦) ظروف الربط **Linking**: مثل:

however , firstly , therefore , nevertheless

٧) ظروف التعليق والمواقف **Comment & Attitude**: مثل:

yes , no , not , never , perhaps , maybe ,
possibly , certainly

٨) ظروف الجمع والحد **Adding & Limiting**: مثل:

else , too , either , only , neither , also

٩) ظروف وجهة النظر **Viewpoint**: مثل:

mentally , morally , officially , **strictly**

١٠) ظروف المدة الزمنية **Length of Time**: مثل:

long , always , **never** , **just**

noisy ⇒ **noisily**

full ⇒ **fully**

Brotherly = adj, adv
in a **brotherly** manner.

بعض الظروف تطابق صفاتها وفي هذه الحالة نميز بينهما في أن الصفة يتبعها موصوفها.

This is a **fast** train.

It goes very **fast**.

Examples

Our new neighbor greeted us **politely**. (**manner**)

How long have you lived **here**? (**place**)

We arrived **yesterday**. (**time**)

After that we met her quite **frequently**. (**frequency**)

However, we learned very little about her. (**linking**)

I hope you will be **really** happy. (**degree**)

Strangely, she never talked about herself. (**comment & attitude**)

She talked **only** about us and the weather. (**adding & limiting**)

Personally, I found that annoying. (**viewpoint**)

Have you **ever** met anyone like that? (**length of time**)

He has run good. ❌

He has run well.

He is well. ↴

He is good ↴↴

١) قبل الفاعل مباشرة.

Occasionally John wakes up early.

٢) بعد الفعل المساعد الأول مباشرة.

John has **occasionally** waked up early

٣) بعد الفعل **be** وأخواتها.

John is **occasionally** asleep.

٤) إذا لم تحتوي الجملة على فعل مساعد أو فعل **be** فإنها يمكن أن تأتي قبل الفعل الأساسي.

John **occasionally** wakes up early.

John wakes up **occasionally**.

لا يأتي قبل الظروف حرف الجر "to".

Go to there. ❌

Go there.

Organise these mixed up words into correct sentences.

1 brother often us Sunday visits on my

2 me ever phones she hardly

3 have leg my broken never I

4 visit saw I hardly his him during

5 get occasionally I early up

6 always she Monday on early is work for a

Adjectives

Adjectives **describe nouns** ; they say “what kind” a noun is. Adjectives have the same form in both singular and plural number and normally come before nouns and after “be”.

That car is **fast**. (What kind of car? A fast one.)

She’s got three **lovely** cats.

Adverbs

Adverbs **describe verbs**; they explain **how** (adverbs of manner), **where** (adverbs of place), **when** (adverbs of time) or **how often** (adverbs of frequency) something happens.

He drives **carelessly**. (How does he drive?

Carelessly.)

We usually form an **adverb** by adding **-ly** to an adjective. eg. slow - slowly. **Some adverbs are the same as their adjectives: hard, fast, early, daily, late, monthly.** eg. He runs **fast**. He is a **fast** runner. **Some adverbs are irregular.** eg. good - well

Write the correct adverbs.

 ly

wide ... *widely*
dangerous
sad

~~le~~  ly

possible
simple
terrible

consonant + ~~x~~  ily

busy
heavy
happy

How

Where

adverbs of manner

adverbs of place

easily,

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

When

How often

adverbs of time

adverbs of frequency

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Fill in the blanks with the correct comparative and superlative forms.

- | | | | | | |
|--------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|--------------|-------|-------|
| 1. thin | .. <i>thinner</i> | <i>thinnest</i> | 5. difficult | ..... | ..... |
| 2. long | ..... | ..... | 6. easy | ..... | ..... |
| 3. wet | ..... | ..... | 7. exciting | ..... | ..... |
| 4. dangerous | ..... | ..... | 8. hot | ..... | ..... |

I have a great **honour** to write to our **consulate** in Algeria. I would like to **inquire** many things about this country, because I want to pass two weeks in the south during the next winter holidays. Please tell me about the costs of travelling and living and the places I can visit. So I will be **grateful** if you send me a tourist card. Hoping to receive from you **as quickly as possible**. Thank you all.

I've known Ann **since** October.

I've known Ann **for** two months.

Have you met him **yet**? I haven't met him **yet**.

I've **already** posted the letters.

I've **just called** the doctor.

He **left just now**.

I **regret** very much that I am unable to accept your invitation to dinner on next Friday. It happens, **most unfortunately**, that my younger brother Ali has been operated on. He is still in the hospital.

Hoping that you would accept my **apology**, I will never forget your **kindness**.

Yours sincerely

Adjectives

Adjectives **describe nouns** ; they say “what kind” a noun is. Adjectives have the same form in both singular and plural number and normally come before nouns and after “be”.

That car is **fast**. (What kind of car? A fast one.)
She's got three **lovely** cats.

We usually form an **adverb** by adding **-ly** to an adjective. eg. slow - **slowly**. Some adverbs are the same as their adjectives: **hard, fast, early, daily, late, monthly**. eg. He runs **fast**. He is a **fast** runner. Some adverbs are irregular. eg. good - well

Adverbs

Adverbs **describe verbs**; they explain **how** (adverbs of manner), **where** (adverbs of place), **when** (adverbs of time) or **how often** (adverbs of frequency) something happens.

He drives **carelessly**. (How does he drive?
Carelessly.)

31 Write the correct adverbs.

 ly

wide ... *widely*
dangerous
sad

~~ly~~  ly

possible
simple
terrible

consonant + ~~ly~~  ily

busy
heavy
happy

32 Put the words from the list below into the correct column.

bad, well, early, angrily, easily, noisy, quick, quietly, daily, tidy, carelessly, slowly, hard,
late, large, monthly, careful, happily

Adjectives

Adverbs

Adjectives & Adverbs

bad

angrily

well

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

33 Put the adverbs from the list below into the correct column.

always, yesterday, on Sunday, here, last year, easily, now, usually, often,
there, away, everywhere, happily, carefully, seldom, badly

How	Where	When	How often
adverbs of manner	adverbs of place	adverbs of time	adverbs of frequency
<i>easily,</i>
.....
.....
.....

Underline the correct word, adjective or adverb.

- The children played quiet / quietly.
- It was raining heavy / heavily yesterday.
- She gave it a careful / carefully look.
- She speaks perfect / perfectly German.
- Have you seen Rebecca recent / recently?
- He's a slow / slowly runner.
- She sings good / well.
- She bought a nice / nicely dress.

safe

fast
safe

cheap
small

dangerous
attractive

big
slow

expensive
comfortable

comfortable  ['kʌmfətəbl]

spacious  ['speɪʃəs]

Singular, plural
Masculine, feminine

A rich man, rich men

A blue shirt, blue shirts

A rich woman, rich women

Most adjectives are always adjectives. That is, we don't use them as verbs or nouns or anything else.

Comparison of adjectives

<i>cheap</i>	<i>cheaper</i>	<i>cheapest</i>
<i>long</i>	<i>longer</i>	<i>longest</i>
<i>happy</i>	<i>happier</i>	<i>happiest*</i>

<i>But good</i>	<i>better</i>	<i>best</i>
<i>bad</i>	<i>worse</i>	<i>worst</i>

1. The **-er** form is called the **comparative**.
2. The **-est** form is called the **superlative**.

For longer words we say (for instance)

Expensive



more expensive



most expensive

Girl and boy

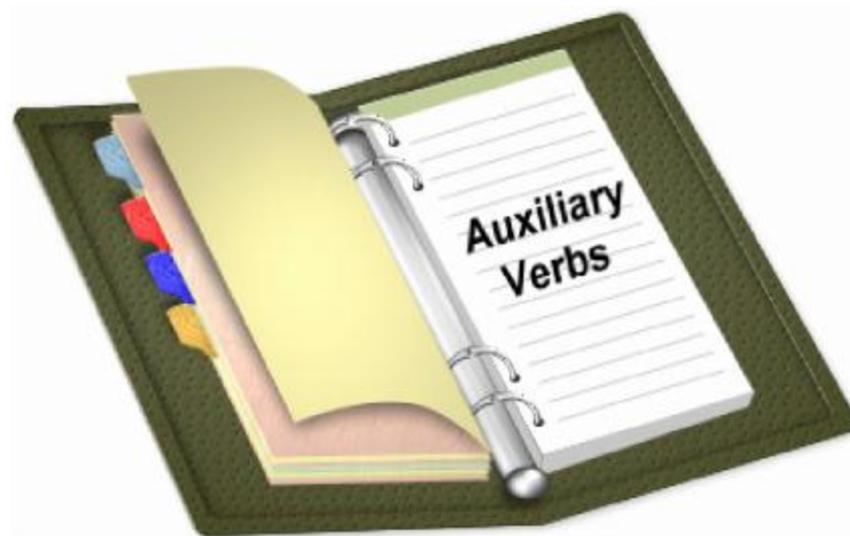
المذكر	المؤنث
ولد : boy	بنت : girl
أخ : brother	أخت : sister
ثور : bull	بقرة : cow
ديك : cock	دجاجة : hen
كلب : dog	كلبة : bitch
أب : father	أم : mother
ثعلب : fox	الثعلبة : vixen
حصان : horse	فرس : mare

husband : زوج	wife : زوجة
king : ملك	queen : ملكة
lord : سيد نبيل	lady : سيدة نبيلة
man : رجل	woman : امرأة
monk : راهب	nun : راهبة
nephew : ابن الأخ أو الأخت	niece : بنت الأخ أو الأخت
ram : كبش	ewe : نعجة
sir : سيد	madam : مدام
son : ابن	daughter : ابنة
uncle : عم ، خال	aunt : عممة ، خالة

Conjugation

الأفعال المساعدة

Auxiliary Verbs



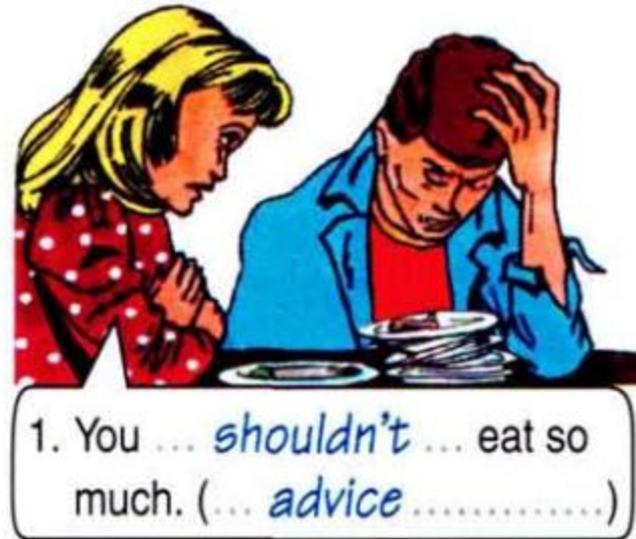


Auxiliaries : am, is, are, was, were, have got, Has got, had, have, shall, will, do, does, did, must, Can, would, could, should, ...

<i>I do</i>	<i>I do not/don 't</i>	<i>do I?</i>
<i>you do</i>	<i>you do not/don't</i>	<i>do you?</i>
<i>he does</i>	<i>he does not/doesn 't</i>	<i>does he?</i>
<i>she does</i>	<i>she does not/doesn 't</i>	<i>does she?</i>
<i>it does</i>	<i>it does not/doesn 't</i>	<i>does it?</i>
<i>we do</i>	<i>we do not/don 't</i>	<i>do we?</i>
<i>you do</i>	<i>you do not/don't</i>	<i>do you?</i>
<i>they do</i>	<i>they do not/don 't</i>	<i>do they?</i>

Modals

Can, could, must,
need, will, would,
shall, should, may,
might, ...etc



can

I **can** play the game. I **can't** play the game.

He **can** play the game. he **can't** play the game

I we you he She it they	Can can't	Do Play See come Drink Eat, ... etc
--	---------------------	---

I can do something

I know how to do it. Or it is possible for me to do it.

I can play the game

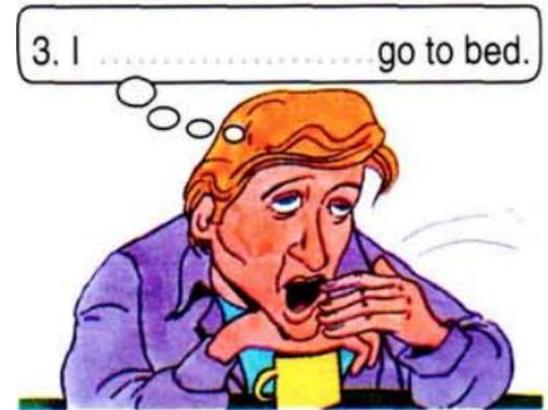
My father can play the game too.

Can	I we you he She it they	Do? Play? come? See? Drink? Eat?, ... etc
------------	--	--

1. Selma **can speak** Italian. But she **can't speak** Spanish.
2. **Can** you swim?. Yes, but I'm not a very good swimmer.
3. Can you give me a kiss?. I'm sorry. I can't.
4. I'm having a party next week. But Djamel and Selma can't come.

Should, shouldn't

Advice, obligation



1. We **should** treat people with more respect
2. You **should** look both ways before you cross the road
3. I **should** go and see her
4. You should drive carefully in bad weather
5. You should switch off the light when you leave the room.
6. Shouldn't you go and do it
7. We should all avoid staying out in the sun **too long**.

Can, can't

Ability to do something, in the present

Permission to do something in the present

1. I can speak English.
2. I can't speak English.
3. Can you go with me ?
4. Can you wait a moment, please ?
5. I can lend you my car till tomorrow
6. the situation **can change** from day to day
7. Help me if you can
8. I **can't** do it, try don't say I can't
9. Why **can't** I come in ?

Could

Ability to do something, in the past

- I could speak English

Permission to do something in the past

- I could go to the cinema

Polite question

- Could I go to the cinema, please ?

polite request

- Could you wait a moment please ?

Polite offer

- I could lend you my car till tomorrow

polite suggestion

- Could we visit my family at the weekend ?

possibility

- It could get very hot in the south

Could I
ask
you
a
question ?

Could Couldn't

When I was young I **could** play football all day.

Djamel was busy and therefore **couldn't** come to the meeting.

Will, shall, won't

Will

- Wish, request, demand (less polite than would)
 - **Will** you please shut the door ? (demand)
 - I think it will rain on Friday (prediction)
 - I will stop smoking (promise)
 - She is strange, she'll sit for hours without talking (habits)
 - Are you going with me ? Yes, I will.
-
- You won't lose it again.
 - I'll phone you tonight.
 - won't you come with us.
 - You will speak to no one, ...
 - You will come to see us, won't you ?.

Fill in: will, shall or be going to.

What we do tonight?

She probably pass her exams.

I've worked hard this summer. Now I have a holiday.

Be careful! Otherwise you hurt yourself.

Look! Tim win! He's much faster than the other runners.

Fill in: will, shall or be going to.

I'm afraid I not be able to come to your party.

..... we go to Spain for our holiday this year?

She travel around the world. She's leaving on Friday.

He buy a better car if he gets the job.

I start my university course in September.

Fill in: shall, will or be going to.

1. A: What do you want for lunch?

B: I think I 1) *will* have chicken and some salad.

2. A: John has come back from England.

B: I know. I 2) see him tonight.

3. A: I haven't got any money.

B: I 3) lend you some if you want me to.

Will

is used to express predictions, warnings, offers, promises, threats, requests, suggestions, on-the-spot decisions, opinions, hopes and fears (especially with words such as: think, expect, suppose, hope, believe, know and probably).
I expect she **will** come early. (prediction)

Shall

is used with **I** or **We** in questions, suggestions and offers.
Shall we go by train? (suggestion)
Shall I help you with your bags? (offer)

79 Write what was going to happen but didn't .



1. ... *She was going to buy a dress* ... but a thief stole her bag.



2. but he was too late.



3. but it blew up.

1. I can't get into my house.
2. Well, you **should** call the police, You **ought** to ask them for help, I don't think I'll be able to help you.
3. Strong **sunlight** is bad for the eyes.
4. She gave me a **watch** for my birthday.

Must

1. I **must** see a doctor soon.
2. I **must** water the plants.
3. I **must** lose some weight.

Mustn't

You **mustn't** forget this.

1. I .. *must* ... water the plants.



We **must** speak English.

We express **absence of necessity** or **prohibition** with :

mustn't (prohibition)

can't (prohibition)

needn't (it is not necessary)

don't need/have to (it is not necessary in the present/future)

didn't need/have to (it was not necessary in the past)

You **mustn't** park here. (It's forbidden.)

You **can't** enter the club without a card. (You are not allowed.)

You **needn't** take an umbrella. It isn't raining.

You **don't need/have to** do it now. You can do it later.

(It isn't necessary.)

He **didn't need/have to** go to work yesterday because it was Sunday. (It was not necessary.)



1. You ... *shouldn't* ... eat so much. (... *advice*

Make sentences as in the example :

You

must
mustn't
needn't

touch
buy
take
pull
do
tell

the washing-up. I did it myself.

the cat's tail.

those wires.

your medicine or you won't get better.

me the truth or I'll punish you.

any apples. I bought some yesterday.

You mustn't touch those wires.

.....

.....

.....

1. This **must** be Jack's house.
2. It **can't** be 7 o'clock already!
3. **Shall** I open the door for you?



1. You ... *shouldn't* ... eat so much. (... *advice*)

4. You **should** buy a new car.
5. You **can't** leave before 12 o'clock.
6. You'd **better** wash that immediately.
7. You **may** come in now.
8. **Could** I ask you a question?
9. He **ought to** be more careful.
10. There **might** be some apple pie left.
11. We've **got to** run to catch the bus.
12. **Would you like** me to give you a lift?
13. **Can** you pass me the salt, please?
14. I **must** go to the dentist's.
15. You **can** leave your coat here.
16. You **mustn't** tell anyone what happened.
17. I'll answer the phone for you.
18. He **could** play the piano when he was young.
19. She **needn't** wait for us.
20. **Do I have** to come with you?
21. Neil **may** not remember my phone number.
22. I **didn't need to** go to the bank yesterday.
23. You **must** listen to your parents!

(im)possibility - offer - advice - necessity - giving/refusing permission - ability in the past - absence of necessity - obligation - request - polite request - (im)probability - prohibition

137 Put a tick according to register.

	friendly	more polite	formal	more formal
1. Can you help me please?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2. Could you help me please?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3. May I use your phone?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4. Might I use your phone?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5. Can I use your phone?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6. You can sit with us.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7. You may sit with us.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8. You can't stay up late.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9. You may not sit with us.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10. Would you like me to help you?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
11. Shall I help you?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12. Can I have some more tea?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>



4. I get up early on
Sundays. (.....)



5. You play football
in the street. (.....)



6. Children pay to
get in. (.....)

1. I don't think he's rich.

CAN'T ... *He can't be rich.*.....

2. It isn't necessary for you to take a jacket.

NEED

3. Shall I help you with your luggage?

WOULD

4. I advise you to see a dentist.

OUGHT

5. It's just possible that he'll phone tonight.

MAY

6. You are not allowed to talk during the exam.

MUSTN'T

7. They don't have to go to the meeting this evening.

NEEDN'T

Complete the sentences using the words given in bold type.

e.g. I don't think she is Italian.

CAN'T *She can't be* Italian.

Do you want me to close the door?

SHALL the door?

I advise you to see a doctor.

SHOULD a doctor.

He couldn't ride a bike when he was four.

ABLE a bike when he was four.

You are not allowed to park here.

MUSTN'T here.

You don't have to finish it today.

NEEDN'T it today.

I think she is Brian's sister.

MUST Brian's sister.

It is possible that he will come by train.

MIGHT by train.

I advise you to work harder.

OUGHT harder.

قواعد الأفعال

English Verbs





All English Tenses

(Revision)



Present Simple vs Present Continuous

(I do)

(I am doing)



Present Continuous vs Present Perfect Continuous

(I am doing)

(I have been doing)



Present Perfect Continuous vs Present Perfect

(I have been doing)

(I have done)



Present Perfect vs Past Simple

(I have done)

(I did)

There are **four** principal parts of any verb in English :

1. The **infinitive** (the basic form of the verb).
2. The **present participle**.
3. The **past**.
4. The **past participle**.

Examples :

infinitive	present participle	past	past participle
To go	going	went	gone
To work	working	worked	worked
To sit	sitting	sat	sat
To cut	cutting	cut	cut

Present tense

Past tense

Future tense

Simple tense

Perfect tense

Continuous tense

Perfect Continuous tense

Conjugation of **to ask**

Present simple

I ask

You ask

He, she, it, asks

We ask

You ask

They ask

Present continuous

I **am** asking

you **are** asking

He, she, it, **is** asking

We **are** asking

You **are** asking

They **are** asking

Present perfect simple

I **have** asked

You have asked

He, she, it, has asked

We have asked

You have asked

They have asked

Present perfect continuous

I **have been** asking

You have been asking

He, she, it, has been asking

We have been asking

You have been asking

They have been asking

past simple

I asked

You asked

He, she, it, asked

We asked

You asked

They asked

past continuous

I **was** asking

you **were** asking

He, she, it, **was** asking

We **were** asking

You **were** asking

They **were** asking

past perfect simple

I **had** asked

You had asked

He, she, it, had asked

We had asked

You had asked

They had asked

past perfect continuous

I **had been** asking

You had been asking

He, she, it, had been asking

We had been asking

You had been asking

They had been asking

Future simple

I **will** ask

You will ask

He, she, it, will ask

We will ask

You will ask

They will ask

future continuous

I **will be** asking

you will be asking

He, she, it, will be asking

We will be asking

You will be asking

They will be asking

future perfect simple

I **will have** asked

You will have asked

He, she, it, will **have** asked

We will have asked

You will have asked

They will have asked

future perfect continuous

I **will have been** asking

You will have been asking

He, she, it, will **have** been asking

We will have been asking

You will have been asking

They will have been asking

Conditional present simple

I **would** ask

You would ask

He, she, it, would ask

We would ask

You would ask

They would ask

Conditional present continuous

I **would be** asking

you would be asking

He, she, it, would be asking

We would be asking

You would be asking

They would be asking

Conditional perfect simple

I **would have** asked

You would have asked

He, she, it, would have asked

We would have asked

You would have asked

They would have asked

Conditional perfect continuous

I **would have been** asking

You would have been asking

He, she, it would have been asking

We would have been asking

You would have been asking

They would have been asking

7 Add -ing to the following verbs and put them into the correct column.

run, swim, drive, play, lie, die, read, travel, cycle, put, ride, drink, write, fly, take, cut, sleep

+ ing	x → y + ing	x → ing	double consonant + ing
..... <i>playing</i>
.....
.....
.....
.....

11 Put the verbs in brackets into Present Simple or Present Continuous.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. She .. <i>studies</i> (study) every evening. | 5. Her husband never
(remember) her birthday. |
| 2. He (dance) with Mary now. | 6. We (watch) a film on
television at the moment. |
| 3. They (get) married next week. | |
| 4. She usually (take) the bus to school. | |

Present simple

Subject + Verb.1 + Object

Using the present simple

She **plays** the tennis.

(١) عادة دائمة.

I **study** mathematics

(٢) حالة دائمة أو حقيقة علمية.

1. Water **boils** at 100 C.
2. The earth **moves** around the sun.

Present simple

*Every day, every week, today, usually
Permanent situations, repeated actions,...*

1. I **don't speak** English.
2. I **smile** when I'**m** happy
3. I **can't** talk on the phone, I am eating lunch.
4. She **works** in Guelma.
5. He often **buys** her flowers.
6. The sun **sets** in the west.
7. The lesson **starts** at 10 o'clock.
8. I **put** lettuce, tomatoes, cucumber and onions in my salad.
9. The teacher usually **explains** the new words to us.
10. I **go** to school in the morning.
 1. He **plays** the tennis.
 2. I **live** in Guelma. She **lives** in New York.

Present continuous

Subject + **am**
is + **Verb-ing** + **Object**
are

1. (He **is/He's**) **playing** a basketball.
2. (They **are/They're**) **watching** the TV.

Using the present continuous

(١) عمل ما يحدث الآن.

1) (She **is/She's**) **watching** the TV.
I **am having** lunch.

(٢) حالة مؤقتة.

2) I cannot find a flat, so (I **am/I'm**) **living** with my brother.

(٣) تنظيم المستقبل القريب

3) (They **are/They're**) **traveling** on Friday.

Present continuous

In the middle of an action

To be (present) + verb + **ing**

1. She's cooking the dinner.
2. She's cleaning the room.
3. You are breaking the law.
4. Wait me a moment, I am cleaning my teeth.
5. He's **always telling** lies!
6. He's **looking** for a new job at the moment.
7. He's **staying** with some friends at the moment.

- هنالك أفعال تسمى أفعال الحس والإدراك **Stative (State) Verbs** لا تأتي أبداً في صيغة

الحاضر المستمر والتام المستمر ومن هذه الأفعال:

like مثل , love يحب , prefer يؤثر , hate يكره , want يريد , wish يتمنى ,
need يحتاج , think يعتقد , imagine يتخيل , believe يصدق , know يعرف ,
realize يدرك , mean يعني , understand يفهم , remember يتذكر ,
forget ينسى , suppose يفترض , hope يرجو , see يرى , seem يبدو , be يكون ,
appear يظهر , sound يصوت , taste يتذوق , smell يشم , belong يلاءم ,
contain يحتوي , ...

He **is wanting** to buy a new computer. ❌

He **wants** to buy a new computer.

I **am thinking**.

This ice cream **tastes** disgusting.

He **is tasting** the soup to see if it needs more salt.

الفرق بين الحاضر البسيط والحاضر المستمر:



عمل ما يحدث الآن.

Now, She **looks** at herself in the mirror. ❌

1. What is she doing? She .. *is looking*
(look) at *herself* in the mirror.

1) She **is working** here until Monday.

She **works** here until Monday. ❌

2) He **seems** very tired.

He **is seeming** very tired. ❌

3) Where is Ahmed? He **is cleaning** the car.

Where is Ahmed? He **cleans** the car. ❌

4) Vegetarians **do not eat** meat.

Vegetarians **are not eating** meat. ❌

Present perfect simple

Subject + ^{has}
have + **Verb.3** + **Object**

1. (I **have**/I've) **read** the book.
2. (He **has**/He's) **played** football.

Present perfect simple

(Has, have) + past participle

The result of an action

- I **have finished** my work
- She's **closed** the door.
- It's **stopped** raining
- The picture **has fallen** down
- I have eaten too much
- I have lost weight
- They **have gone** out

(١) عمل ما بدأ في الماضي وانتهى في الماضي ولكن ما زال أثره مستمراً حتى الآن.

٢) عمل ما بدأ في الماضي واستمر حتى الآن ويجب أن تأتي مع فترة زمنية هي فترة بداية العمل. وهما:
لمدة , for منذ since

(I **have**/I've) **studied** English **since** I started in a secondary school.

٣) للتعبير عن عمل ما حصل حديثاً، ويأتي غالباً على الصيغة 3. **have + just + Verb**.

1. (I **have**/I've) **won**.
2. (I **have**/I've) just **had** a delicious meal.

٤) عمل ما حدث في الماضي ولم يحدد زمن حدوث الفعل في الماضي وتأتي هذه الجمل غالباً مع:

بعدً **yet** , مرة **once** , دائماً **ever** , أبداً **never** , الآن **already** , قبل **before**

- times , مرات كثيرة **many times** , مرات عديدة **several times**

1. (I **have**/I've) **seen** that movie twenty times.
2. (I **have**/I've) **met** him once before.
3. People **have** **traveled** to the moon.

الفرق بين الحاضر التام والحاضر البسيط والمستمر:

١) الحاضر التام يدل على الماضي، أما الحاضر البسيط والمستمر فيدلان على الحاضر.

(I **have**/I've) **worked** here since October.

(I am/I'm) working here since October. ❌

I work here since October. ❌

Have you ever ...?

He has **always completed** his projects on time. (always, complete)

Have you **ever traveled** to India? (ever, travel)

He's not coming. I've **already asked** him. (already, ask)

I have **never visited** this museum. (never, visit)

Has she **finished** the work **yet**? (yet, finish)

She **still** hasn't **answered** my letter. (still, answer)

It has **stopped** raining. (stop)

Present perfect continuous

Subject + ^{has}have + been + Verb-ing + Object

لا تأتي جملة الحاضر التام المستمر إلا بوجود فترة زمنية هي فترة البداية. هما "since , for"

(I **have**/I've) **been playing** football **since** two hour.

(He **has**/He's) **been playing** **for** an hour.

Using the present perfect continuous

(١) عمل ما بدأ في الماضي ولم ينتهي بعد.

(I **have**/I've) **been writing** a letter **since** yesterday.



٢) إذا احتوت الجملة على "recently , lately" بمعنى "حديثاً ، مؤخراً". "في اللغة الفصحى فقط"
حديثاً، أنا أشعر بالتعب.
Recently, (I have/I've) been feeling tired.

1. **Recently**, (I **have**/I've) **been feeling** tired.
2. (She **has**/She's) **been watching** too much television **lately**.

٣) للتعبير عن عمل ما بدأ حديثاً بشرط ألا تأتي فترة زمنية. "في اللغة الفصحى فقط"

Mary **has been feeling** depressed.

- لا يمكن استخدام أفعال الحس والإدراك Stative Verbs مع صيغة الحاضر التام المستمر وإنما يستخدمونها فقط مع الحاضر البسيط والتام فقط.

الفرق بين الحاضر التام والحاضر التام المستمر:

الحاضر التام يستخدم للتعبير عن عمل ما بدأ في الماضي وانتهى ولكن أثره لم ينتهي بعد، أما الحاضر التام المستمر يستخدم للتعبير عن عمل ما بدأ في الماضي ولم ينتهي بعد.

1. (I **have**/I've) **been playing** a lot of football this week.
2. (I **have**/I've) **played** a lot of football this week.
3. (I **have**/I've) **read** your book.
4. (I **have**/I've) **been reading** your book.

Present perfect continuous

(Has, have) + **been** + **verb** + **ing**

- I am very tired because I **have been** **working** for hours.
- I **haven't been** **revising** enough.
- Oh, it **has been** **raining** all day.

Present perfect simple	Present perfect continuous
The result of an action	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• An action going on up to the present.• for actions recently completed.

الفرق بين الحاضر المستمر والحاضر التام المستمر:

١) نستخدم الحاضر التام المستمر عند وجود فترة زمنية هي فترة البداية. مثل: "since , for" ، أما الحاضر المستمر فلا يوجد فترة زمنية محددة. انظر إلى هذه المحادثة Conversation:

A. What **are doing** now?

B. I **am teaching**.

A. When **have you been teaching** since?

B. I **have been teaching** **since** three hours.

٢) لا يمكن أن يأتي الحاضر المستمر مع فترة زمنية "since , for".

1. I **am playing** football since an hour. ❌

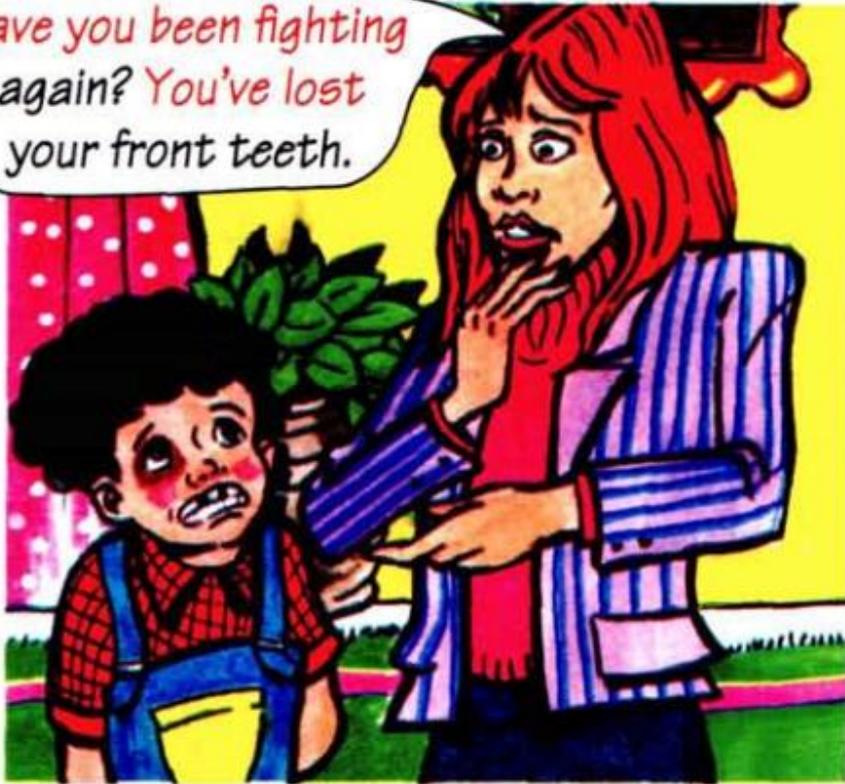
2. I **have been playing** football since an hour.

1. ... *visible results*



I ... *have been painting*
(paint) my room.

Have you been fighting again? You've lost your front teeth.



No, I haven't lost them, Mum. They are in my pocket!



Past Tense

Subject + Verb.2 + Object

- I **worked** in Germany.
- We **went** to the cinema yesterday.
- She **worked** in Germany.
- He **went** to the cinema yesterday.
- He **worked** in Germany.
- they **went** to the cinema yesterday.

(١) عمل ما حدث في الماضي.

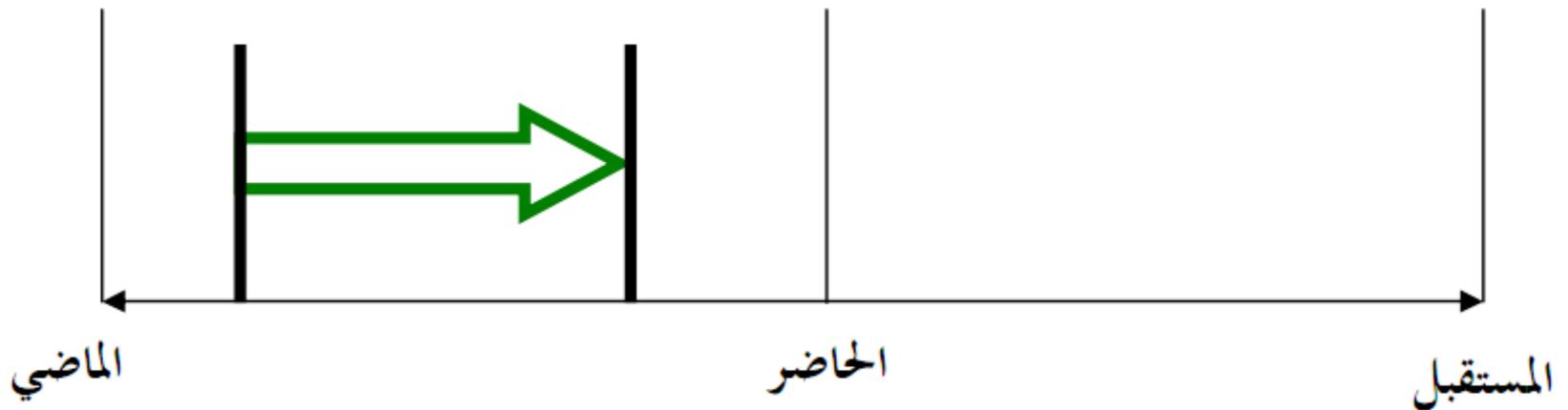
1. I **saw** her yesterday.
2. He **cooked** dinner last night.
3. I **started** to know my wife when I **was** 05 years old.

(٢) عمل ما بدأ في الماضي وانتهى في الماضي وتأتي غالباً مع:

from - to , **for -** , **all day** طوال اليوم , **all year** طوال السنة

1. I **worked** in Canada **from** 1990 **to** 1995.
2. I **lived** in Brazil **for** two years.
3. They **sat** at the beach **all day**.

Past Tense



He **was** absent from work yesterday because he **was** ill.

Past participle of regular verbs

The **verb** + **ed**

Work → worked

Answer → answered

Help → helped

Note

Plan → planned

Tie → tied, stop → stopped

Vowel + y → y + ed	Consonant + y → ied
Play → played	Cry → cried
Stay → stayed	Copy → copied
Employ → employed	Study → studied

You didn't phone

You **forgot** to call me and **left** me waiting for nothing.
No, I didn't forget. I called you but the line was busy.

What did you do then?

I **felt** ill so I **slept** for a couple of hours.

Are you checking on me? I can give you the details if you want.

I **drew** the curtains, I **blew** my nose, I **broke** a glass in the kitchen.
It **fell** off the table.

And I **went** to bed and **woke** up two hours later.

Is that exciting enough for you?

Or would you prefer me to say that I **met** my lover and
spent two or three wonderful hours with him?

Alright, sorry, it doesn't matter.

Simple past - Le prétérit	
be - was	forget - forgot
begin - began	fly - flew
bend - bent	freeze - froze
blow - blew	go - went
break - broke	grow - grew
cost - cost	leave - left
draw - drew	meet - met
drink - drank	ring - rang
eat - ate	say - said
fall - fell	shake - shook
feel - felt	sleep - slept
find - found	spend - spent
fight - fought	wake - woke

17 Add **-(e)d** to the verbs and put them in the correct column, then read them out.

cry, stay, stop, hate, taste, prefer, fry, dance, like, type, plan, annoy, destroy, pray, phone, beg, try,
tip, play, study, travel, enjoy, empty, tidy

-e → + d	double consonant + ed	consonant + y → ied	vowel + y → +ed
<i>hated</i>	<i>stopped</i>	<i>cried</i>	<i>stayed</i>
.....
.....

18 Add **-(e)d** to the verbs and put them in the correct column, then read them out.

add, wash, rain, need, help, want, count, rob, open, work, marry, close, love, end,
invite, laugh, hope, kiss

/ɪd/	/t/	/d/
after /t/, /d/	after /k/, /s/, /tʃ/, /f/, /p/, /ʃ/	after other sounds
<i>added</i>	<i>worked</i>	<i>opened</i>
.....
.....

Past simple tense

Describes action happening in the past

1. He **cooked** dinner last night.
2. I **started** to know my wife when I **was** 05 years old
3. I **was** angry because I **was** late
4. I **stayed** at home because of the rain
5. He **was** absent from work yesterday because he **was** ill
6. I **heard** somebody laughing in next room
7. He **ate** twice as much as I **did**
8. I **heard** a loud noise in the night
9. I **had** a good time at the party
10. The baby **cried** all night

1. What **did** you do **on** the weekend
2. How many people were there **on** the party

Complete these sentences using (a), (b) or (c).

- 1 I studied too much and I got (a) hot (b) tired (c) sick.
- 2 I ate too much and I got (a) hot (b) tired (c) sick.
- 3 I sat in the sun too much and I got (a) hot (b) tired (c) sick.

He **put** them in my car.

And he **puts** them in my car.



She broke her leg.

Special points

- **Since** is used to express a starting point.
- **For** is used to express a period of time.
- **Yet** is used in questions and negations.
- **Already** is used in statements and questions.
- **Just** + Present Perfect
- **Just now** + Past Simple

I've known Ann **since** October.

I've known Ann **for** two months.

Have you met him **yet**? I haven't met him **yet**.

I've **already** posted the letters.

I've **just called** the doctor.

He **left just now**.

Selma. What did you do last week?
I played football with my friends.

Short answers

Had I/you/he/she/it/we/
you/they eaten lunch?

Yes, I/you/he/she/it/we/
you/they **had**.

No, I/you/he/she/it/we/
you/they **hadn't**.

Selma. What did you do last week?
I **had played** football with my friends.



Put the verbs in brackets into Past Simple.

Many years ago people 1) .. *believed*.. (believe) that
some women 2) (be) witches.
These women 3) (not/live) in big
cities. They 4) (live) in small villages.
People 5) (think) they 6)
(behave) strangely because they 7)
(make) unusual medicines from plants and they 8)
..... (not/act) like other people. They
9) (say) that they 10)
(not/walk) but that they 11) (fly) on
brooms. Do you believe in witches?

Fill in Present Simple or Present Perfect.

I 1) .. *have known* .. (know) Timmy for a long time. We always 2)
..... (play) together. Timmy 3) (not/can) read or write because
he 4) (never/be) to school. He 5) (have) long
brown hair since he was born. He 6) (live) in our house for five
years. My parents 7) (take) care of him while I 8)
..... (be) at school. Timmy 9) (not/work); actually he
10) (never/have) a job. This 11) (not/be)
strange because Timmy 12) (be) my dog.



الفرق بين الماضي البسيط والحاضر المستمر:

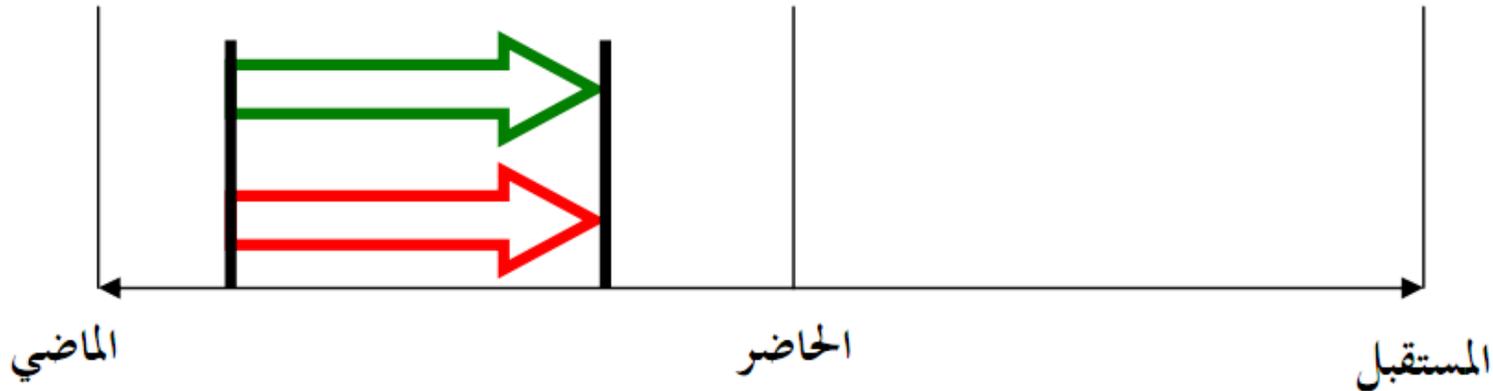
١) نستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن عمل مابداً في الماضي وانتهى في الماضي الأثر أيضاً انتهى في الماضي إن وجد، أما الحاضر التام نستخدم للتعبير عن عمل ما بدأ في الماضي وانتهى في الماضي ولكن الأثر لازال مستمراً. قارن بين الجملتين التاليتين:

1) (He **has/He's** **broken** her leg.

He **broke** her leg.

2) (She **has/She's**) gone.

She **went**. But, now she is here.



■ العمل ، ■ للأثر

٢) نستخدم الحاضر التام للتعبير عن عمل ما بدأ في الماضي ولم يحدد زمن حدوثه في الماضي، أما الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن عمل ما بدأ في الماضي ومعروف زمن حدوثه بشرط أن يكون قد انتهى في الماضي.

٣) إذا احتوت الجملة على "two years ago , last week , in 1995 , yesterday" فيجب استخدام الماضي البسيط وليس الحاضر التام.

1. (He **has/He's**) **left** last year. ❌
2. He **left** last year.

٤) نستخدم الحاضر التام على الأعمال التي حصلت حديثاً "مؤخراً". قارن بين الجملتين التاليتين:

1. Have you just had breakfast?
2. Did you have breakfast this morning?

Past Simple : verb + ed

Past Simple is used :

1. for actions which happened at a **stated time** in the past.

He **sold** his car two weeks ago.

(When? Two weeks ago.)

2. to express a **past state** or habit.

When she **was** young she **lived** in a small flat.

3. for past actions which happened **one after the other**.

She **put on** her coat, **took** her bag and **left** the house.

4. for a past action whose time is not mentioned and it is **not connected** with the present.

I **saw** Elvis Presley. (I won't see him again; he's dead. – period of time now finished)

Present Perfect : have + past participle

Present Perfect is used :

1. for actions which happened at an **unstated time** in the past.

He **has sold** his car. (When? We don't know.)

2. to express actions which have **finished** so **recently** that there's evidence in the present.

He **has just painted** the room. (The paint is wet.)

3. for actions which started in the past and **continue up to the present**.

She **has lived** in this house for two years.

(She still lives in this house.)

BUT : He **lived** in Australia for one year.

(He doesn't live in Australia now.)

4. for a past action whose time is not mentioned but it is **connected** with the present.

I've **met** Madonna. (I may meet her again; she's still alive. – period of time not finished yet)

**Time adverbs and expressions
used with Past Simple :**

**yesterday, last week/month/year/ Monday etc,
ago, how long ago, just now, then, when,
in 1980 etc.**

- ، اللغة الأميركية يُستخدم الماضي البسيط أكثر من الحاضر التام على عكس اللغة البريطانية فاللغة الأميركية تستخدم الماضي البسيط عوضاً عن الحاضر التام في الفرقين ١ ، ٢ السابقة.

Past continuous

Subject + ^{was}
were + Verb-ing + Object

معظم الأحيان تأتي جملة الماضي المستمر بوجود جملتين بينهما رابط. مثل: "when , while" ، إذا كانت الجملة الأولى ماضي مستمر فيجب أن تكون الجملة الثانية ماضي بسيط.

1. I **was watching** TV when she **cried**.
2. While John **was sleeping** last night, someone **stole** his car.
3. I **was living** in London **last year**.

Past continuous

To be in past + verb + ing

A continuous activity in a particular time in the past.

- What's the time? It's **12** o'clock. look
- At 8 o'clock last night she was watching T.V

At 9 o'clock	→	he started swimming
At 11 o'clock	→	he finished swimming
At 10 o'clock	→	He was swimming

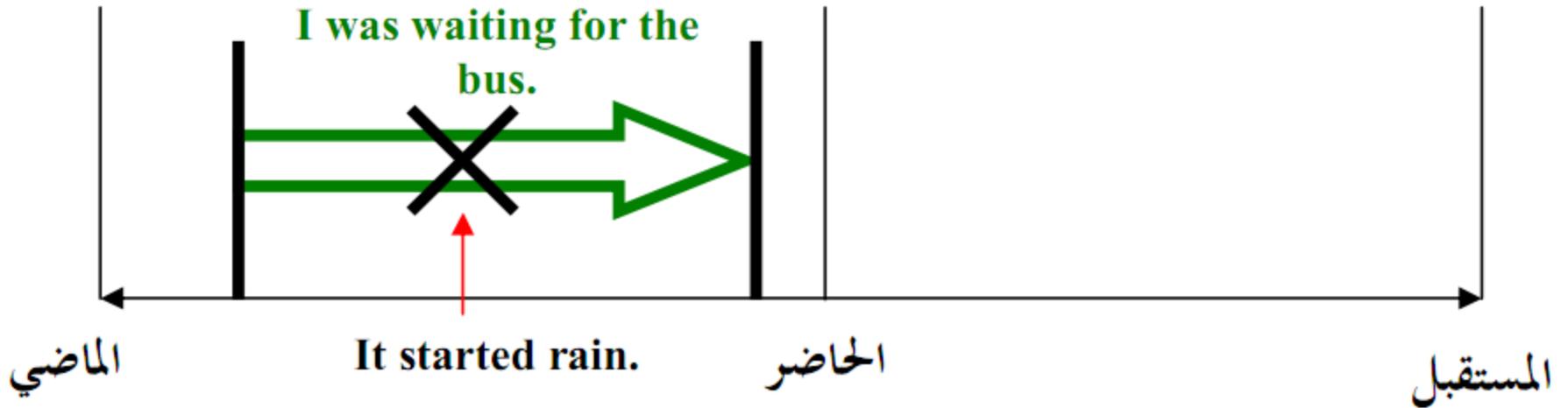
1. He **was swimming**.
2. I **was listening** to the radio when you called.
3. I **was cooking** breakfast when the telephone rang.

(١) لوصف حالة مؤقتة في الماضي.

I **was living** in Geneva last year.

(٢) عمل ما كليجوري في الماضي حين قطعه عمل آخر ليس في نهايته

While I **was waiting** for the bus, it started rain. Or
I **was waiting** for the bus **while** it started rain.

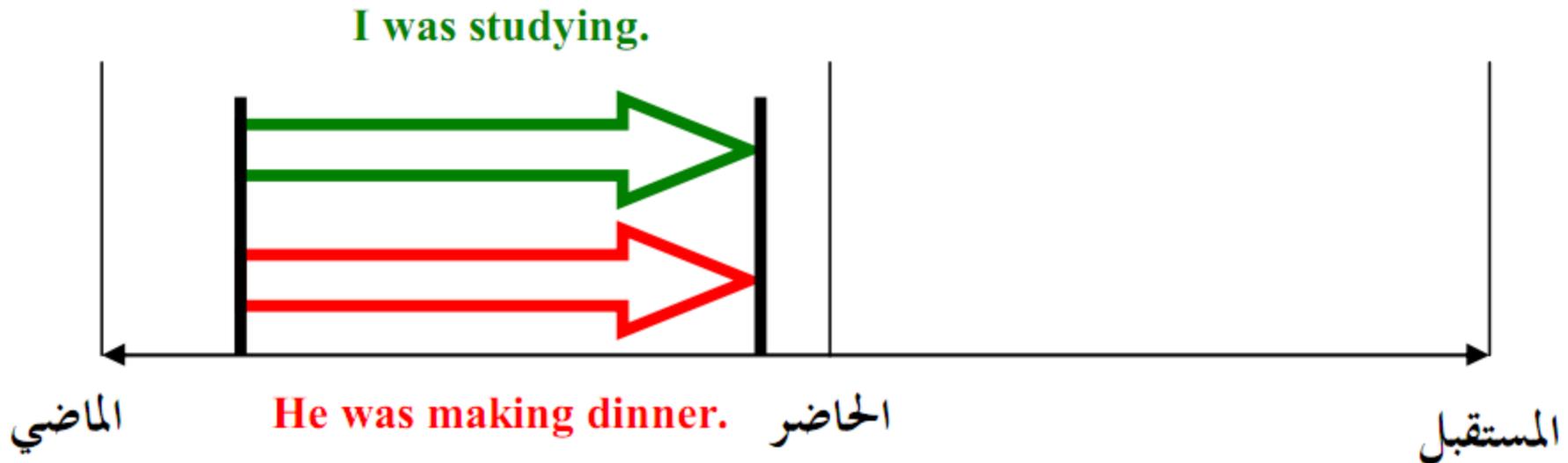


٣) عندما يحدث عملان في الوقت نفسه في الماضي ويجب أن يأتي هذا النوع من الجمل بجملتين بينهما رابط هو "while"، ويجب أن تكون الجملتين ماضي مستمر.

I **was studying** while he was making dinner.

or

While I was studying, he was making dinner.



- لا يمكن استخدام أفعال الحس والإدراك **Stative Verbs** مع صيغة الماضي المستمر وإنما يستخدمونها فقط مع الماضي البسيط والتام.

He wanted a car.

هو كان يريد سيارة. أو هو أراد سيارة.

Past perfect (simple)

Subject + had + Verb.3 + Object

معظم الأحيان تأتي جملة الماضي التام بوجود جملتين بينهما رابط. مثل: "after , before , when" وأحياناً "until"، إذا كانت الجملة الأولى ماضي تام فيجب أن تكون الجملة الثانية ماضي بسيط.

(He **had**/He'd) **written** five letters **before** she **answered** him.

We **went** on a walk after (we **had**/we'd) **finished** dinner.

When the play **had finished**, The audience **left**.

Past perfect (simple)

An action before a past time

Describes action happening in the past before some other past tense action

e.g.

- When we got there the rain **had stopped**
- Before I cooked dinner, I **had walked** to the supermarket.
- When I met him, he **had bought** some eggs
- Before I went to bed I had watched the film
- When I finished work I had met all my friends
- I didn't leave my office until I had finished my work
- When Selma had cooked dinner, she went out
- Before she went out, she had cooked dinner

لنفرض أن العمل الأول **A** والعمل الثاني **B**.

(١) العمل **A** بدأ في الماضي وانتهي قبل أن يبدأ العمل **B** في الماضي.

The audience **left** when the play **had finished**.



٢) للتعبير عن عمل ما حدث قبل وقت محدد في الماضي.

I **had visited** U.S. once **before** in 1988.

It was afternoon on 14 January in Las Vegas casino. At one of the tables was Chris. For three years Chris had saved every penny. He had rarely gone out and he hadn't spent anything on his house. Finally, he had sold the house and with 145,000 in his pocket...

وضعنا الجمل السابقة في صيغة الماضي التام لأنها حدثت كلها قبل ١٤ يناير، وقت القصة.

الفرق بين الماضي البسيط والماضي التام:

"two years ago , last week , in 1995 , yesterday" إذا احتوت الجملة على
فيجب استخدام الماضي البسيط وليس الماضي التام.

(I **had/ I'd**) **met** him yesterday and I **told**
him the good news. ❌

I **met** him yesterday and I **told** him the
news.

Past Perfect



When Tom phoned he **had left**.
(He left before Tom phoned.)

Past Simple



When she phoned he **left**.
(She phoned and then he left.)

action in the middle



(at 11 o'clock / sleep) *They were sleeping at 11 o'clock.*

Before I spend my prayer I had
performed ablutions.

Fill in Past Simple or Past Perfect, then state which action happened first.

1. When I *arrived* (arrive) at the station, the train *had left* (leave). **first action** : *had left*
2. We (light) the candles because the lights (go off).
first action :
3. When I got home I (discover) that somebody (break into) my flat.
first action :
4. The patient (die) before the ambulance (reach) the hospital.
first action :
5. John (eat) all the cakes by the time the other children (arrive) at the party. **first action** :

Past Perfect: had + past participle

Affirmative

Negative

Interrogative

Long form

Short form

Long form

Short form

I had waited

I'd waited

I had not waited

I hadn't waited

Had I waited?

You had waited

You'd waited

You had not waited

You hadn't waited

Had you waited?

He had waited

He'd waited

He had not waited

He hadn't waited

Had he waited?

She had waited

She'd waited

She had not waited

She hadn't waited

Had she waited? etc

It had waited

It'd waited

It had not waited

It hadn't waited

Negative-Interrogative

We had waited

We'd waited

We had not waited

We hadn't waited

You had waited

You'd waited

You had not waited

You hadn't waited

Hadn't you waited?

They had waited

They'd waited

They had not waited

They hadn't waited

Hadn't he waited? etc

Past Perfect Continuous

Subject + had + been + Verb-ing + Object

لا تأتي جملة الماضي التام المستمر إلا بوجود جملتين بينهما رابط. مثل: "after , before , when" وأحياناً "until"، إذا كانت الجملة الأولى ماضي تام مستمر فيجب أن تكون الجملة الثانية ماضي بسيط.

لا تأتي جملة الماضي التام المستمر مثل الحاضر التام المستمر إلا بوجود فترة زمنية هي فترة البداية . هما: "since , for".

She **had been talking** for half an hour **before** she stopped.

Past perfect continuous

A continuous activity before another activity in the past

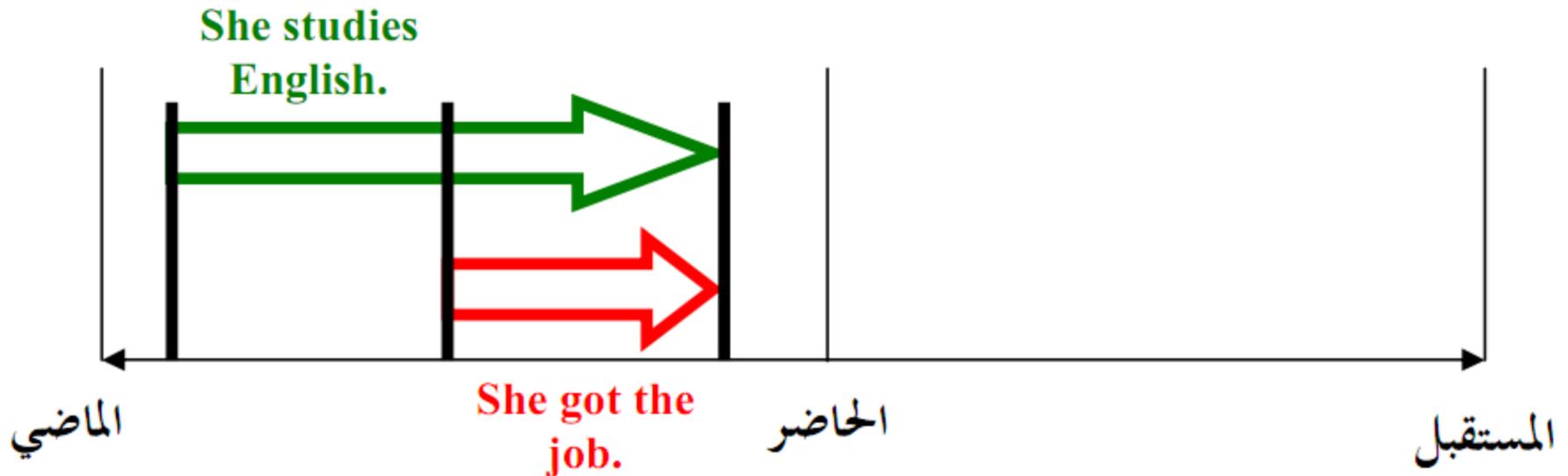
- I **had been playing** for two hours **before** my friend arrived.
- It **had been raining** for days **before** I got there.
- It **had been raining** since the day **before** yesterday.
- he had been waiting for an hour **before** she arrived.

He **had been teaching** at the University for more than a year **before** he left for Asia.

لنفرض أن العمل الأول **A** والعمل الثاني **B**.

(١) العمل **A** بدأ في الماضي ثم بدأ بعده العمل **B** في الماضي ولكن العمل **A** لم ينتهي عندما بدأ العمل **B**. وانتهى العملاّن مع بعضهما في الماضي.

She **had been studying** English for two years before she **got** the job.



٢) للتعبير عن سبب لحدث ما في الماضي. "في اللغة الفصحى فقط"

Ali **was** tired because he **had been pushing**.

الفرق بين الماضي التام والماضي التام المستمر:

يستخدم الماضي التام لعمل بهما في الماضي وانتهى قبل أن يبدأ عمل آخر في الماضي ، أما الماضي التام المستمر يستخدم لعهلاً في الماضي قبل بدأ عمل آخر ولم ينتهي العمل الأول عند بدأ العمل الثاني في الماضي. قارن بين الجملتين التاليتين:

They had not met an American until they met John.

They had been talking for an hour before Tony arrived.

- لا يمكن استخدام أفعال الحس والإدراك **Stative Verbs** مع صيغة الماضي التام المستمر وإنما يستخدمونها فقط مع الماضي البسيط والتام فقط.

Past Perfect Continuous: had been + verb -ing

Affirmative

I had been waiting
You had been waiting
He had been waiting
She had been waiting
It had been waiting
We had been waiting
You had been waiting
They had been waiting

Negative

I had not been waiting
You had not been waiting
He had not been waiting
She had not been waiting
It had not been waiting
We had not been waiting
You had not been waiting
They had not been waiting

Interrogative

Had I been waiting?
Had you been waiting?
Had he been waiting?
Had she been waiting?
Had it been waiting?
Had we been waiting?
Had you been waiting?
Had they been waiting?

Short form

I'd been waiting ... etc

Short form

I hadn't been waiting ... etc

Negative-Interrogative

Hadn't you been waiting?

Write what each person had been doing using verbs from the list below.

sleep, write, walk, wash, play, cut, listen, work

1. Jane's clothes were wet.

She ... *had been washing* her dog.

2. The boys were dirty.

They football.

3. John was not happy that the noise woke him.

He

4. Dave had stains on his shoes.

He the grass.

5. Carol's ears hurt.

She to the radio for two hours.

6. Kate had black ink on her hands.

She for three hours.

7. Anne's feet hurt.

She for two hours.

8. Nina looked tired.

She all morning.

Future Tense

Subject + will + Verb.1 + Object

– لا يمكن أن تأتي أي جملة من جمل المستقبل بعد "when , while , before , after".

I **will see** a movie **when** I **will have** finished my homework. ❌

I **will see** a movie **when** I **have finished** my homework.

1. (I **will/I'll**) **go** to the school tomorrow.
2. Ali **will be** here.

للتعبير عن عمل سيحدث أو يتم في وقت ما من المستقبل.

(She **will/She'll**) **talk** to you.

I am going to visit Djamel. **Future**

I am visiting Djamel on Sunday. **Future**

Future simple

*Describes action happening in the **future**.*

Will + **verb** (infinitive)

- I **will** **cook** dinner for us tomorrow
- I **will** **travel** to Africa next year
- I **will** **rest** here because I am tired
- It **will** **snow** tonight if it gets cold
- I **will** **see** you later
- the money **will** **go** into your account at the end of the month.
- I think it **will** **be** hot and sunny tomorrow.

In the future people **will live on** the moon.

Future Continuous

Subject + will be + Verb-ing + Object

معظم استخدامات المستقبل المستمر بوجود جملتين بينهما رابط. مثل: "when , while" ، إذا كانت الجملة الأولى مستقبل مستمر فيجب أن تكون الجملة الثانية حاضر بسيط.

1. (They **will/They'll**) **be waiting**.
2. (He **will/He'll**) **be sleeping**.

(١) لوصف شيء أو عمل في وقت محدد من المستقبل.

(I **will/I'll**) **be waiting** for you at 9 o'clock.

Future continuous

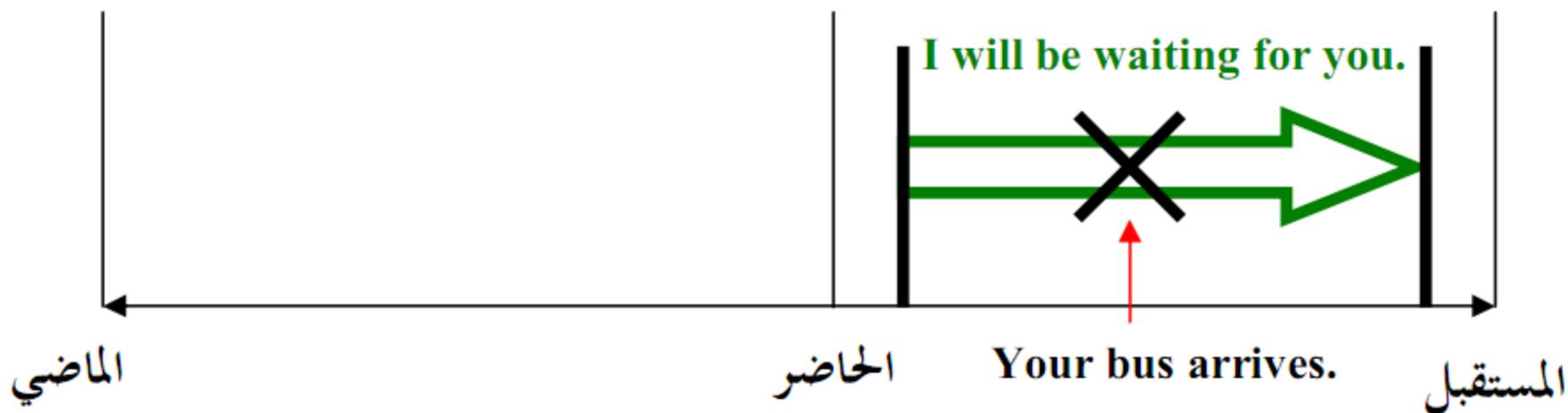
Will + be +(ing-form)

1. Tomorrow, I **will** be **working** all day.
2. **Will** you **be** **staying** here long?.
3. We **won't** **be** **doing** much on Sunday.
4. we **will** **be** **having** tea at seven.
5. I **will** **be** **phoning** my mother tonight.
6. I'll be waiting for you.

Where **will you be going** for your holiday?

٢) عمل ما سيجري في المستقبل وسيقطعه عمل آخر "ليس في نهايته فبذلك تصبح الجملة مستقبل تام" ويجب أن تأتي مع "when , while".

(I **will**/**I'll**) **be waiting** for you **when** your bus arrives.



Future intention

I'm, is, are + **going to**

1. They **are going to play** the game.
2. I'm **going to play** the game.
3. I'm **going to sit** in the waiting room.
4. He **is going to make** a speech.
5. I **am going to go** at home.

I am going to go at home.

Future Perfect

Subject + will have + Verb.3 + Object

معظم الأحيان تأتي جملة المستقبل التام بوجود جملتين بينهما رابط. هم "after , before , when" وأحياناً " - by" ، إذا كانت الجملة الأولى مستقبل تام مستمر فيجب أن تكون الجملة الثانية حاضر بسيط.

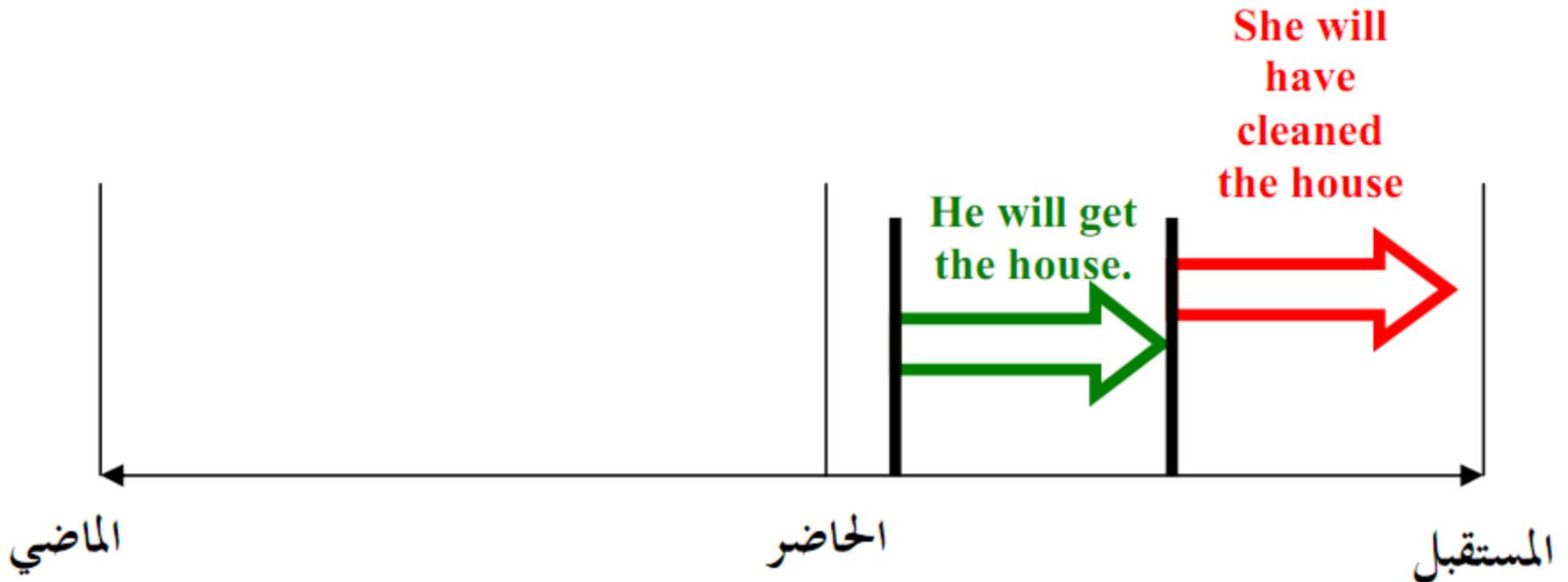
1. The Post Office will **have returned** the package **before** I **can take**.
2. I **will have perfected** my English **by the time** I **come back** from the U.S

لنفرض أن العمل الأول A والعمل الثاني B.

(١) العمل A سيبدأ في المستقبل وسينتهي قبل أن يبدأ العمل B في المستقبل.

She **will have cleaned** the house after he **gets** it. or

After he **gets** house, she **will have cleaned** it.



Future perfect simple

Will have + past participle

- I **will have** got home at six.
- I **won't have** got home at six.
- I'll **have** finished this book soon. I'm nearly at the end.
- She will have got home at six.
- I will cook dinner tomorrow night and then I **will have cooked** dinner every night for a week.
- I will have written the report by six. (result of an action)

Future Perfect Continuous

Subject + will be have + Verb-ing + Object

لا تأتي جملة المستقبل التام المستمر إلا بوجود جملتين بينهما رابط. هم , when , before , after "
"by - إذا كانت الجملة الأولى ماضي تام مستمر فيجب أن تكون الجملة الثانية حاضر بسيط.
لا تأتي جملة المستقبل التام المستمر مثل الحاضر التام المستمر إلا بوجود فترة زمنية هي فترة البداية هما
"since , for"

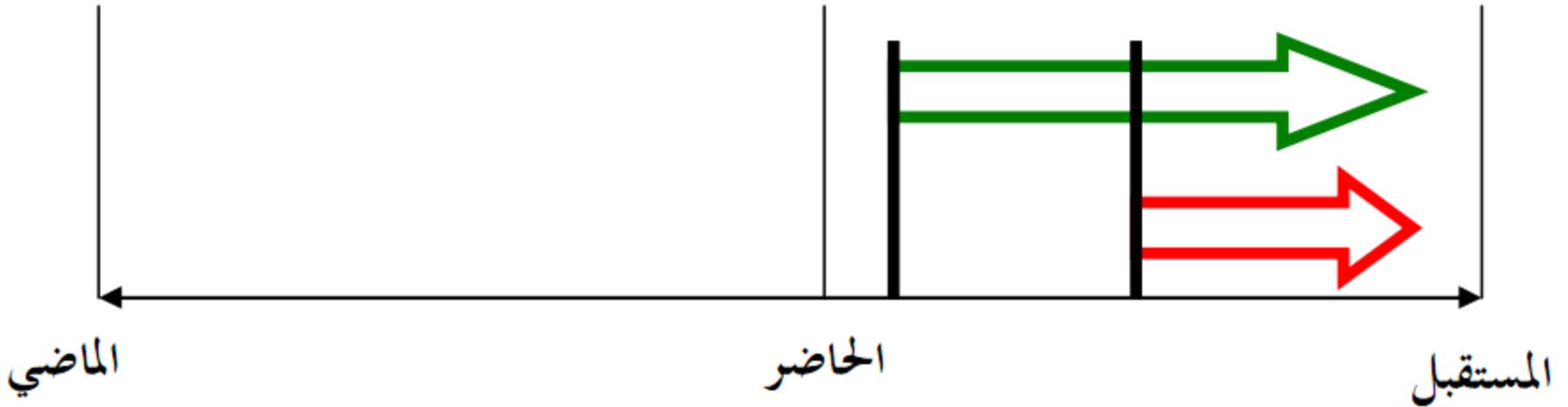
I will have been working for two hours
when her plane arrives.

لنفرض العمل الأول A والعمل الثاني B.

١) العمل A سيبدأ في المستقبل ثم بدأ بعده العمل B ولكن العمل A لم ينتهي عند بدأ العمل B.

They **will have been talking** for an hour by the time Tony arrives.

Mary **will have been teaching** at the University for more than a year by the time he leaves to Asia.



٢) للتعبير عن سبب لحدث ما في المستقبل. "في اللغة الفصحى فقط"

George's English will be perfect when he leaves because he will have been studying English in the United States for two years.

- لا يمكن استخدام أفعال الحس والإدراك **Stative Verbs** مع صيغة المستقبل التام المستمر وإنما يستخدمونها فقط مع المستقبل البسيط والتام.

Future perfect continuous

will have been + ing-form

- I will have been writing it for a week.
- I won't have been living here long.
- I will have been working for ten years.

الفرق بين المستقبل التام والمستقبل التام المستمر:

I will have read when my roommate returns.

I will have been reading for an hour when my roommate returns.

الفرق بين المستقبل المستمر والمستقبل التام المستمر:

I will be reading when my roommate returns.

I will have been reading for an hour when my roommate returns.

Future in the Past

Subject + would + Verb.1 + Object

Subject + ^{was}
were + going to + Verb.1 + Object

Subject + ^{was}
were + to + Verb.1 + Object

- I **was going to buy** a car.
- They **would go** to the cinema.
- He **was to become** a president.

Fill in the Present Perfect S. or Cont. or Past Perfect S. or Cont.



1. Her feet ached last Monday. ...
She ... *had been walking* ...
(walk) for six hours.



2. Don is cold. He
..... (swim)
in the lake.



3. He can't pay the bill.
He
(lose) his wallet.



4. The woman drowned in the river. She
..... (fish).



5. He bought a car after he
..... (save) enough money.



6. She signed the letter after she
..... (write) it.



7. Her hair is wet. She
..... (wash) it.



8. He felt sick because he
..... (eat) too much.



9. He was hot. He
..... (run) for an hour.

**Regular
verbs**

infinitive	Simple past	Past participle
To act	acted	acted
To agree	agreed	agreed
To answer	Answered	Answered
To believe	Believed	Believed
To clean	Clean	Clean
To consist	Consisted	Consisted
To close	Closed	Closed
To cook	Cooked	Cooked
To cross	Crossed	Crossed
To carry	Carried	Carried
To dress	Dressed	Dressed
To depend	Depended	Depended

Regular and irregular verbs

Are these verbs regular or irregular in the past simple? Put the verbs in the correct column.

- ▶ say
- ▶ sing
- ▶ dance
- ▶ sleep
- ▶ like
- ▶ hurt
- ▶ wear
- ▶ play
- ▶ open
- ▶ feel

Regular	Irregular



**Irregular
verbs**

الأفعال الشاذة

Irregular Verbs

التصريف الأول "الحاضر أو المصدر"	المعنى	التصريف الثاني "الماضي"	التصريف الثالث "اسم المفعول"
-------------------------------------	--------	----------------------------	---------------------------------

A

abide *	يبقى ، يقيم	abode	abode
awake	ينهض ، يرتفع	awoke	awaken
arise *	يستيقظ ، يوقظ	arose	arisen

B

be/am/is/are	يكون	was/were	been
bear	تحمل ، تلد	bore	borne
beat	يضرب ، يخفق	beat	beaten

become	يصبح	became	become
befall	يحدث	befell	befallen
beget	ينجب ، يسبب	begot	begotten
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
behold	يشاهد ، يلاحظ	beheld	beheld
bend	ينحني	bent	bent
beseech	يلتمس ، يتوسل	besought	besought
beset	يزعج ، يطوق	beset	beset
bet *	يراهن	bet	bet
betake	يذهب ، يعمد إلى	betook	betaken

bethink	يتأمل ، يتذكر	bethought	bethought
bid	يأمر ، يدعو	bade	bidden
bide *	يبقى ، يقاوم	bode	bide
bind	يربط ، يقيد	bound	bound
bite	يعض ، يلدغ	bit	bitten

bleed	يتزف	bled	bled
bless *	يبارك	blest	blest
blow	يهب ، ينفخ	blew	blown
break	يكسر ، ينكسر	broke	broken
breed	يلد ، يولد	bred	bred
bring	يجلب ، يحضر	brought	brought
broadcast	يذيع	broadcast	broadcast
build	يبنى	built	built
burn *	يحرق ، يحترق	burnt	burnt
burst	يفجر ، ينفجر	burst	burst

buy	يشترى	bought	bought
C			
can	يستطيع	could	could
cast	يرمي	cast	cast
catch	يمسك	caught	caught
chide	يوبخ	chided	chidden
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
cleave	يشق	cleft	cleft
cline	يتماسك	clung	clung

come	يأتي	came	come
cost	يكلف	cost	cost
creep	يزحف	crept	crept
cut	يقطع	cut	cut

D

deal	يتعامل ، يعامل	dealt	dealt
dig	يحفّر	dug	dug
do	يفعل ، يعمل	did	done

draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
dream *	يحلم	dreamt	dreamt
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk
drive	يسوق	drove	driven
dwell *	يسكن	dwelt	dwelt

E

eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
------------	------	------------	--------------

F

fall	يسقط ، يقع	fell	fallen
feed	يطعم	fed	fed

feel	يلمس ، يحس	felt	felt
fight	يتقاتل ، يتشاجر	fought	fought
find	يجد ، يكتشف	found	found
flee	يفر	fled	fled
fling	يقذف بقوة	flung	flung
fly	يطير	flew	flown
forbid	يحفر ، يمنع	forbade	forbidden
foreknow	يعرف مقدماً	foreknew	foreknown
foresee	يتنبأ	foresaw	foreseen
foretell	يتكهن	foretold	foretold

forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
forgive	يفغر ، يصفح	forgave	forgiven
forsake	يتخلى عن ، يهجر	forsook	forsaken
freeze	يتجمد	froze	frozen

G

get	ينال	got	<U.S> gotten <G.B> got
------------	------	------------	---------------------------

give	يعطي	give	given
go	يذهب	went	gone
grind	يطحن	ground	ground
grow	ينمو ، ينبت	grew	grown

H

hang	يعلق	hung	hung
have	يملك	had	had
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
hide	يخبي ، يختبئ	hid	hidden
hit	يضرب	hit	hit

hold	يمسك ، يحتفظ	held	held
hurt	يجرح ، يؤذي	hurt	hurt

I

inlay	يطعم	inlaid	inlaid
--------------	------	---------------	---------------

K

keep	يحمي ، يظل	kept	kept
kneel *	يركع	knelt	knelt
knit *	يقطب حاجبيه	knit	knit
know	يعرف	knew	known

L

lay	يضع	laid	laid
------------	-----	-------------	-------------

L

lay	يضع	laid	laid
lead	يقود ، يرشد	led	led
lean *	يستند ، يميل	leant	leant
leap *	يقفز	leapt	leapt
learn *	يعلم ، يتعلم	learnt	learnt
leave	يغادر	left	left
lend	يقرض	lent	lent

let	يدع	let	let
lie	يتمدد ، يكذب	lay	lain
light	يشرق ، يشتعل	lit	lit
lose	يفقد	lost	lost

M

make	يصنع ، يجعل	made	made
may	يمكن	might	might
mean	يعني	meant	meant
meet	يقابل	met	met
mislay	يضيع	mislaid	mislaid

mislead	يضلل ، يخدع	misled	misled
misspend	يبدد	misspent	misspent
mistake	يخطئ	mistook	mistaken
misunderstand	يسئ الفهم	misunderstood	misunderstood
mow *	يحصد	mowed	mowed

O

outdo	يهزم ، يتغلب على	outdid	outdone
overbear	يقهر ، يستبد	overborne	overborne
overcast	يعتم	overcast	overcast
overcome	يقهر ، ينهك	overcame	overcome

overdo	يبالغ	overdid	overdone
overfeed	يتخم	overfed	overfed
overrun	يجتاح	overran	overrun
oversee	يراقب ، يفحص	oversaw	overseen
oversleep	يستغرق في النوم	overslept	overslept
overtake	يتجاوز ، يفاجئ	overtook	overtaken
overthrow	يهزم ، يدمر	overthrew	overthrown

P

partake	يقاسم ، يشارك	partook	partaken
pay	يدفع	paid	paid
put	يضع	put	put

Q

quit *	يفادر ، يكف عن	quit	quit
---------------	----------------	-------------	-------------

R

read	يقراً	read	read
rebuild	يعيد بماء	rebuilt	rebuilt
redo	يعيد عمل شيء	redid	redone
remake	يصنع ثانية	remade	remade

rend	يتزع بعنف	rent	rent
repay	يفي ، يرد	repaid	repaid
retell	يروى ثانية	retold	retold
rewrite	يعيد صياغة	rewrote	rewritten
rid *	يخلص ، يحرر	rid	rid
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
ring	يرن	rang	rung
rise	ينهض	rose	risen
run	يعدو ، يشغل	ran	run

S

saw *	ينشر	sawed	sawn
say	يقول	said	said
see	يرى	saw	seen
seek	يبحث عن	sought	sought
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
send	يرسل	sent	sent

set	يقرر	set	set
sew *	يخيط	sewed	sewn
shake	يهز ، يهتز	shook	shaken
shall	سوف	should	should
shed	يذرف ، يسفح	shed	shed
shine *	يتألق ، يلمع	shone	shone
shoot	يطلق النار	shot	shot
show *	يرى ، يبين	showed	shown
shrink	يتقلص	shrank	shrunk
shut	يغلق ، يحبس	shut	shut

sing	يفني ، يفرد	sang	sung
sink	يفرق ، يغطس	sank	sunk
sit	يجلس	sit	sit
slay	يذبح	slew	slain
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
slide	يتزلق	slid	slid
slit	يشق	slit	slit
smell *	يشم	smelt	smelt
smite	يضرب بقوة	smote	smitten
sow	يبذر	sowed	sown

speak	يتكلم	spoke	spoken
speed *	يسرع	sped	sped
spell *	يتهجى	spelt	spelt
spend	ينفق	spent	spent
spin	يفزل ، يدور بسرعة	span	spun
spit	يبصق	spat	spat

split	يشق	split	split
spoil *	يتلف ، يدلل	spoilt	spoilt
spread	ينشر ، ينتشر	spread	spread
spring	يقفز	sprang	sprung
stand	يقف ، يصمد	stood	stood
steal	يسرق	stole	stolen
stick	يلصق	stuck	stuck
sting	يلسع ، يلدغ	stung	stung
stink	ينتن	stank	stunk
stride	يمشي بخطى واسعة	strode	stridden

strike	يضرب	struck	struck
strive *	يكافح	strove	striven
swear	يقسم	swore	sworn
sweep	يكنس ، يكتسح	swept	swept
swell	ينتفخ ، يتورم	swelled	swollen
swim	يسبح	swam	swum
swing	يتأرجح	swung	swung

T

take	يأخذ	took	taken
teach	يعلم	taught	taught

tear	يمزق	tore	torn
tell	يروى ، يقص	told	told
think	يعتقد ، يفكر	thought	thought
thrive *	يزدهر	throve	thriven
throw	يقذف	threw	thrown
thrust	يدفع ، يقحم ، يطعن	thrust	thrust

tread	يطأ ، يسحق	trod	trodden
--------------	------------	-------------	----------------

U

undergo	يتحمل ، يقاسى	underwent	undergone
----------------	---------------	------------------	------------------

understand	يفهم	understood	understood
-------------------	------	-------------------	-------------------

undertake	يتعهد ، يتولى	undertook	undertaken
------------------	---------------	------------------	-------------------

upset	يقلق ، يفسد	upset	upset
--------------	-------------	--------------	--------------

W

wake *	يوقظ ، يستيقظ	woke	woken
---------------	---------------	-------------	--------------

waylay	يمكن	waylaid	waylaid
---------------	------	----------------	----------------

wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
-------------	-------	-------------	-------------

weave	ينسج	wove	woven
wed *	يزوج ، يتزوج	wed	wed
weep	يبكي	wept	wept
wet *	يبلل	wet	wet
will	سوف	would	would
win	يفوز ، يربح	won	won
wind	ينفخ ، يلف	wound	wound
withdraw	يسحب ، ينسحب	withdrew	withdrawn
withhold	يكبح ، يمتنع عن	withheld	withheld
withstand	يقاوم ، يصمد	withstood	withstood
wring	يعصر ، يلوي	wrung	wrung
write	يكتب ، يؤلف	wrote	written

I have ...and I've got ...

You can say **I have** or **I've got**, **he has** or **he's got**

I We You they	have
He She it	has

I
We
You
they

Have got

I've got
We've got
You've got
They've
got

He
She
it

Has got

He's got
She's got
it's got

I've got a headache.

Come/came/come

Come and go are different:

HERE go THERE

A curved arrow starts above the word 'HERE' and points to the word 'THERE', with the word 'go' centered below the arrow.

HERE come THERE

A curved arrow starts above the word 'THERE' and points to the word 'HERE', with the word 'come' centered below the arrow.

Fill the gaps with *here* or *there*.

- 1 Please bring it (See Unit 9 for **bring**.)
- 2 Are you coming next week? (See Unit 7 for **come**.)
- 3 This letter is for a teacher at the university. Can you take it?
take.)
- 4 I want to leave this letter in Nora's office. Are you going

I didn't ... Did you ... ?

Read the sentences. Are they correct or incorrect?

1 What did you bought at the supermarket?

Incorrect

Correct

2 Maria didn't went to hospital yesterday.

Incorrect

Correct

3 Did you drive to college or did you walk?

Incorrect

Correct

4 How much did your parents paid for your computer?

Incorrect

Correct

5 Cathy didn't understand the questions, so she didn't answer them.

Incorrect

Correct



infinitive	Simple past	Past participle
arise	arose	arisen
awake	awoke	awoken
be	Was, were	been
bear	bore	borne
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bend	bent	bent
bet	bet	bet
bid	bade	bid
bind	bound	bound
bite	bit	bitten

infinitive	Simple past	Past participle
bleed	bled	bled
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
breed	bred	bred
bring	brought	brought
broadcast	broadcast	broadcast
build	built	built
burn	burnt	burnt
burst	burst	burst
bust	bust	bust
buy	bought	bought

infinitive	Simple past	Past participle
cast	cast	cast
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
cling	clung	clung
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
creep	crept	crept
cut	cut	cut

infinitive	Simple past	Past participle
deal	dealt	dealt
dig	dug	dug
dive	Dived (dove <small>us</small>)	Dived (dove <small>us</small>)
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
dream	dreamt	dreamt
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
dwell	dwelt	dwelt
eat	ate	eaten

infinitive	Simple past	Past participle
fall	fell	fallen
feed	fed	fed
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
flee	fled	fled
fling	flung	flung
fly	flew	flown
forbid	forbade	forbidden
forget	forgot	forgotten
forgive	forgave	forgiven
forsake	forsook	forsaken

infinitive	Simple past	Past participle
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

Irregular verbs with the same past Simple and past participle forms

infinitive	Simple past or past participle
awake	awoke
bend	bent
bleed	bled
breed	bred
build	built
burn	burnt
buy	bought
catch	caught
cling	clung

Using Irregular verbs

- I **read** some books every morning.
- Yesterday. I **read** some books.

- He **reads** the book.
- The book is **read** by him.

- He had **read** the book.
- The book had been **read** by him.

Yesterday. I **slept** at 12 o'clock.

I can't get up early because I haven't
slept very well.

Yesterday. I couldn't get up early because I hadn't
slept very well.

The children **hid** themselves

forgot



Do you remember me?
Yes, but I forgot your name.

Yes. I **had bought** it yesterday.

The pain was difficult, but I **bore** it. (to bear)

1. They **always put** the cat out at night.
2. They **put** the cat out **last night**.
3. They **have put** the cat out.

Present participle

ing form

Satisfy → **Satisfy**ing

See → **See**ing

Add **ing** to the verbs and put them in the correct column, then read them out. Play, lie, drive, run, travel, read, have, die, cut,

+ ing	ie → y + ing	e → ing	Double consonant + ing
play ing	Lie (lying)	driv ing	run ning
Die ing	Die (dying)	tak ing	swimm ing
read ing		writ ing	travell ing
satisf ing		rid ing	put ting
sleep ing		leav ing	cut ting
cry ing		Have ing	Set ting
drink ing		shin ing	lett ing
Be ing see ing		shak ing mak ing	sitt ing

Put the verbs in brackets into the infinitive or -ing form.



My mother is an amazing woman. She is 87 years old and she still enjoys 1) ...*going out*... (go out) for a walk every day. She doesn't mind 2) (do) all her housework and she's glad 3) (help) her elderly neighbours when they can't 4) (go) to the shops. She's too old 5) (dig) the garden any more – she stopped 6) (do) that last year – but she's still healthy enough 7) (mow) the grass! In the summer she still goes 8) (swim) when it's warm and she lets her grandchildren 9) (bury) her in the sand. She often says, "It's no good 10) (be) alive if you don't enjoy yourself." I'd love 11) (be) like my mother when I'm her age.

Put the verbs in brackets in the infinitive or the -ing form.

e.g. He advised me *to see* a lawyer. **(see)**

- 1 I hate by train. **(travel)**
- 2 He left without goodbye. **(say)**
- 3 She managed a lot of weight. **(lose)**
- 4 helps you keep fit. **(swim)**
- 5 They made him them the truth. **(tell)**
- 6 Matt goes every morning. **(jog)**
- 7 We are sorry you that you have failed the exam. **(inform)**
- 8 I'd love to the cinema tonight. **(go)**
- 9 I look forward to you again soon. **(see)**
- 10 It's no use to make him change his mind. **(try)**
- 11 Sue went to the library some books. **(borrow)**
- 12 I don't know how this exercise. **(do)**

Special points

- **Since** is used to express a starting point.
- **For** is used to express a period of time.
- **Yet** is used in questions and negations.
- **Already** is used in statements and questions.
- **Just** + Present Perfect
- **Just now** + Past Simple

I've known Ann **since** October.

I've known Ann **for** two months.

Have you met him **yet**? I haven't met him **yet**.

I've **already** posted the letters.

I've **just called** the doctor.

He **left just now**.

Add **ed** to the verbs and put them in the correct column, then read them out. cry, stay, stop, hate, taste, prefer, fry, dance,

e → + d	Consonant + y → ied	vowel + y → ed	Double consonant + ed
Hate → Hated	Cry → Cried	Stay → Stayed	Stop → Stopped
placed	dried	annoyed	travelled
tasted	tried	played	equipped
refused	fried	enjoyed	
served	occupied	prayed	
realized	certified	destroyed	
opposed	applied		

look at this

/ lʊk æ ðɪs /

18 Add -(e)d to the verbs and put them in the correct column, then read them out.

add, wash, rain, need, help, want, count, rob, open, work, marry, close, love, end,
invite, laugh, hope, kiss

/ɪd/

after /t/, /d/

added.....
.....
.....

/t/

after /k/, /s/, /tʃ/, /f/, /p/, /ʃ/

worked.....
.....
.....

/d/

after other sounds

opened.....
.....
.....

<p style="text-align: center;">ɪd</p> <p style="text-align: center;">After t, d</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">t</p> <p style="text-align: center;">After k, s, f, p, ʃ tʃ</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">d</p> <p style="text-align: center;">After other sounds</p>
added	worked	opened
needed	washed	rained
wanted	helped	robed
counted	closed	married
ended	laughed	loved
invited	hoped	
	fixed	

added [ˈædɪd]

Equip → equip**ped**

Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or the past continuous.

I 9) (watch) TV last night when I 10) (hear) a strange noise outside my window. I 11) (be) frightened, but I decided to investigate. As I 12) (walk) towards the window the curtains 13) (start) to move. I 14) (scream) loudly and my mother 15) (run) in. Then I 16) (realise) that the noise was my cat trying to climb in through the window.



Past perfect continuous

Example



Her eyes were red. She
.. *had been crying* (cry).

106 Write the situations (action up to a past time or interrupted action), then put the verbs into Past Perfect Continuous or Past Continuous.

1. ...action up to a past time



Her eyes were red. She
.. *had been crying* (cry).

2.



She (cry)
when he came in.

3.



He (type)
a letter when the fire started.

4.



She looked tired. She
..... (type) letters all morning.

5.



He hit his head. He
..... (play) football.

6.



He (play) football
when the ball hit his head.

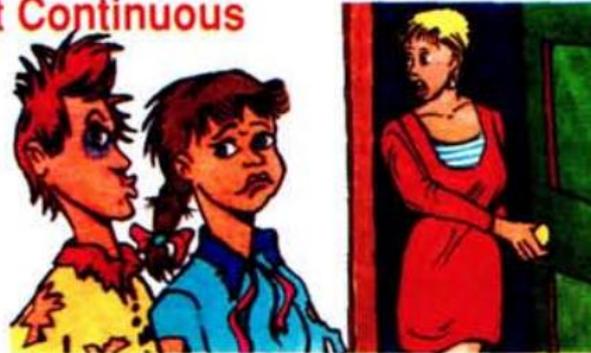
Past Continuous



When she arrived they **were fighting**.

(When she arrived they were in the middle of the fight.)

Past Perfect Continuous



When she arrived they **had been fighting**.

(She arrived after the fight.)

1.intention.....



....He's going to paint his ...
house.

.David is going to do his shopping on Monday.



(he / make speech)

1. *He's going to make a ...
speech.....*



2. *He's making a speech...*



3. *He has made a speech.*

Complete these sentences using *get* and a word from the box.

better light dark cold wet

- 1 The sun is going down. It's *getting dark*.....
- 2 When the sun comes up it
- 3 She's in hospital but she
- 4 It's raining! I
- 5 Please close the window. I

Time adverbs and expressions used with Present Perfect :

**just, ever, never, always, already, yet, for,
since, so far, how long, recently, today, this
week/month/year, once, several times etc.**

- I haven't ever seen her.
- Do you ever see her?
- Have you ever see her?

- have you ever seen anything like it?

1 Write the verbs in the third person singular.

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. I miss. He .. <i>misses</i> | 4. I fix. He | 7. I go. He |
| 2. I buy. She | 5. I watch. She | 8. I dry. She |
| 3. I carry. He | 6. I call. He | 9. I play. He |

2 Put the verbs in the correct column in the 3rd person singular, then say them.

match, try, bake, dance, ring, keep, hit, work, teach, rise, hate, leave,
smoke, arrive, smile, kiss, begin, cry, lose, dress, choose, rob, like, sleep

	iz	z
after /f/, /k/, /p/, /t/	after /s/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/, /z/	after other sounds

<i>bakes</i>	<i>matches</i>	<i>tries</i>
.....
.....
.....

Underline the correct item.

e.g. His clothes are dirty. He has been painting/was painting the house.

John has been in Spain **since**/**for** April.

I **watched**/**was watching** TV when the lights went out.

Greg **has been trying**/ **has tried** to fix his bike all day.

I **was going to call**/**called** you, but I lost your phone number.

She **has been reading**/**has read** four books this month.

We were driving to work **while**/**when** the car broke down.

She **was wanting**/**wanted** to buy the jacket, but she didn't have enough money.

Dad **used to**/**didn't use to** work on Saturdays, but he doesn't any more.

Go

I go
you go
he **goes**
she **goes**
it **goes**
we go
you go
they go

Do

I do
you do
he **does**
she **does**
it **does**
we do
you do
they do

We go to the cinema.

Does he speak English?

She has four brothers.

Have

I have

you have

he has

she has

it has

we have

you have

Imperative verbs, imperative sentences

Examples

Stop please

Stop

Go

Come here

Be quiet

Please open the door

Open the door for me.

Take a seat.

Take some aspirin.

Go to the doctor.

Please sit down.

Sit down please.

Exclamative sentences)

How well you look!

What a good friend you are!

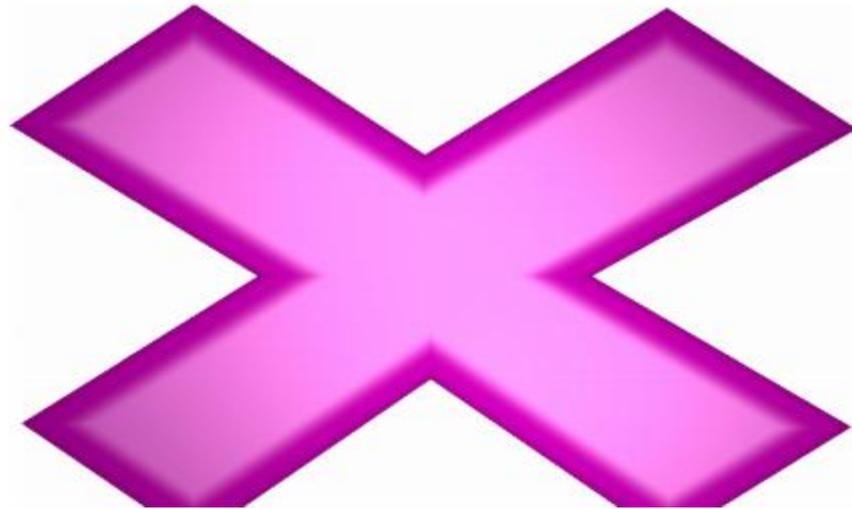
Identify whether each sentence below is **declarative**, **interrogative**, **imperative**, or **exclamative**.

1. Move right to the front of the bus.
2. What have you got to say for yourself ?
3. What a good time we had!
4. How will they find their way to the station?
5. How much weight you've lost!
6. How much does it cost?
7. It's been nice meeting you.
8. Will your parents be coming with you?
9. If it doesn't rain, I'll see you tonight.
10. Pass the bottle, please.
11. Take it!
12. How can I help?

**Negative
form**

النفسي

Negative



Negative form

I work → I **don't** work

He works → He **doesn't** work

I worked → I **didn't** work

He worked → He **didn't** work

I don't have money

I didn't have money

Auxiliary + verb → Auxiliary + not + verb

I'm eating → I'm not eating

I will eat → I will not eat

I was eating → I was not eating

I will be eating → I will not be eating

I had eaten → I had not eaten

I have eaten → I have not eaten

Auxiliaries : am, is, are, was, were, have got,
Has got, had, have, shall, will, do, does, did, must, Can,
would, could, should, ...

Present simple

1) He **plays** football.

He (**does not/doesn't**) play football.

2) You **teach** English.

You (**do not/don't**) teach English.

Present continuous

1) He **is playing** football.

He (is **not/Isn't**) playing football.

2) You **are teaching** English.

You (are **not/aren't**) teaching English.

3) I **am walking**.

I am **not** walking.

Present perfect

1) He **has played** football.

He (has **not/hasn't**) played football.

2) You **have taught** English.

You (have **not/haven't**) taught English.

Present perfect continuous

1. He **has been playing** football since two hours.
 2. He (has **not/hasn't**) been playing football since two hours.
-
1. You **have been teaching** English for two years.
 2. You (have **not/haven't**) been teaching English for two years.

Past simple

1) He **played** football.

He (did **not**/didn't) play football.

2) You **taught** English.

You (did **not**/didn't) teach English.

Past continuous

1. He **was playing** football.
 2. He (was **not/wasn't**) playing football.
-
1. You **were teaching** English.
 2. You (were **not/weren't**) teaching English.

Past perfect

- 1) He **had played** football before he was broken his leg.
- 2) He (had **not/hadn't**) played football before he was broken his leg.

Past perfect continuous

He **had been studying** English for two years before he got the job.

He (had **not/hadn't**) been studying English for two years before he got the job.

Future simple

He **will** go.

He will **not** go.

He **won't** go.

Future continuous

He **will be** asleep.

He will **not** be asleep.

He **won't** be asleep

Future perfect

I **will have perfected** my English by the time I come back from the U.S.

I (will **not/won't**) have perfected my English by the time I come back from the U.S.

Future perfect continuous

I **will have been waiting** for two hours when her plane finally arrives

I (will **not/won't**) have been waiting for two hours when her plane finally arrives.

Future in the past

He would go.

He (would **not**/**wouldn't**) go.

You were going to go.

You (were **not**/**weren't**) going to go.

can not ❌
Cannot = can't

look at this
/ lʊk æ ðɪs /

I can go.

I (cannot/can't) go.

I should go.

I (should not/shouldn't) go.

He is a hero.

He (is not/isn't) a hero.

look at this

/ lʊk æ ðɪs /

You **have** a pen.

You **haven't** a pen. ❌

You **don't have** a pen.

He **has** a pen.

He (do not/don't) has a pen. ❌

He (does not/**dosn't**) have a pen.

النفي في الأمر:

(Do not/Don't) worry.

(Do not/Don't) eat this.

(Do not/Don't) be stupid.

have no

"I **have** a pen."

"I **don't have** a pen."

I **have no** a pen.

He **has no** a car.

He is playing → he is **not** playing

He was playing → he was **not** playing

He will be playing → he will **not** be playing

Infinitive	Simple Past	Example of positive past	Example of negative past
ride	rode	She rode a bike.	She didn't ride a bike.
say	said	It said.	It didn't say.
see	saw	He saw the sea.	He didn't see the sea.
sit	sat	You sat.	You didn't sit.
stand	stood	We stood.	We didn't stand.
take	took	They took the tram.	They didn't take the tram.

Infinitive	Simple Past	Example of positive past	Example of negative past
come	came	I came home.	I didn't come home
drive	drove	He drove.	He didn't drive.
eat	ate	We ate.	We didn't eat.
fly	flew	You flew.	You didn't fly.
get	got	They got a car.	They didn't get a car.
give	gave	I gave my ticket.	I didn't give my ticket.
leave	left	He left last night.	He didn't leave last night.

**interrogative
form**

	Negative form	Interrogative form
They have come	They have not come	Have they come?
They had come	They had not come	Had they come?
They will have come	They will not have come	Will they have come?

I am not → am I not ?

Positive: I speak English.

Negative: I do not speak English.

Short negative: I don't speak English.

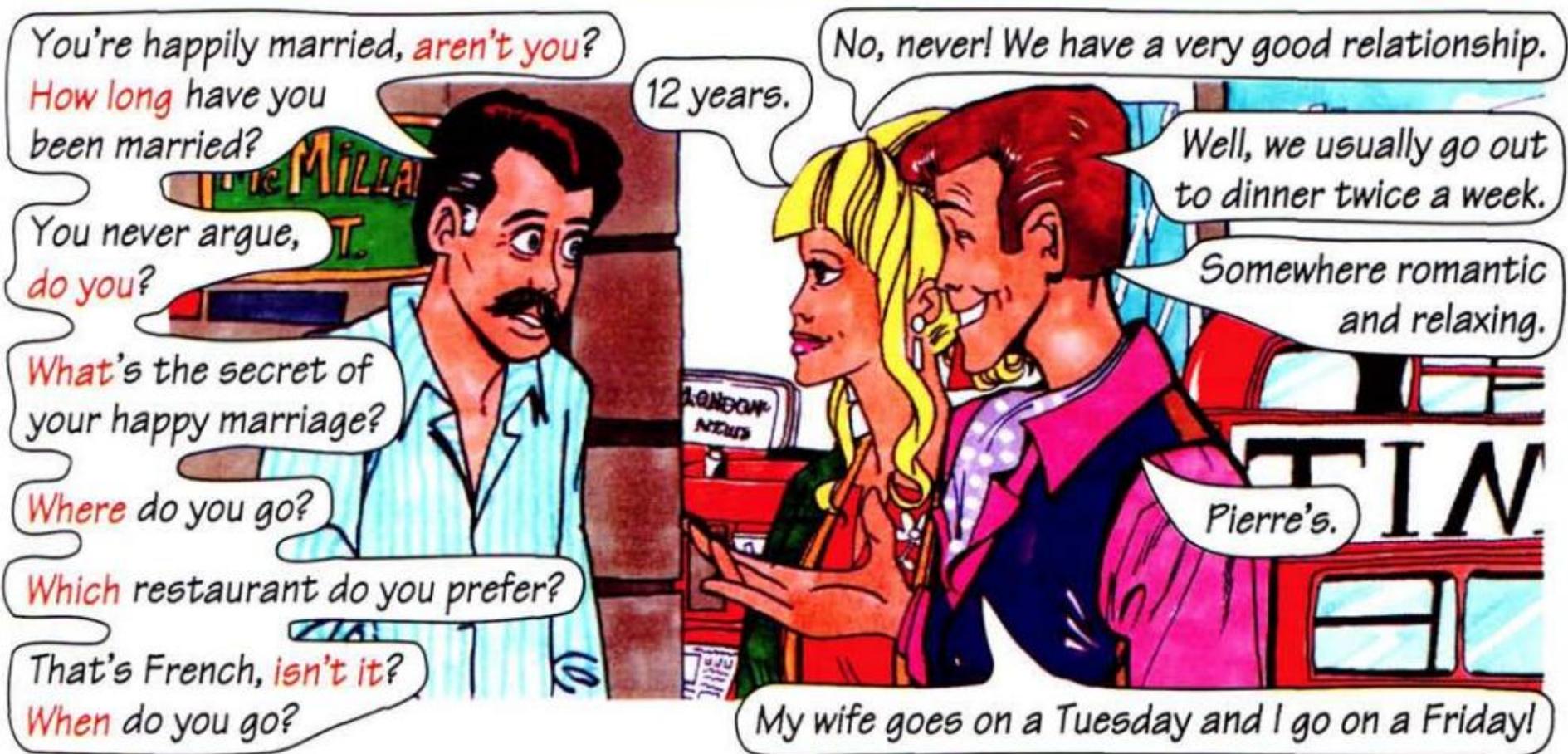
Question: Do I speak English?

تكوين السؤال

English Questions



Questions - Question Words - Question Tags



We use **do / does** to form questions in Present Simple and **did** to form questions in Past Simple.

To form questions with auxiliary verbs (**can, be, will, shall, must** etc) we put the auxiliary verb **before** the subject.

Wh-questions begin with a question word and follow the above rules (question words: **who, where, when, what, why, how, which** etc.)

Whose is used to express possession.

Which is used when there is a limited choice.

The preposition goes at the end of the question.

Does he play the violin?

Did he come to work yesterday?

Is he rich? **Has he** got a car?

Will he marry her?

Can you fly a helicopter?

Who is she?

What did she do last night?

Why did you come late?

Whose shoes are these? They're Tom's.

Which car is yours? The red one.

Who does it belong **to**?

Who did you go out **with**?



Make of Questions



Present simple

1. He **plays** football.
2. **Does** he play football?
3. Yes, he does. OR No, he does not (doesn't).

1. You teach English.
2. **Do** you teach English?
3. Yes, I do. OR No, I (do not/don't).

Present continuous

He is playing football.

Is he playing football?

Yes, he is. OR No, he (is not/Isn't).

You are teaching English

Are you teaching English?

Yes, I am. OR No, I am not.

I am walking.

Am I walking?

Yes, you are. OR No, you (are not/aren't).

Present perfect

He **has played** football.

Has he played football?

Yes, he has. OR No, he (has not/hasn't).

You **have taught** English.

Have you taught English?

Yes, I have. OR No, I (have not/haven't).

Present perfect continuous

He **has been playing** football since two hours.

Has he been playing football since two hours?

Yes, he has. OR No, he (has not/hasn't).

You **have been teaching** English for two years.

Have you been teaching English for two years?

Yes, I have. OR No, I (have not/haven't).

past simple

He **played** football.

Did he play football?

Yes, he did. OR No, he (did not/didn't).

You **taught** English.

Did you teach English?

Yes, I did. OR No, I (did not/didn't).

Past continuous

He **was playing** football.

Was he playing football?

Yes, he was. OR No, he (was not/wasn't).

You **were teaching** English.

Were you teaching English?

Yes, I was. OR No, I (was not/wasn't).

Past perfect

He **had played football** before he was broken his leg.

Had he played football before he was broken his leg?

Yes, he had. OR No, he (had not/hadn't).

Past perfect continuous

He **had been studying** English for two years before he got the job.

Had he been studying English for two years before he got the job?

Yes, he had. OR No, he (had not/hadn't).

future

He **will** go.

Will he go?

Yes, he will. OR No, he (will **not**/**won't**).

Future continuous

He **will be** working.

Will he be working?

Yes, he will. OR No, he (will not/**won't**).

Future perfect

I will **have perfected** my English by the time I come back from the U.S.

Will I have perfected my English by the time I come back from the U.S.?

Yes, you will. OR No, you (will not/won't).

Future perfect continuous

I **will have been waiting** for two hours when her plane finally arrives.

Will I have been waiting for two hours when her plane finally arrives?

Yes, you will. OR No, you (will not/won't).

Future in the past

He **would** go.

Would he go?

Yes, he would. OR No, he (would not/wouldn't).

- You **were going to go**.
- **Were** you going to go?
- Yes, I was. OR No, I (was not/wasn't).

**Question
words**

W.H questions

Whom

Who

Where

How long

Why

How much

How

How often

When

How many

Whose

How far

Which

What

Question words

- We ask the **questions** which need short Answers when we are not sure about something.
- We ask questions to get **information**.
- These questions must begin with the **auxiliary verbs**.

- We ask questions that need **long answer** when we want to get full information (**details**).
- All these questions must begin with question words or **interrogative pronouns** that are the following :

Whom
Where
Why
How
When
Whose
Which

Who
How long
How much
How often
How many
How far
What

Question words

We normally use the following question words when asking about:

people	jobs / things / animals / actions	place	time	quantity	manner	reason
Who Whose Which (one of)	What Which (one of)	Where	When How long What time How often	How much How many	How	Why

What

*Is used to ask about **things** or **actions***

What time shall we meet?

What will you do in Guelma?

What's **their** answer?

What's your name?

What do you know? What did you know?

What are your daily actions?

What nationality are you?

What caused the accident?

What's on menu for dinner?

What are you eating?

What does he do every evening?

What do you do every evening?

What fruit do you want?

What time is it. what's the time?

What is her name? What the matter?

What is his address?

What would you like for lunch?

What time do you usually have lunch?

What does this word mean?

What is the meaning of this word?

What kind of car do you want to buy?

What are you doing now?

Why

*Is used to ask about **cause**, for what **reason**.*

1. Why is Selma absent ?
2. Why did you hit your wife?
3. Why don't you know? Why didn't you know?
4. Why are you late ?
5. Why not ask Selma to go with you ?
6. Why don't you travel by train?
7. Why did you go?

Why did you go to France?

I *visited* my parents in France.

Why do you want to learn English?

I *want* to be an English teacher.

When

*Is used to ask about **dates***

1. **When** is your birthday?
2. **When** will he arrive home?
3. **When** did it happen?
4. **When** would be the best time to phone?
5. **When's** the wedding? **When** is the wedding?
6. Could you tell me **when** the shop opens?

Remark

It's the summer **when** it rained all day.

When I was young I could play football all day.

Which

Which implies a choice

1. **Which** child put chalk on the teacher's chair?
2. **Which** is your favorite sport?
3. **Which** city do you prefer Sétif or Guelma?
4. **Which** one would you like, the **green** or the **bule**?
5. **Which** one do you prefer ?
6. **Which** cost more, these or those?

Where

Is used to ask about the place

Where → in which, at which

1. Where shall we meet?
2. **Where** is the train station?
3. **Where** I can buy shoes ?
4. **Where** do you live ?
5. I asked her **where** she lived
6. **Where** is she going ?

Where is El-eulma located. It is located in the North west of Setif.

This is the street **where** I live.

I asked her **where** she lived

How much, How many

How much is this car?

How much is that camera?

How many brothers do you have?

How much rain fell last night?

How + adjective	How + adverb
How old are you? (<i>age</i>)	How often do you brush your teeth?
How high is that mountain? (<i>height</i>)	How well do you speak English?
How fast is your car? (<i>speed</i>)	How loudly can you sing?

Who, whom

Are used to ask about **people**.

A word we use in question to ask about the **name, position, ...one or more**.

1. **Who** are you?
2. **Who's** there ?
3. **Who** has the book?
4. **Who** came with me ?
5. **Who** is that girl? **Who** is this miss?
6. I don't know **who** did it
7. I like people **who** say what they make.

- Can **he speak** English?
- No, he isn't **able** to speak English. He isn't **capable**.
- Did you **shake hands** with her?
- No, I didn't.



e.g. Can he eat his dinner?

(hungry)

No, *he isn't hungry enough.*

Fill in: who, whose, what, where, when, why, which.

e.g. *What* are you looking for? My keys.

..... do you live? In Manchester.

..... is your car? The blue one.

..... was she angry? Because someone had stolen her bag.

..... is Mrs Williams? The new English teacher.

..... will you come back? Next Friday.

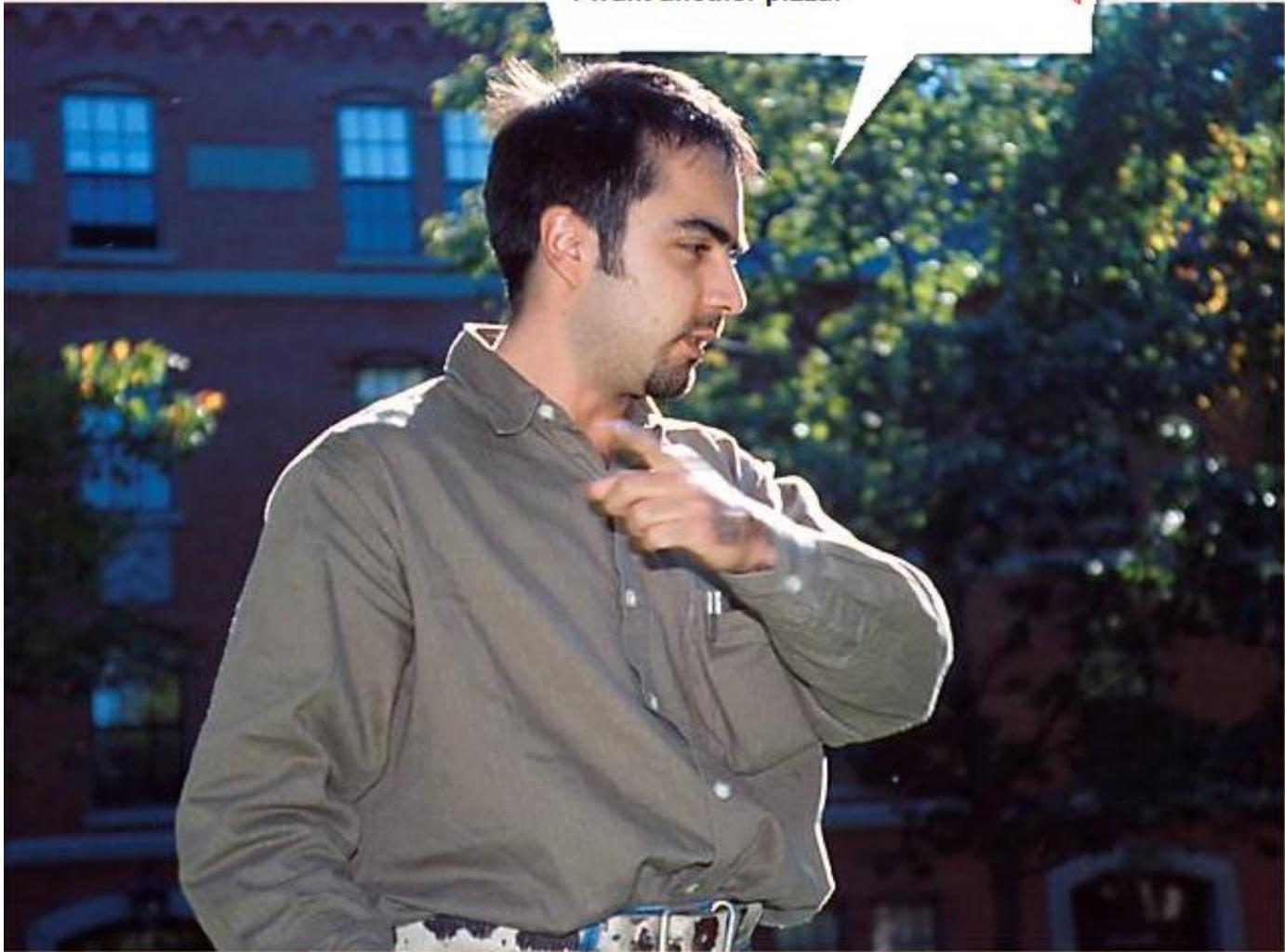
..... is this suitcase? Cathy's.



We shall meet at university. Ok.



I want another pizza.





:Question tags

تأتي بمعنى "أليس كذلك". مثل:

1. You **are** Englishman, **aren't** you?
2. He **is** from London, **isn't** he?
3. You **can** swim, **can't** you?
4. She **will** be here tomorrow, **won't** she?
5. She **lives** in London, **doesn't** she?
6. You **came** last week, **didn't** you?

1. She **isn't** here, is she?
2. You **weren't** here, were you?
3. You **haven't** finished, have you?
4. They **don't** go to the cinema, do they?

Add question tags to the following statements.

e.g. You like pizza, *don't you?*

Please come with me,

He didn't lend you the money,

Sara lives near you,

Let's go to the park,

You had fun last night,

They've already sent the invitations,

Study the following question tags.

1. "I am" "aren't I?"
2. "I used to" "didn't I?"
3. Imperative "will / won't you /
can you / could you?"
4. "Let's" "shall we?"
5. "Let me/him" etc "will / won't you?"
6. "I have" (= possess) "haven't I?"
7. "I have" (used idiomatically) "don't /
doesn't / didn't I?"
8. "There is/are" "isn't /aren't there?"

I am tall, **aren't I?**

He **used to** drive to work, **didn't he?**

Please **help** me, **will you / can you/could you?**

Don't take all the money, **will you?**

Let's make a snowman, **shall we?**

Let him come with us, **will you / won't you?**

He **has** a pen, **hasn't he?**

He **had** an accident last week, **didn't he?**

He **has** lunch at 12.00, **doesn't he?**

There's no one here, **is there?**

There are a few oranges, **aren't there?**

What is the time ?

What time is it ?

9:00

9:20

13:58

9:05

8:40

8:55

9:25

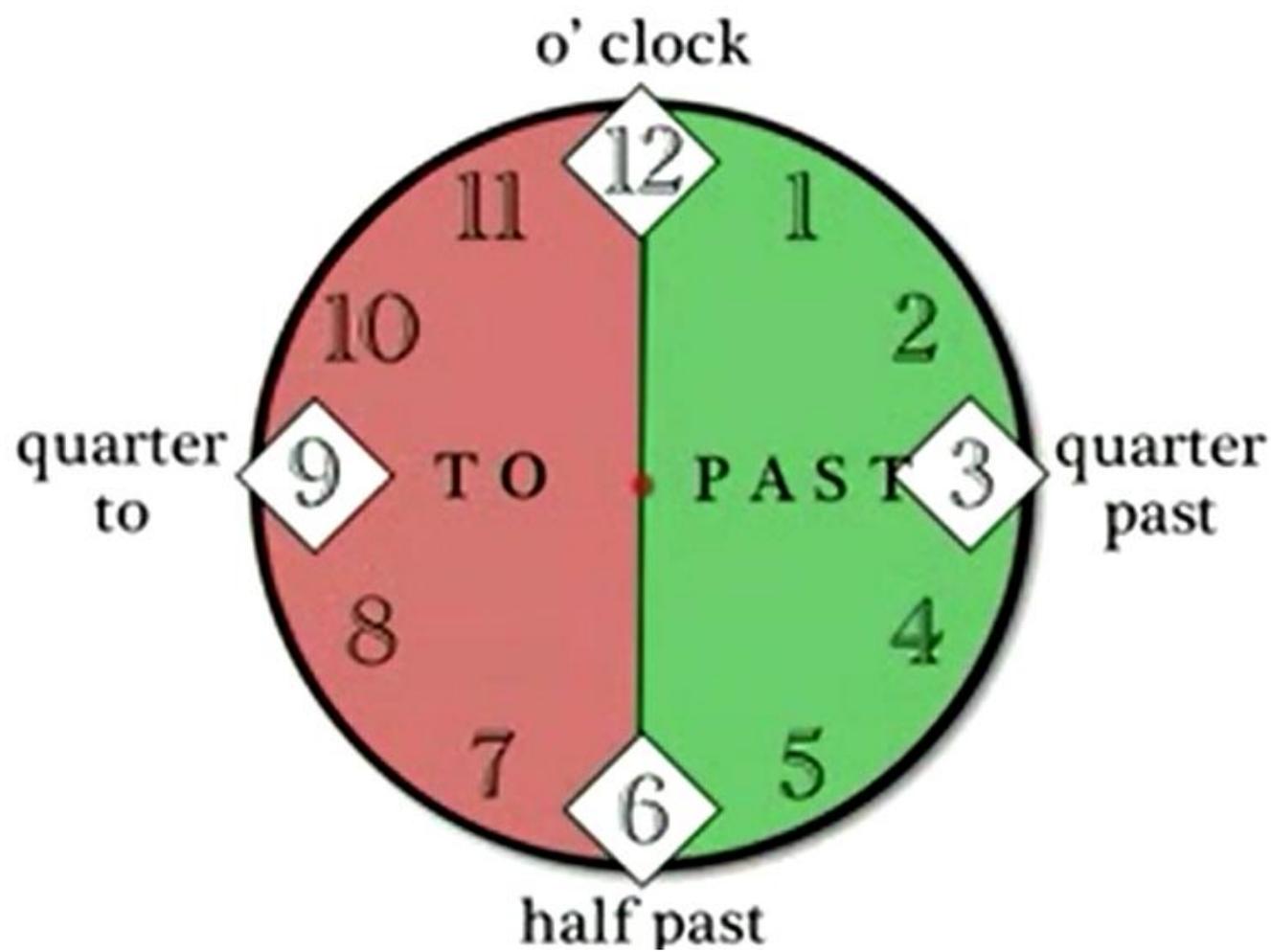
9:10

8:35

8:50

9:30

8:45



What is the time ?

It is nine o'clock **9:00**

It is five past nine **9:05**

It is five to nine **8:55**

It is ten past nine **9:10**

It is ten to nine **8:50**

It is quarter to nine **8:45**

It is twenty past nine **9:20**

It is twenty to nine **8:40**

It is twenty five past nine **9:25**

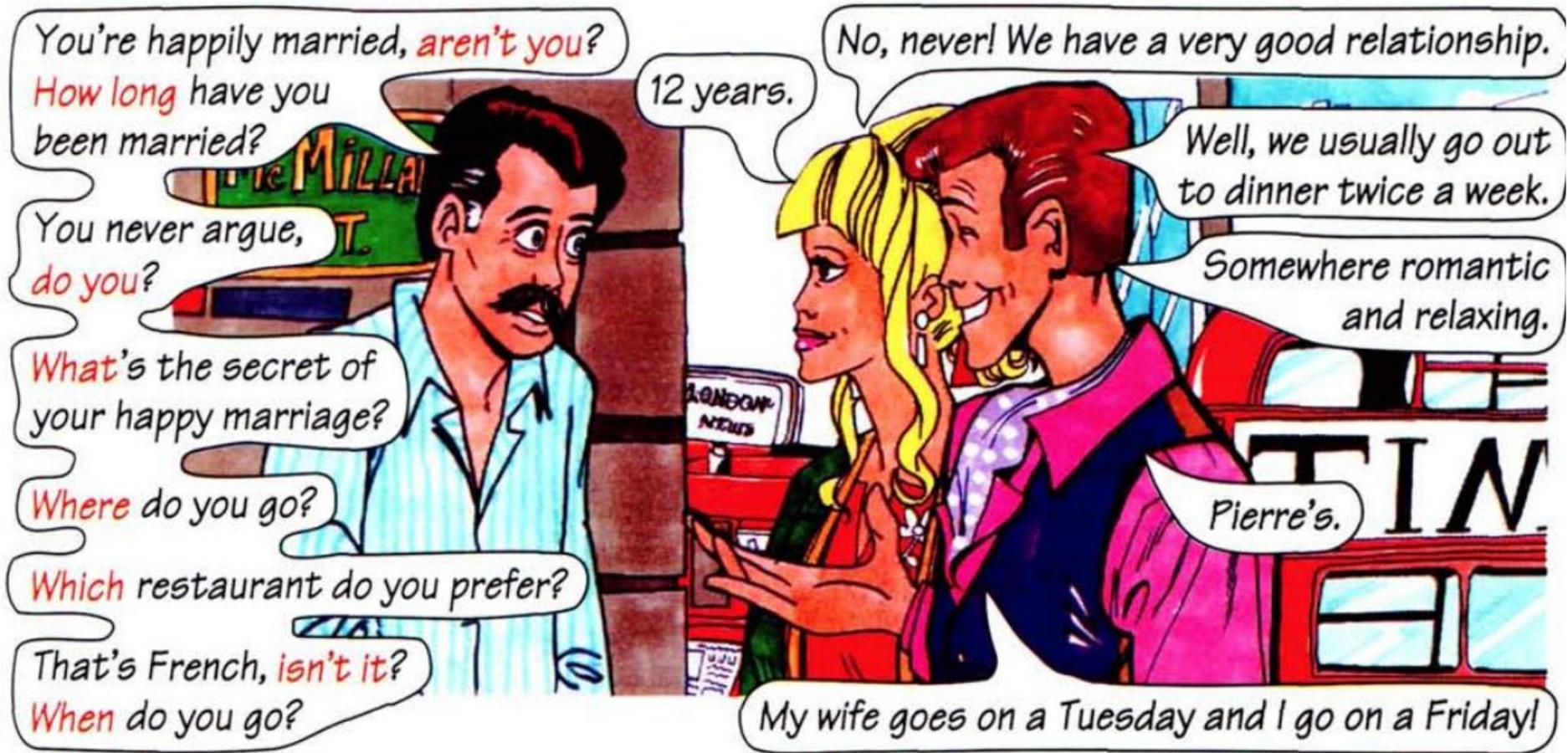
It is twenty five to nine **8:35**

It is half past nine **9:30**

The nine ten train
(09:10)

13:58

Two to two



Which girl do you prefer?

Type of question

information question about the action
(verb)

Example

What did he ask?

He asked a question.

Structure

What did he ask?

question + helping + subject + verb
word verb

How much, How many

How much is this car?

How much is that camera?

How many brothers do you have?

How much rain fell last night?

How + adjective	How + adverb
How old are you? (<i>age</i>)	How often do you brush your teeth?
How high is that mountain? (<i>height</i>)	How well do you speak English?
How fast is your car? (<i>speed</i>)	How loudly can you sing?

Positive: I speak English.

Negative: I do not speak English.

Short negative: I don't speak English.

Question: Do I speak English?

1. **When** do you leave?
2. **When** will you pay me for my services?
3. Nice to meet you. **May** I help you?



I have some apples.

Do you have some apples?



Do you have any apples?

SURE

NOT SURE

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

1. You can take the train, can't you? ↗
2. He'll bring his wife, won't he?
3. Those shoes are too big, aren't they?
4. Your friends won't come tomorrow, will they?
5. They were on the same plane as us, weren't they?
6. You don't understand the exercise, do you?
7. Prince Andrew and Sarah are divorced now, aren't they?
8. You're not busy tonight, are you?
9. Look, *that's the President*, isn't it?
10. They live next door, don't they?
11. Dorothy lost her purse last night, didn't she?
12. He's got beautiful blue eyes, hasn't he?
13. Ann can't dance, can she?
14. William Shakespeare didn't die in 1621, did he?
15. This coat belongs to Abi, doesn't it?

You seem *to be* upset. What's the matter? Will you please stop *crying*?



I don't know what *to do*. I've lost my dog. Do you mind *helping* me to look for him?

H.

Conditionals



Formulation

Conditional 0 (zero): If + Present Simple → Present Simple

Conditional 1 (First Conditional): If + Present Simple → Future Simple

Conditional 2 (Second Conditional): If + Past Simple → would do

Conditional 3 (Third Conditional): If + Past Perfect → would have done

Conditional Clauses الجمل الشرطية

جملة حاضر بسيط ... , ... جملة حاضر بسيط ... + If

If I **eat** too much, I **get** fat.

If somebody waves a red flag, it usually means danger.

or

للتعبير عن عمل ما يكون صحيحاً في أي وقت.

When I **eat** too much, I **get** fat.

When somebody **waves** a red flag, it usually **means** danger.

جملة مستقبل بسيط ... و ... جملة حاضر بسيط ... + **If**

للتنبؤ على عمل محتمل سيحدث مستقبلاً.

If she **eats** all that ice cream, she **will feel** terrible.

She'll **feel** terrible if she **eats** all that ice cream.

If + ... , ...WOULD

للتعبير عن عمل غير حقيقي أو بعيد الاحتمال أو خيالي سيحدث في المستقبل.

If you **didn't eat** so much, you **would lose** your weight.

You'd **lose** your weight if you **didn't eat** so much.

في الجملة الشرطية الثانية يمكن وضع **were** عوضاً عن **was** متى ولو كان الفاعل اسم مفرد , **He , She , It**.

If I **worked**, I **would not be** poor.

If I **were** you, I **would get** a job immediately.

If + ... , ... WOULD HAVE جملة ماضي تام ... +

If they **had studied** so hard, they **would have** succeeded.

They'd **have** succeeded if they **had studied** so hard.

للتعبير عن عمل ما لم يحدث في الماضي أبداً، ولكن الناطق يتخيل بماضي مختلف.

If I **had worked** harder, I **would have** passed the exam.

If you **hadn't been driving** so fast, you **wouldn't have** crashed.

جملة شرطية أخرى:

If + present simple ⇒ future

If you **are** hungry, **have** lunch

If + future simple ⇒ future simple

If he **won't agree**, there **will be** a problem

If + past simple ⇒ present simple

If I **wanted** anything, I always **get** it.

If you don't have something you can get it.

Zero conditional

If, present → present

- If you don't water flowers, they die.
- if it rains, we don't go.
- If I am not there when you phone, leave a message.
- if you are rich, this doesn't mean that you have every thing.

If I have some money, I give you some.

1st conditional

If, **present** → future simple
If, **present** → future intention

1. If it rains, you will get wet.
2. If you **work** hard you **will produce** good results.
3. If it **doesn't rain** tomorrow we are going to visit the beach.
4. If you **study** hard, you **will pass** your exams very well.
5. If you **keep** silent, you **will learn** many things.
6. if you make so much noise , I won't be able to sleep.
7. If you eat so much, you will **put on** weight.

If you go on a **diet**, you will lose weight.

If I **have** some money, I **will give** you some.

lose [lu:z],
lost, lost



1. (smoke so much/get ill)

..If he *smokes so much*, ...
...*he'll get ill*.



. (play with knife/cut finger)

.....

if we **take** a taxi, it **will be** quicker.



1. (eat/put on weight)

.. If he eats so much, he ...
.. will put on weight.

2nd conditional

If, **past** → **would + infinitive**

- If I **had** some money, I **would give** you some.
- If I **knew** how to drive, I **would buy** a car.
- if I **found** a fly in my soup, I **would hit** my wife.
- I **would tell** you the answer if I **knew** it.
- if we **took** a taxi, it **would be** quicker.
- if I were you I **wouldn't** spend so much money.
- If I were you I refuse.



**IF I WAS A GOOD FATHER I WOULD BUY
SOME IMPORTANT MATERIALS**

If I were a rich man,

3rd conditional

If, **past perfect** → **conditional perfect simple or continuous**

1. If I had known that, I wouldn't have come.
2. I wouldn't have come if I had known that.
3. If she had seen the dress, she would have bought it.
4. We would have got lost **if** we hadn't bought a map.
5. **if** we hadn't bought a map we would have got lost.
6. **if** we hadn't bought a map, we would have been going lost.

3rd conditional (next)

If, **past perfect** → **would, could, might + have + past participle**

1. if I had found a fly in my soup I **would** have hit my wife.
2. if I had found a fly in my soup I **could** have hit my wife.
3. if I had found a fly in my soup I **might** have hit my wife.
4. if I **hadn't missed** the bus I **wouldn't have been** late for work.

What **would** you do in each situation?

You find a fly in your soup.



If I **found** a fly in my soup I **would hit** my wife.

If I **had found** a fly in my soup I **would have fought**.

You see a mouse in your kitchen.



You see an accident.





1. J: I can't see a thing.
Y: ... *If I were you, I'd*
... *clean my glasses!*



2. J: I'm tired.
Y:
.....



3. J: I'm hungry.
Y:
.....



4. J: I'm really cold.
Y:



5. J: My hair's a mess.
Y:



6. J: I've got a toothache.
Y:

Finish the following sentences.

1. If I had enough money, .. *I'd buy a new pair of shoes.*
2. I wouldn't say that to her
3. If it doesn't rain soon,
4. We'll stay at home
5. If you didn't go to the gym so often,
6. Unless you invite her to the party,
7. She wouldn't have forgotten the appointment
8. We would have reached the airport on time
9. If you drive so carelessly,
10. If I had got to the station earlier,

look at this
/lʊk æ ðɪs /

1. I'll make a hut. I don't want to sleep under the trees.

2. I don't have a bottle.
I can't send a message.

3. I didn't save the radio transmitter. I didn't call for help.

4. There are too many sharks and I can't escape.

5. I have no company. I feel lonely.

6. I'll make an axe. Then I may be able to make a raft.

7. I lost my knife in the water. I didn't cut any branches down.

8: Please let someone find me, or I'll die on this island.



1.If I make a hut, I won't have to sleep under the trees. (real present).....
2.

المبني للمجهول

Passive Voice



Active and passive

The passive

Use the same tense of "**to be**" as used in active sentence and **add** the past participle of the active verb. The **object** of the active sentence becomes the **subject** of the passive sentence.

Examples :

1. She **makes** cake every week.
2. Cake **is made** every week.
3. She **is making** cake. Cake **is being made**.
4.

Tense	Active	Passive
Present simple	cleans	Is cleaned
Present continuous	Is cleaning	Is being cleaned
Past simple	cleaned	Was cleaned
Past continuous	Was cleaning	Was being cleaned
Present perfect	Has cleaned	Has been cleaned
Past perfect	Had cleaned	Had been cleaned
Future simple	Will clean	Will be cleaned
Future continuous	Will be cleaning	Will be being cleaned
Present conditional	Would clean	Would be cleaned

- I **can use** the computer.
- The computer **can be used**.
- I **am going to play** the game.
- The game **is being to be played**.

My friend **sent** me an invitation.
I **was sent** an invitation.

Look at all the dust in here! It looks as if
this room hasn't been cleaned for a month!

Well, don't blame me! *I was* only *hired* a week ago.



The passive is formed with the appropriate tense of the verb **to be + past participle**.

Active Voice

Passive Voice

Present Simple

He **delivers** letters.

Letters **are delivered**.

Past Simple

He **delivered** the letters.

The letters **were delivered**.

Present Perfect

He **has delivered** the letters.

The letters **have been delivered**.

Future Simple

He **will deliver** the letters.

The letters **will be delivered**.

Past Perfect

He **had delivered** the letters.

The letters **had been delivered**.

Present Continuous

He **is delivering** the letters.

The letters **are being delivered**.

Past Continuous

He **was delivering** the letters.

The letters **were being delivered**.

Infinitive

He has **to deliver** the letters.

The letters have **to be delivered**.

Modals

He **may deliver** the letters.

The letters **may be delivered**.

(Modal + be + past part.)

He **must deliver** the letters.

The letters **must be delivered**.

The Passive is used :

1. when the **agent** (= the person who does the action) is **unknown, unimportant or obvious** from the context.

Jane **was shot**. (We don't know who shot her.)

This church **was built** in 1815. (unimportant agent)

He **has been arrested**. (obviously by the police)

2. to make more **polite or formal** statements.

The car **hasn't been cleaned**. (more polite)

(You haven't cleaned the car. – less polite)

3. when the **action is more important** than the agent, as in processes, instructions, events, reports, headlines, news items, and advertisements.

30 people **were killed** in the earthquake.

4. to put **emphasis on the agent**.

The new library will be opened **by the Queen**.

<i>A Tense/Verb form</i>	<i>Active voice</i>	<i>Passive voice</i>
<i>Simple present</i>	keeps	is kept
<i>Present continuous</i>	is keeping	is being kept
<i>Simple past</i>	kept	was kept
<i>Past continuous</i>	was keeping	was being kept
<i>Present perfect</i>	has kept	has been kept
<i>Past perfect</i>	had kept	had been kept
<i>Future</i>	will keep	will be kept
<i>Conditional</i>	would keep	would be kept
<i>Perfect conditional</i>	would have kept	would have been kept
<i>Present infinitive</i>	to keep	to be kept
<i>Perfect infinitive</i>	to have kept	to have been kept
<i>Present participle/gerund</i>	keeping	being kept
<i>Perfect participle</i>	having kept	having been kept

Direct

Indirect

today

that day

yesterday

the day before

the day before

two days before

yesterday

tomorrow

the next day/the following day

the day after

in two days ' time

tomorrow

next week/year *etc.*

the following week/year *etc.*

last week/year *etc.*

the previous week/year *etc.*

a year etc. ago

a year before/the previous year

Turn from Active into Passive.

1. They are giving her a promotion.
2. A famous architect designed these buildings.
3. Van Gogh painted that picture.
4. Three people must sign this form.
5. The Queen will open the exhibition.
6. Lightning has struck the tree.
7. You must complete this work today.
8. Fire destroyed the forest.
9. You can improve your English with more study.

She is being given a promotion.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Turn the following passage into the Passive.



Someone found a skeleton in a cave in the mountains yesterday. They have sent it to a laboratory. Scientists were examining it all through the night. They have discovered that it is the skeleton of a dinosaur from thousands of years ago. They are still carrying out tests. They are going to send it to a museum when they have completed the tests.

.....

.....

.....



(TV/invent/Baird)

TV was invented by Baird.



(milk/produce/cows)



(Pyramids/build/Egyptians)

Formation of the plural

regular nouns

*In the regular nouns we add **s** to **their** plural*

Examples:

singular	plural
animal	animals
chair	chairs
house	houses
math	maths
function	functions
real	reals

regular nouns

Singular	Plural
bird	birds
hat	hats
arrow	arrows
pencil	pencils
duck	ducks
dog	dogs

Plural forms			
Ex. day	days	country	countries
freeway	freeways	city	cities
play	plays	buddy	buddies
key	keys	ferry	ferries
jockey	jockeys	sky	skies
boy	boys	discovery	discoveries
monkey	monkeys	family	families

duck [dʌk]

arrow ['ærəʊ]

Irregular nouns

1. Nouns ending in **y** with **no vowel** before it take **ies** in the plural.

City → cit**ies**

Country → countr**ies**

Lady → Lad**ies**

2. Nouns ending in **y** with a **vowel** before it are regular.

Day → day**s**

Boy → boy**s**

Envoy → envoy**s**

If the noun ends in *y* preceded by a consonant, change the *y* to *i* and add *es*.

Singular	Plural
city	cities
lady	ladies
happy	happiness
icy	iciness
activity	activities
cry	cries
blueberry	blueberries

If the noun ends in *y* preceded by a vowel, add *s*.

Singular	Plural
essay	essays
monkey	monkeys
journey	journeys
survey	surveys
attorney	attorneys

journey ['dʒɜːnɪ]

attorney [ə'tɜːnɪ]

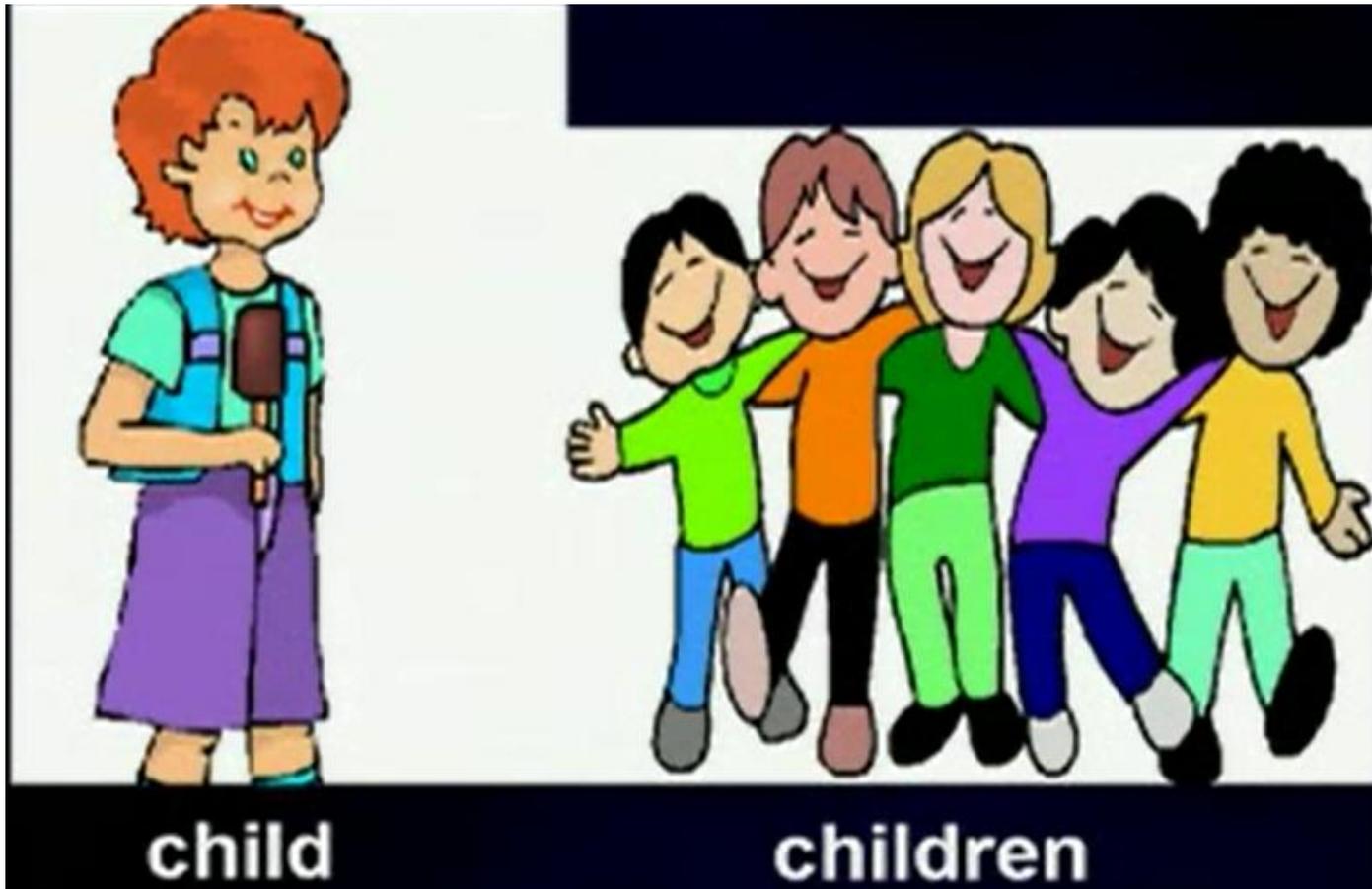
*Some nouns ending in **f** or **fe** take **ves** in the plural.*

- Wife → **wives**
- Thief → **thieves**
- Life → **lives**
- leaf → leaves,

Some nouns change their vowel in the plural

- Man → men
- Woman → women
- Tooth → Teeth
- Mouse → Mice,

Leaves fall from the trees in autumn.



child [tʃaɪld], pl **children** ['tʃɪldrən]

['wʊmən]

women
wōman

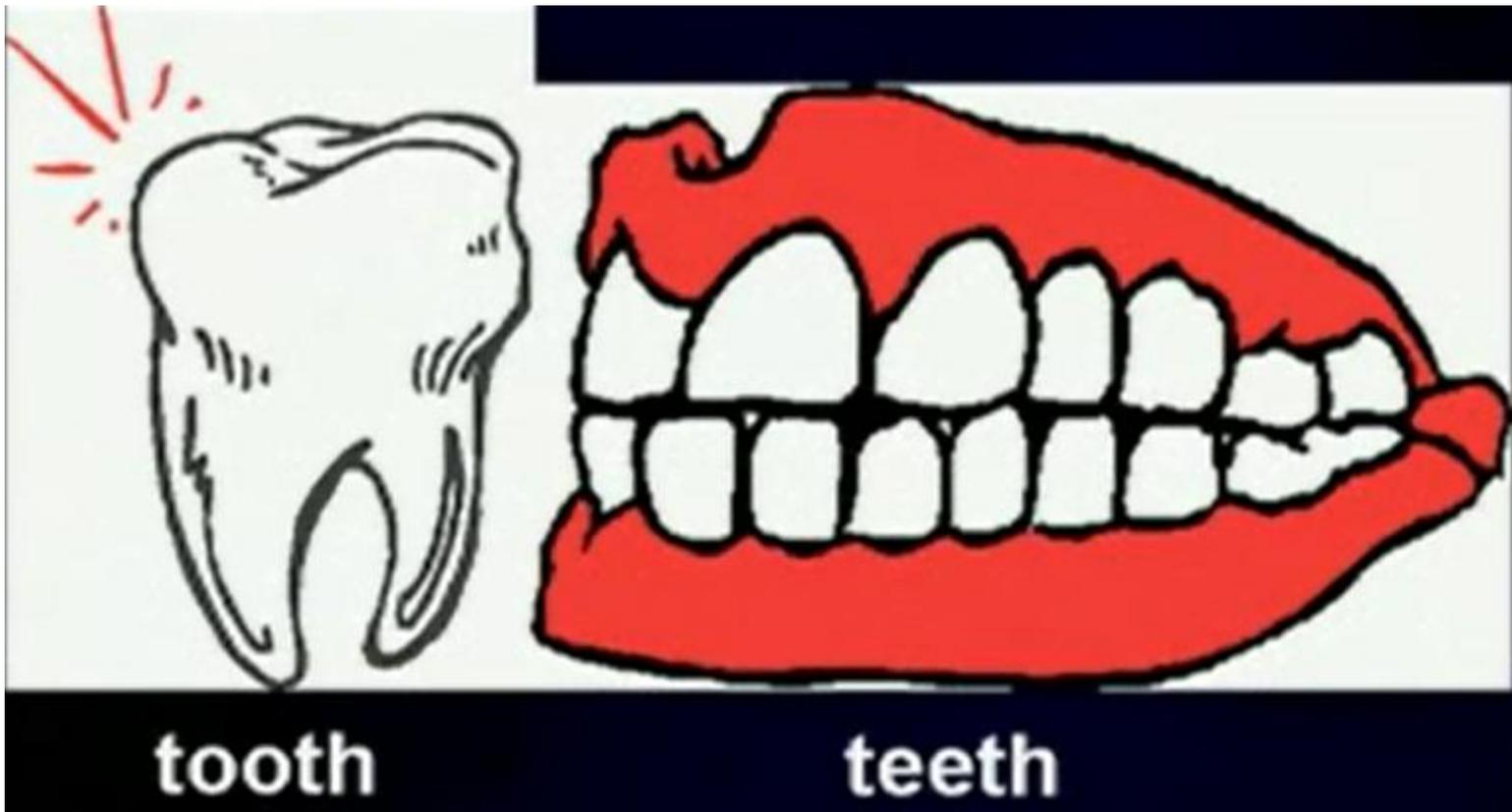
['wɪmɪn]





man

men



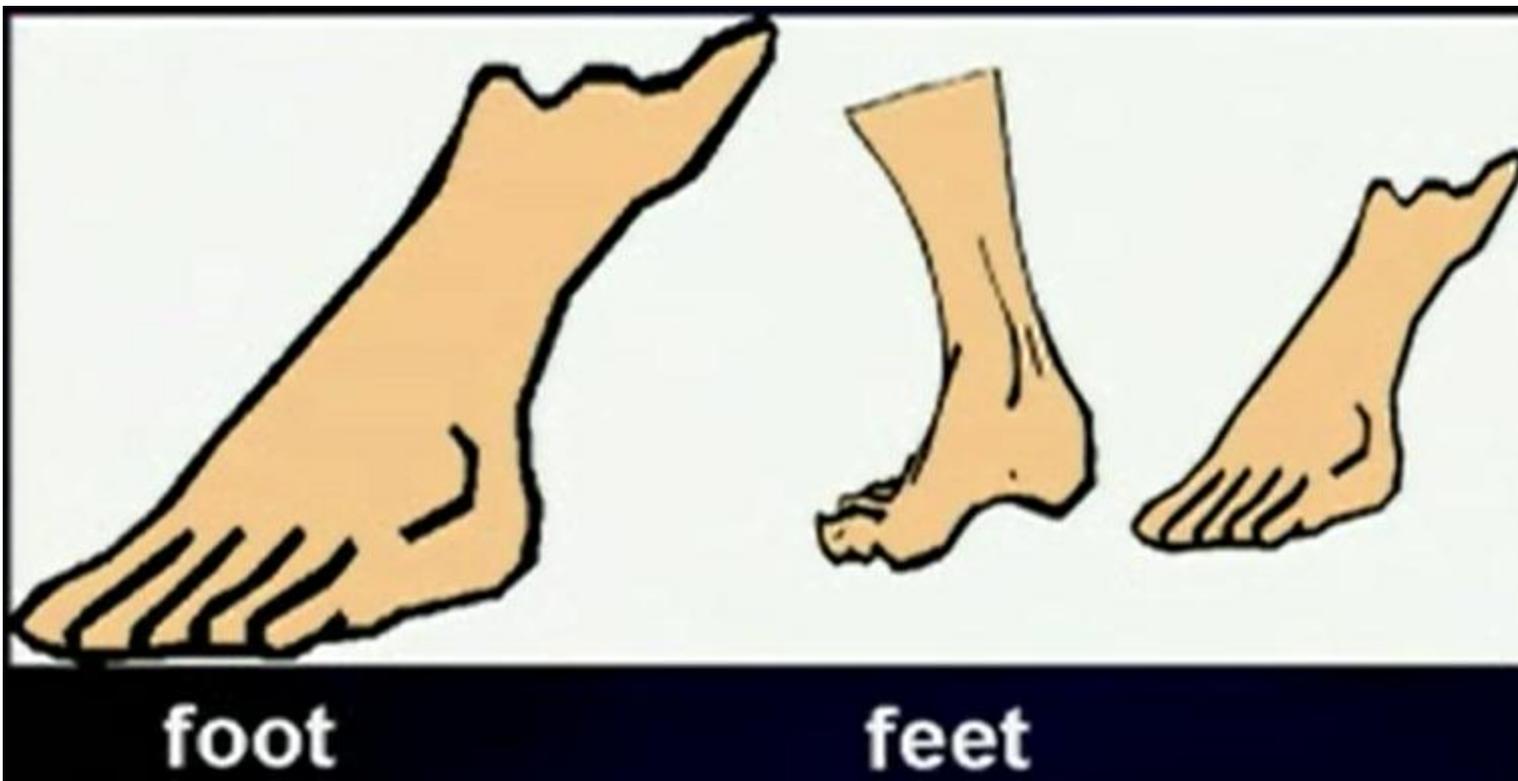
tooth

teeth

tooth [tu:θ]

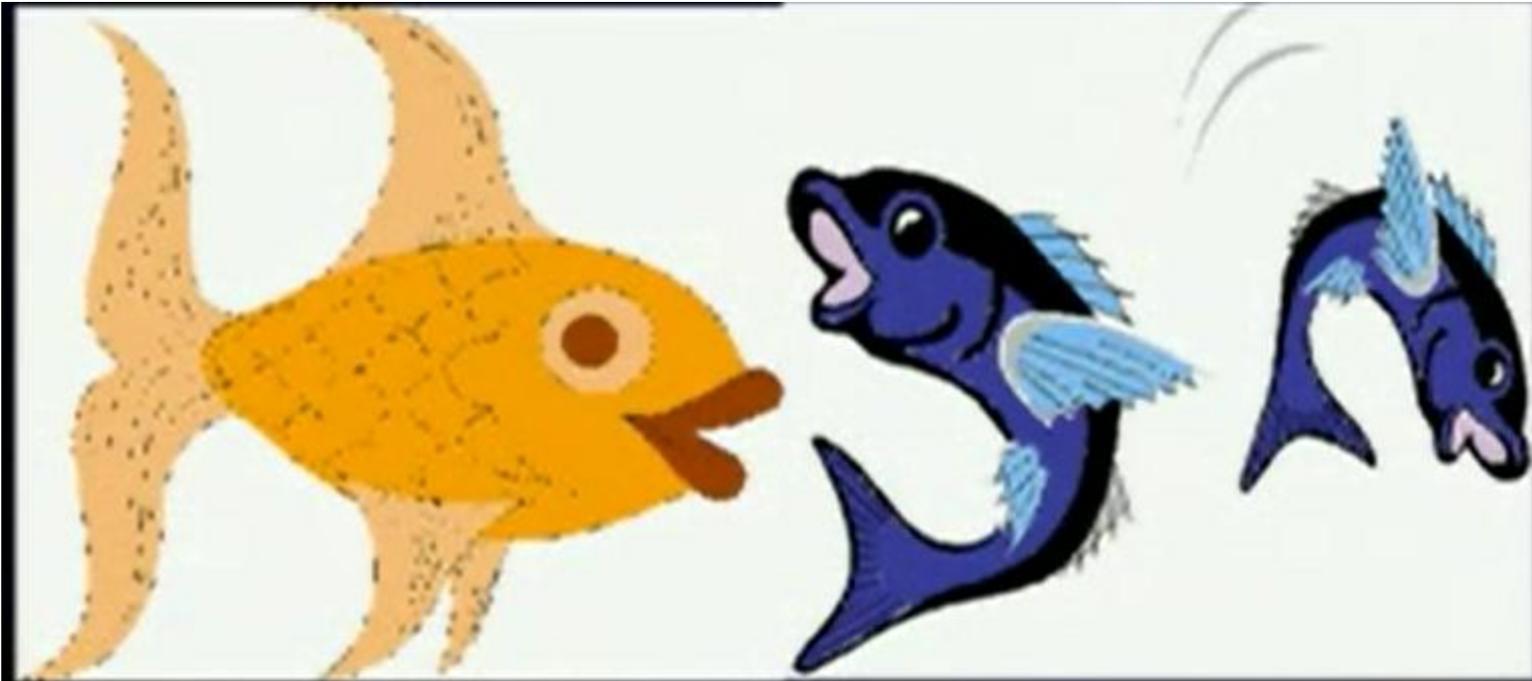
One tooth, three teeth





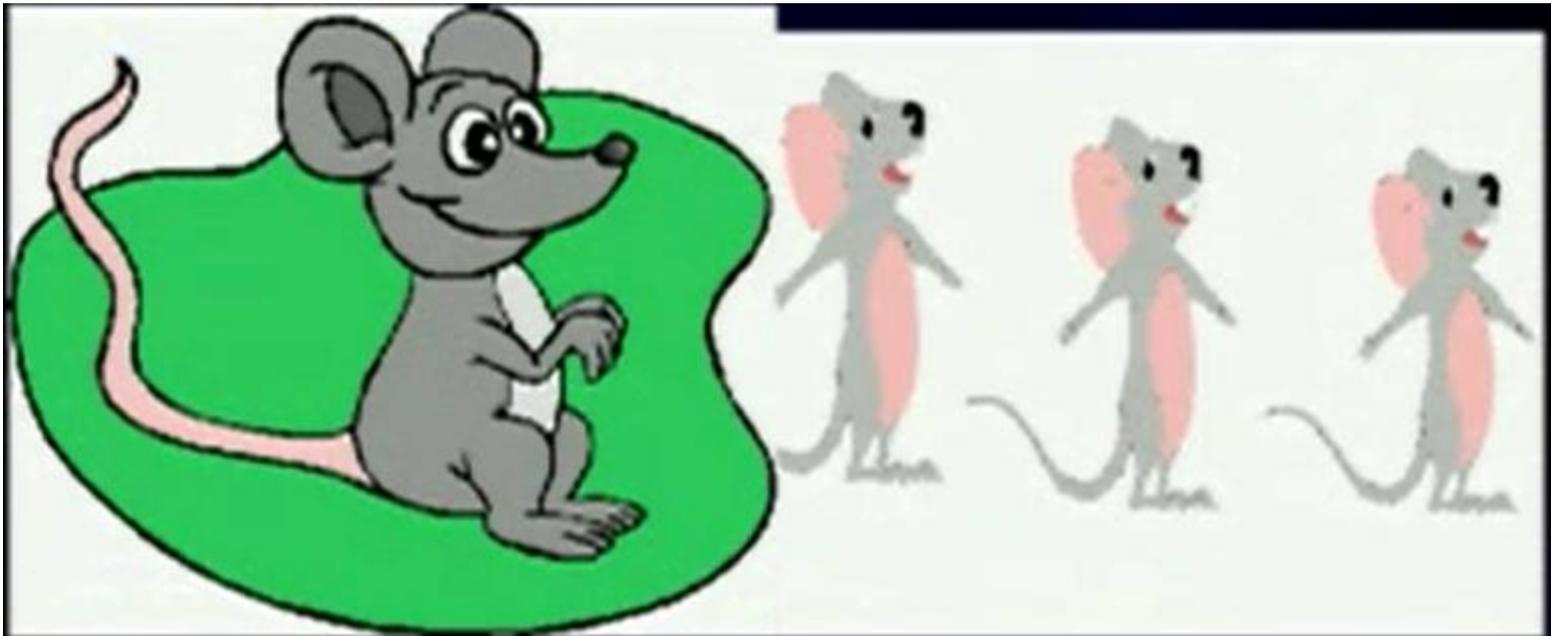
foot [fʊt]

feet   [fi:t]



fish

fish



mouse

mice

Some nouns change their spelling when they become **plural**.

Louse

aʊ

Singular	Plural
child	children
foot	feet
goose	geese
louse	lice
man	men
mouse	mice
ox	oxen
tooth	teeth
woman	women

goose [gu:s], pl **geese**

OX   [ɒks]

In some cases, change the **f** or **fe** to **v** and add **es**:

Singular	Plural
half	halves
knife	knives
leaf	leaves
life	lives
self	selves
thief	thieves
wife	wives
wolf	wolves

knife [naɪf]

wolf [wɜːlf]

Wolf : a wild animal like a big dog.

Nouns which don't change in the plural

Fish, sheep, deer, ...

Nouns ending in **ch**, **sh**, **ss**, **x**, or **s** take **es** in the plural

1. Watch**ch** → watch**es**
2. Brush**sh** → brush**es**
3. Glass**ss** → glass**es**
4. Potato**o** → potato**es**
5. Box**x** → box**es**
6. Bus**s** → bus**es**
7. ...

Note photo**o** → photo**s**, piano**o** → piano**s**

Add **es** if the noun ends in **s**, **sh**, **ch**, or **x**.

Singular	Plural
class	classes
inch	inches
box	boxes
stress	stresses
sex	sexes
tax	taxes
Jones	Joneses

inch [ɪntʃ]

[ˈdʒəʊnzɪz]

Certain words are always plural

1. Clothes
2. Glasses
3. **Mathematics**
4. **Series**
5. **Food**
6.

Give the **meaning** and an **example** about :

noun
verb
adjective
adverb
preposition
singular
plural
phrase
sentence

paragraph
Question
Answer

Write these words in the correct column.

book speak good word house have
write new man right blue say

noun

verb

adjective

book

Are these phrases, sentences or questions?

- 1 in the park *phrase*
- 2 Do you speak English?
- 3 a black cat
- 4 She's writing a book.
- 5 What's your name?
- 6 I like English.

Answer these questions.

- 1 What is the plural of **book**?
- 2 What is the singular of **men**?
- 3 Is **from** a verb?
- 4 Is **cat** an adjective?
- 5 Is 'Jane loves Hari.' a phrase?
- 6 Is **bad** an adverb?

Loubna typed the letter.

Loubna typed the letter.

- Subject of the verb : **Loubna**
- Verb : **typed**
- Object of the verb : **letter**

When people want to speak,
they need ways of . . .

- indicating things and people
- talking about actions
- describing things
- describing actions
- showing how things
 relate to other things
- joining sections of speech

In English we
call these words . . .

nouns and pronouns
verbs
adjectives
adverbs

prepositions
conjunctions

or questions . . .

- Are you well?
- Have they finished painting the house?

Nouns

A noun is the name of something: a thing or a person or a place, or even a feeling or a state of mind.

house Jane delight pencils Paris

There are **four kinds of nouns**.

Short forms

She is	she's
They are	they're
That is	that's
She has	she's
I will not	I won't
It is	it's
It has	it's
Are not	aren't
How is	how's
How has	how's
You have	you've
You are	you're
You will	you'll
You had	you'd

I am	I'm
I can not	I can't
Could not	couldn't
Did not	didn't
Does not	doesn't
Do not	don't
Had not	hadn't
Has not	hasn't
He had	he'd
He would	he'd
He will	he'll
He has	he's
He is	he's
Here is	here's

You would	you'd
Would not	wouldn't
Will not	won't
Who has	Who's
Who is	Who's
Who will	who'll
Who had	Who'd
Who would	who'd
Where is	where's
Where has	Where's
When is	when's
What is, has	what's
What will	what'll
Were not	weren't

She is, has	
Should not	
That is, has	
There had	There'd
There would	there'd
There will	
There is, has	
They had	
They would	
They will	
They are	
They have	
Was not	
We had	
We would	

We will	
We shall	
We are	
We have	
I had	
I would	
I will, shall	
I am	
I have	
Is not	
It will	
It is, has	
Let us	
She will	She'll

You do, don't you?

You like coffee, don't you?

She plays tennis on Saturdays, doesn't she?

You won't forget me, will you?

They have a large yard, don't they?

You'll remember, won't you?

He's over 40, isn't he?

I shouldn't have said that, should I?

أحرف الجر

English Prepositions

in

of

at

for



Prepositions Of Place, movement and time

Were you born *at* home?



No, I was born *in* hospital.



in/inside



on



at



near



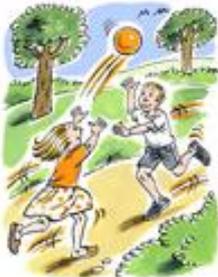
under



over

at	in	on
at home	in a car	on a bus
at work	in a taxi	on a train
at school	in a helicopter	on a plane
at the top	in a boat	on a ship
at the bottom	in the sky	on the water
at the corner	in the middle	on a horse
at the side	in the newspaper	on the way

Type in, at or on in the gaps.


floor [flɔːr]

 the park

 the window

 the floor

 the south of Spain

 the roof

 his bike

 the table

 the bathroom

roof [ru:f]



below



above



round/around



through



among



between



behind



in front of



along



across



up



down



opposite



onto



off



into



out of



past



next to/by/beside



against



over



from ... to



towards

At, On, In

Learn these rules.

- | | | |
|---------------------|---|--|
| at a point/place | x | e.g. I met her at the bus stop. She lives at 43 Duke Road.
He's at work (i.e. not at home). They're at a party tonight. |
| on a surface | <u>x</u> | e.g. The book is on the desk. We sat on the floor. |
| in an area or space |  | e.g. Malawi is a country in Africa. She lives in Milan. He's in the kitchen. The key's in my pocket. Put it in the box. |

Opposites

Some prepositions form pairs of opposites.

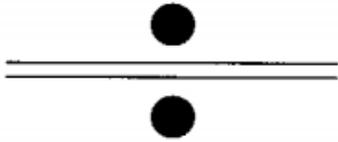
up ↑

down ↓

into 

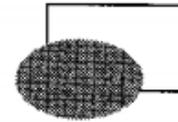
out of 

over/above

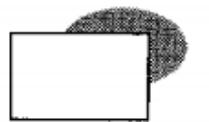


under/below

in front of



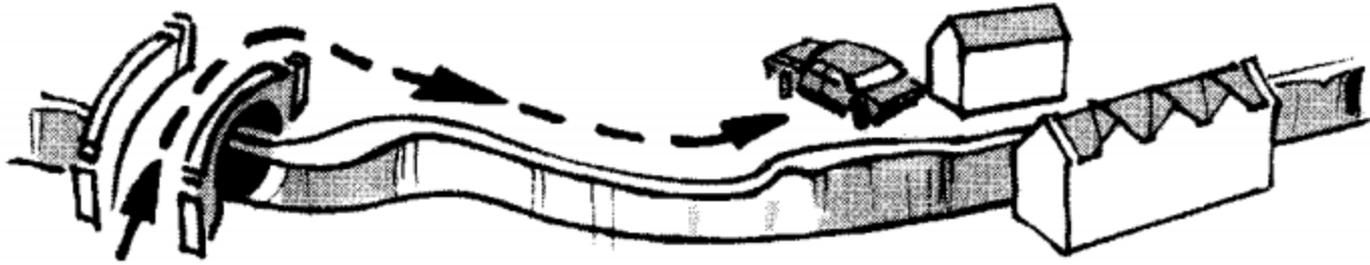
behind



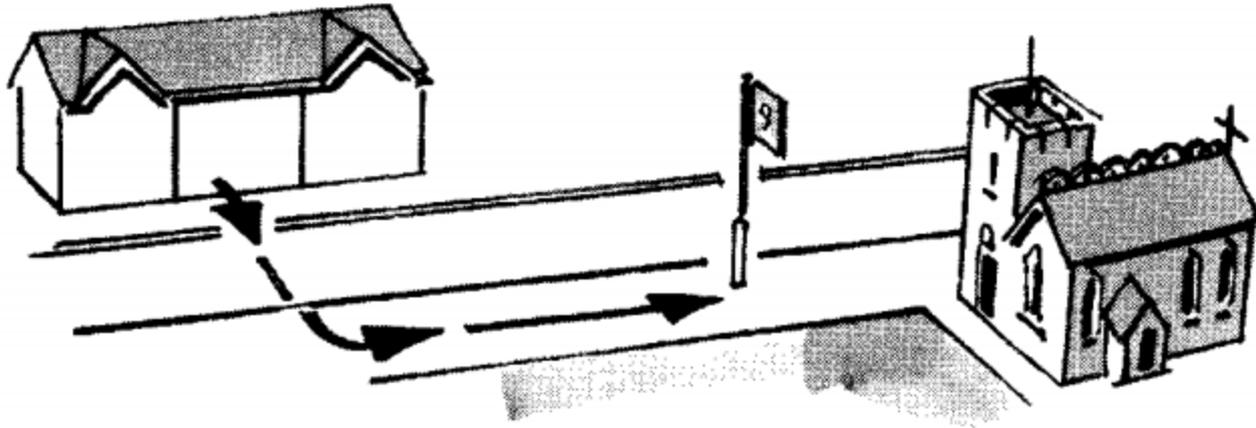
We drove along the river,
round the lake, past the
old castle, and through
the village.



We came over the bridge,
and parked next to the
house, which was
opposite the hotel.



Our house is **between** two shops and it is **near** a bus stop; you just go **across** the road and walk **along** the other side towards the church.



about

(١) بمعنى "عن".

- She is talking **about** me.
- What are you talking **about**?

(٢) عندما نريد التحدث عن شيء بمعنى "بـ" أو "في".

- I dream **about** tomorrow.
- I think **about** my future.

(٣) بمعنى "تقريباً" **approximately**.

- How old are you?
- I am **about** 20 years old

٤) بمعنى "حول" around , round .

The earth moves (around/round/about) the sun.

at

(١) للتعبير عن مكان محدد بشكل عام بمعنى "في ، عند".

The children were **at** home.

I was **at** Ali's house

(٢) للتعبير عن وقت محدد.

The concert starts at 7:30 o'clock.

(٣) للتعبير على لحظة محددة.

at the moment , **at** lunch time , **at**
middy , **at** the present time ...

٤) مع الأعداد "السرعة ، العمر ، السعر".

You can drive **at** 100 kph

٥) بمعنى "نحو ، باتجاه".

He threw a stone **at** me.

٦) مع الفعل **look**.

Look to me. 

Look at me.

by

(١) بمعنى "بالقرب من... ، بجانب..."

There is a policeman standing **by** my car.

(٢) للتعبير عن وسيلة ما وخصوصاً في وسائل النقل.

The thief must have left the building **by**
the back door.

(٣) للتعبير عن تكرار.

I drink tea sip **by** sip.

Enter one **by** one.

٤) عند بناء الجملة للمجهول عند ذكر الفاعل "تدرس بالتفصيل في البحث التاسع".

٥) للتعبير عن وقت "on or before".

by Friday

The photographs will be ready by 5 May.

٦) يمكن أن يأتي على الصيغة **by + Verb-ing**.

We can increase production **by** improving wages.

By improving wages, we can increase production.

Due to

للتعبير عن سبب ما.

His success was **due to** his hard work.

for

(١) بمعنى "لمدة".

I will live here **for** five days.

(٢) بمعنى "لأجل ، من أجل".

I am working **for** you.

(٣) بمعنى حرف الجر "اللام".

Did you vote **for** the President?

from

(١) للتعبير عن بداية مدة زمنية محددة بمعنى "من".

She lived in New York **from** 1995 to 1998.

(٢) للتعبير عن حركة بمعنى "من".

He moved **from** Canada.

(٣) للتعبير عن منشأ.

Where did you come **from**?

I came **from** Paris.

The words in red are wrong. Type the correct words in the gaps.

1 I usually play football **in** the weekend.

▶ I usually play football the weekend.

2 Jake's starting a new job **in** the end of July.

▶ Jake's starting a new job the end of July.

3 My sister will be 18 **on** two days.

▶ My sister will be 18 two days.

4 We're meeting Sally **at** Tuesday morning.

▶ We're meeting Sally Tuesday morning.

5 All my sisters were born **at** the month of June.

▶ All my sisters were born the month of June.



in

He is in the car. Get in my car. (١) بمعنى "داخل ، في".

(٢) مع أسماء الشهور والسنوات والفصول.

Ali was born in March.

Ali was born in 1990 AD.

Ali left the city in summer.

Abstract Nouns قبل (٣)

Romeo was in love with Juliet.

The passengers are in danger.

(٤) للتعبير عن مكان محدد.

I am in Damascus.

in the box.

In the street.

There's something in it.

A condition rare in a child of that age.

You find this instinct in animals.

In England, in France, In Guelma, ...

In the Sahara.

I cant do it in two hours.

Ill be back in a week.

Once in a hundred years.

In may, in september 2002.

In summer, winter, autumn, in spring

In his age.

Is Maria in?

into

(١) بمعنى "نحو ، باتجاه".

He went **into** the room.

(٢) عند التغيير من حالة إلى حالة أخرى بمعنى "إلى" وخصوصاً مع الفعل **divide**:

Airports divide **into** local and international.

of

(١) للربط بين المضاف والمضاف إليه (الملكية).

The Queen **of** Spain.

The owners **of** the car.

(٢) للتعبير عن جزء من مجموعة.

A part **of** the cake.

An apple **of** the box.

(٣) للتعبير عن الكميات amounts.

a lot **of** noise , a liter **of** oil , dozens **of** eggs
, thousands **of** babies

On

(١) بمعنى "فوق ، على".

The books are **on** the table.

(٢) للتعبير عن وسائل النقل.

I go to work **on** the bus.

(٣) مع أيام الأسبوع والأشهر.

We will travel **on** Friday.

We will travel **on** 9th July.

My birthday is **on** the eighth of April.

This chocolate will expire **on** 1/10/2006 **AD**.

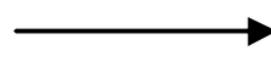
٥) بمعنى "الموجود في ، الموجود على".

Although this computer is cheap, it is one of the best machines **on** the market.

This program displays all sites **on** the internet.

to

×



×

(١) بمعنى "إلى".

Come **to** me. Come here.

Come **to** here. ✗

He went **to** Canada from 1990 **to** 1995.

(٢) إذا جاء على الصيغة **to + Verb.1** فإنه يأتي بمعنى "لكي ، لـ".

I went **to** a restaurant **to** eat.

To win you have **to** train well.

٣) إذا جاء على الصيغة **to + have + Verb.3** فإنه يأتي بمعنى "لكي" ولكن في الماضي.

I am delighted **to** have met your wife yesterday.

٤) للنفي في الحالتين السابقتين نضع "**not**" قبل **to**.

Not to lose you have to train well.

I told you not to go skating.

We are sorry not to have met your wife yesterday.

٥) للبناء للمجهول في الحالة ٢ يبنى على الشكل **to + be + Verb.3** وفي الحالة ٣ فيبنى على الشكل **.not to + be + Verb.3**
٤) وفي الحالة ٤ فيبنى على الشكل **to + have + been + Verb.3**

Everyone likes to be admired.

The building appears to have been repainted.

Not to be deceived you have to be careful.

٦) إذا جاء بين فعلين فإنه غالباً يأتي بمعنى "أن".

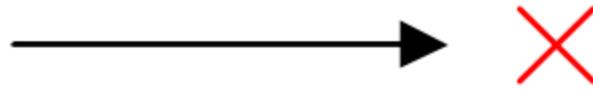
I want **to** go.

I want you **to** go with me.

I think **to** write a story.

I went **to** see him.

Up to



يستخدم للتعبير عن المكان والزمان بمعنى "حتى".

I will stay here **up to** Saturday.

I walked **up to** the tree.

Until, till



للتعبير عن الزمان فقط بمعنى "حتى".

I will stay here (**until**/**up to**/**till**) Saturday.

with

بمعنى "مع" together.

She went **with** me. I was **with** her

I am **with** you.

Come **with** me.

He had an argument **with** his brother.

Be patient **with** her.

Take my gloves. I can't drive **with** them on.

That problem is always **with** us.

I'm **with** you.

Sorry. I'm not **with** you.

Are you **with** us, Maria?

I'll be **with** you in a minute.

What's **with** you?

She was staying **with** friends.

He lives **with** his aunt.

morning *in the* morning

afternoon *in the* afternoon

evening *in the* evening

night *at* night

breakfast *at* breakfast

lunch *at* lunch

dinner *at* dinner

supper *at* supper

Fill in: **on**, **in**, **in front of**, **opposite** or **under**.



This is Sarah's room. There is a picture **85)**
..... the wall. There's a desk **86)**
the picture and a chair **87)** the desk.
88) the window there is a chest
of drawers where Sally keeps her clothes. Her
mother is in the room. She is very angry. Sally's
clothes are not **89)** the drawers, they are
90) the floor!

1. What **did** you do **on** the weekend?
2. How many people were there **on** the party?

Complete these sentences using (a), (b) or (c).

- 1 I studied too much and I got (a) hot (b) tired (c) sick.
- 2 I ate too much and I got (a) hot (b) tired (c) sick.
- 3 I sat in the sun too much and I got (a) hot (b) tired (c) sick.

He **put** them **in** my car.

And he **puts** them **in** my car.



She broke her leg.

In Guelma,
I'm **hot**
sick
and
tired

- The boy has just fallen **off** his bicycle
- Last year when I was **on** holiday I worked very well.
- **in** : the town, the middle of, danger, ...
- **at** : home, school, university, work, ...
- **by** : bus, car, train, sea, ...

Prepositions of Time

AT

at 8:15

at Christmas/Easter

at night/midnight/noon

at the weekend

IN

in the morning/afternoon/night

in July (months)

in summer (seasons)

in 1991 (years)

in the 20th century

ON

on Sunday

on Monday etc

on March 28th

on a winter night

Preposition

Preposition + noun or pronoun

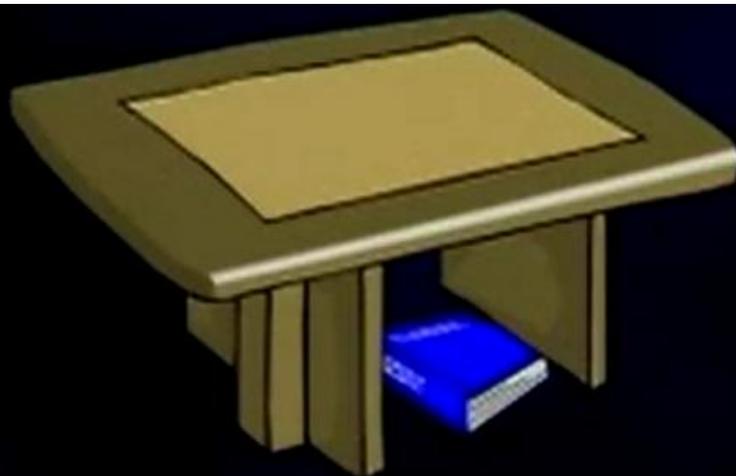
Preposition of place (Where ?)

Example : where is the book?

On



2005



under

The book is **under** the table.



in front of

The book is **in front of** the table.

1976



behind

The chair is **behind** the table.

repositions



above

The picture is **above** the table.

1. So, for
2. Accordingly
3. Besides
4. Otherwise
5. Hence
6. However
7. Consequently
8. Therefore
9. Nevertheless
10. Then
11. Yet
12. Moreover
13. Thus

Were you born *at* home?



No, I was born *in* hospital.

2009

بعض الأخطاء الشائعة في حروف الجر.

(١) الخطأ في استخدام حرف جر لا لزوم له.

Please answer **to** my question. ❌

Please answer my question.

I finished **from** my work. ❌

I finished my work.

He needs **to** a pen. ❌

He needs a pen.

She reached **to** the school. ❌

She reached the school.

They entered **to** the room. ❌

They entered the room.

We visited him **in** the next day. ❌

We visited him the next day.

٢) الخطأ في عدم استخدام حرف جر حيث يتطلب الأمر استخدامه:

He is knocking the door. ❌

He is knocking **at** the door.

Please remind me his name. ❌

Please remind me **of** his name.

He can reply her inquires. ❌

He can reply **to** her inquires.

She waited you. ✘

She waited **for** you.

I went a walk. ✘

I went **on** a walk.

Don't argue him. ✘

Don't argue **with** him.

٣) الخطأ في استخدام حرف جر بدلاً من آخر:

Be careful **from** that man. ✘

Be careful **of** that man.

He is sitting **on** the table. ✘

He is sitting **at** the table.

Look **to** the picture. ✘

Look **at** the picture.

I am angry **from** him. ✘

I am angry **with** him.

She is afraid **from** the dog. ✘

She is afraid **of** the dog.

He threw a stone **on** the cat. ✘

He threw a stone (**at/into**) the cat.

She was laughing **on** him. ✘

She was laughing **at** him.

She was happy **from** him. ✘

She was pleased **with** him.

I walked **until** the tree. ✘

I walked **up to** the tree.

Fill the gaps with *at*, *on* or *in*.

- 1 I put the books the table.
- 2 The butter is the fridge.
- 3 We saw them the bus stop.
- 4 I met her a party.
- 5 She works Barcelona.
- 6 The dictionary is my desk.
- 7 I sat the bed and wrote the letter.
- 8 I left my books school.
- 9 There was still a lot of snow the ground when I arrived.
- 10 He lives a very nice area.

Fill in: **at, on, under, behind, out of, opposite, in front of.**



e.g. The cat is *under*
the table.



They are sitting
15) each other.



John is walking
16) Alan.



Jane is 17)
home. She is watching
TV. She is sitting 18)
..... the armchair.
The TV is 19)
her.



The woman is sitting
20) the
sunshade. The man is
sitting **21)**
the deckchair.
The girls are coming
22) the sea.

أدوات العطف

English Conjunctions

and

or



– أدوات العطف في اللغة الانجليزية كثيرة منها:

and : و , or : أو , but : لكن , both : معاً , either : إما ,

while بينما , when عندما , what بقدر ما

neither ... nor : لا هذا ولا ذاك , then : ثم , as well as وكذلك ,

notwithstanding : على الرغم من

at	in	on
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He gets up at four o'clock. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • They live in France. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • She lives on an island.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • She is at the library. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I like to travel in summer. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Let's get on the bus.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • They laughed at my joke. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He was born in 1988. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • What's on television?
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Who is at the door? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • What do you do in the evening? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Where will you go on holiday?
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I'm good at singing. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Russia is the biggest country in the world. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do you live on this block?
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • What happens at the end of the movie? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He was in a car accident. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I get up early on weekdays.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Are they at school now? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Can we do it in time? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The picture is on the wall.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Look at that. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • We plan to move in a year from now. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I'm on the phone.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • They smiled at me. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I get up late in the morning. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Am I late or on time?
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I'm bad at math. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do you believe in ghosts? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • We agreed on it.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I often stay up late at night. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • I will be there in a few minutes. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Put it on the table, please.

Fanboys

For, and, nor, but, or, yet, so

And

- a man and a woman.
- Two thousand and eight.
- Wait and see.
- Listen and speak.
- Him and her.

2008

Ahmed **and** Ali.

He **and** she are **smart**.

She is smart. He is smart.

She **and** he are smart.

My hobbies are swimming, reading,
programming **and** exploring.

My hobbies are swimming **and** reading
and programming **and** exploring.



Your kitchen, your living-room, **and** your dining-room are **too** small.

Both the first **and** the second prize were won by students at our school.

Bread **and** butter are good for you.

Every bank **and** store was closed that day.

- 1) She is studying **both** English and French.
- 1) I am studying both English and math.
- 2) **Neither** she **nor** her sister were in the party.
- 3) Meet her first **then** take your decision.
- 4) He **as well as** you is tired.

- 5) Kill him (**or else/otherwise**) he will kill you.

look at this

I and **he** are going. ✘

He and **I** are going.

I or **he** is going. ✘

He or **I** is going.

But

1. I would like to do it **but** I have no money.
2. Poor, **but** happy.
3. She was poor **but** she was **honest**.
4. I liked the beginning, **but** the rest of the film wasn't very good.

for

1. He went there **for** a rest.
2. I am **for** helping him
3. I have got some news **for** you
4. I have known her **for** ten years
5. I have been working here **for** three months

Or

1. He could not read **or** write.
2. red **or** black?.

Before

- I got there **before** you.
- She died **before** I was born.
- Two days **before**.
- I have **read** that book **before**.
- She has never met him **before**.
- It has never happened **before**.

She **or** he is smart.

So

- He's not **so** good a teacher as his father
- I'm **so** tired
- I'm going early, **so** I'll get a ticket

never

1. I **never** eat fish.
2. I have **never** seen him.
3. he will **never** come back.
4. **never** in all my life.
5. I **never** heard such a thing.
6. We shall **never** see her again

because

1. I did it **because** you asked me to.
2. I won't go out **because** it's raining.
3. We are annoyed **because** the weather is bad.

Nor

- neither you **nor** I can do it.
- She neither eats **nor** drinks.
- I shan't go and **nor** will you.

Yet

Not **yet**

Have you had your lunch **yet** ?

Though, although

- I'll do it, **although** I don't want to
- **although** poor they were honest
- I went to the game even **though** it was raining
- I like **him** very much, but **though** I hate **his** wife.

To

1. I want **to** speak **to** you.
2. Would you like **to** join us ?.
3. I want **to** ask you some questions.
4. he went **to** the door.
5. She's gone **to** the toilet.
6. We are going **to** my parents.
7. He was speaking **to** me.

Thus, so

I am very hungry, **thus** I am eating too much.

Then

- I'm going to Guelma and I'll see her **then**.
- I went first to Guelma **then** to Elhamem.
- And **then** what ?
- If you don't want that **then** what do you want ?
- Now, **then**, what's the matter ?

1945

Hence

I went first to Guelma and hence to Elhamam.

On

Used for showing where something is

Put the book **on** the table

Your book is **on** the table

The number is **on** the door

There is a good film **on** TV tonight

Used for showing when

My birthday is **on** may 20.

I'll see you **on** Monday.

I'm going **on**
holiday next
Week.

Take the next
road **on** the
right.

Common prepositions

Here are some common prepositions:

about	before	during
above	behind	for
across	below	from
after	beside	in
against	between	inside
among(st)	but	into
around	by	off

over

until

past

up

since

with

than

without

through

till

to

errors

Please answer **to** my question. ✘

Please answer my question.

I finished **from** my work. ✘

I finished my work.

1. He needs **to** a pen.

2. He needs a pen.

1. She reached **to** the school.

2. She reached the school.

1. They entered **to** the room.

2. They entered the room.

1. We visited him **in** the next day.

2. We visited him the next day.

1. He is knocking the door.
2. He is knocking **at** the door.
3. Please remind me his name.
4. Please remind me **of** his name.
5. He can reply her inquires.
6. He can reply **to** her inquires.

Indirect
speech

*If the reporting verb is in the **present**, there is no change in tense.*

For example :

1. She **says** "I **am** tired"
2. She **says** that she **is** tired.
 - She **says** "I **was** cooking"
 - She **says** that she **was cooking**.
 -

*If the reporting verb is in the **past**, the following changes in tense take place*

Direct speech	Reported speech
Present simple	Past simple
Present continuous	Past continuous
Present perfect	Past perfect
Present perfect continuous	Past perfect continuous

Present simple → past simple

- She **said** “I always **drink** tea”
- She **said** that she always **drank** tea.

Present continuous → past continuous

- He said “ I am watching a film “
- He said that he was watching a film.

Present perfect → past perfect

1. He said “ I **have finished** my work “
2. He said that he **had finished** his work.

Present perfect continuous → past perfect continuous

1. He said “it **has been raining** all day”
2. He said that it **had been raining** all day

Direct speech	Reported speech
Past simple	Past perfect
Past continuous	Past perfect continuous
Past perfect	.....
past perfect continuous	.....

Past simple → past perfect

1. He said “ I finished my work “
2. He said that he had finished his work.

Past continuous → past perfect continuous

1. He said “ I **was swimming** all day “
2. He said that he **had been swimming** all day.

Direct speech	Reported speech
future simple	Conditional present simple
future continuous	Conditional present simple
future perfect	
future perfect continuous	

Future simple → conditional present simple

1. He said “ I will finish my work “



2. He said that he **would finish** his work.

• He said “ I will see you later “



• He said that he **would see** me later.

1. He said “ I will wait for you “



1. He said that he **would wait** for me.

Future continuous → conditional present continuous

1. He said “ I **will be working** all day“
2. He said that he **would be working** all day

Direct speech	Reported speech
can	could
may	might
might	might
Should This, these Here, come	Should That, those There, go

He said " I can't fix it my self "

He said he couldn't fix it himself

He said " this is my book"

He said that was his book

Mum said ” he **might** visit us ”



Mum said that he **might** visit us.

She said to me ” I am very tired”



She told me that she was very tired.

Or

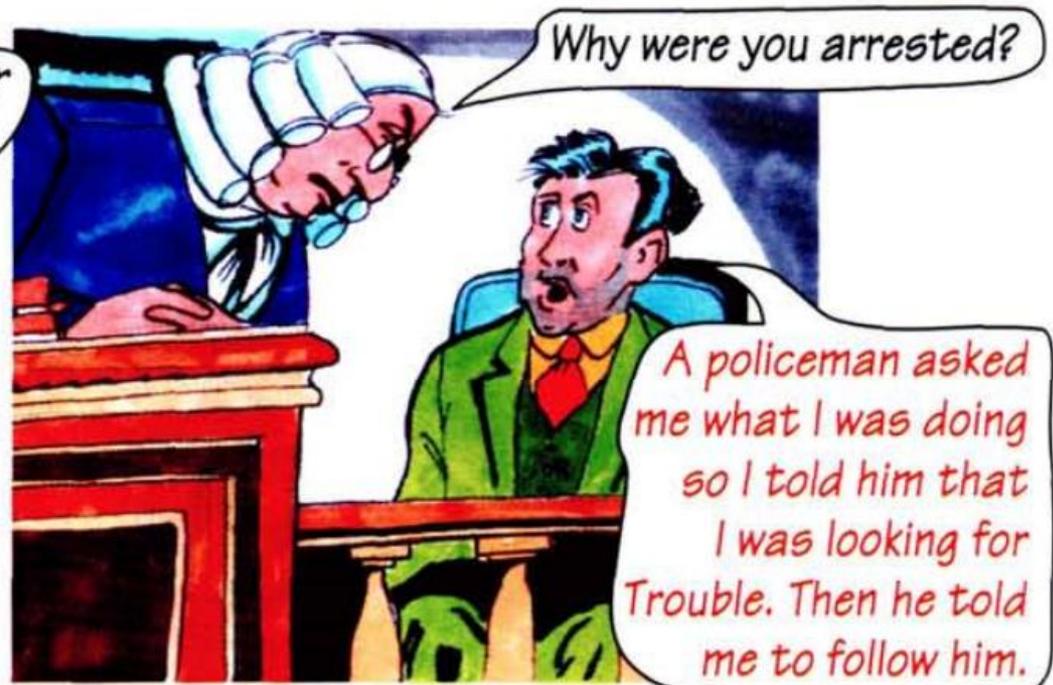
She said that she was very tired.



What are you doing?

I'm looking for Trouble.

Then follow me!



Why were you arrested?

A policeman asked me what I was doing so I told him that I was looking for Trouble. Then he told me to follow him.



Well, he was right to arrest you. You were looking for trouble.

But "Trouble" is the name of my dog!

قواعد إضافية

Additional Grammar



Any, some

1. I want **some** eggs.
2. Do you want **any** eggs?
3. I don't want **any** eggs.

Many came but **more** stayed away.

I need a few **more** books.

Some were talking and a few **more** were reading.

I'd like **some more** meat.

Has she any **more** children?

I've no **more** time.

I've got **more** like these.

Until, till

I will stay here (**until**/**up to**/**till**) Saturday.

With,

= together

She went **with** me.

I am **with** you.

1. **until** the next day.
2. I won't be **ready until** tomorrow.
3. Wait **until** I come.
4. They did nothing **until** I came.

5. He lived there **for many** years.
6. I've lived here **for many** years.
7. In **many** cases.
8. A good **many** of those books.

all

:all + of + اسم (١)

all of the book.

all of the books.

all of the oil.

all of them.

:all + اسم (٢)

all the book.

all the books.

all the oil.

a lot, much, many

Put the words in the correct column.

- ▶ money
- ▶ people
- ▶ air
- ▶ TV
- ▶ cheese
- ▶ juice
- ▶ tickets
- ▶ chocolates
- ▶ cars
- ▶ snow
- ▶ children
- ▶ cans of cola

How many ... ?

How much ... ?



(٣) all + ضمير:

We **all** enjoyed the play.
You **all** are smart.
Thank you **all**.

(٤) يأتي ضميراً:

Would you like to buy anything else?
No, thank you. That's **all**.

although

Although this computer is cheap, it is one of the best machines on the market.

Very, much

42 Fill in: very or much.

London is becoming a 1) *very* ... popular place for American tourists. All the big attractions are now 2) busy in the summer months. The crowds of tourists around places like Buckingham Palace are 3) bigger than they were a few years ago. Sales of postcards and other souvenirs are 4) higher now than in past years. This is 5) good news for the British tourist industry.

Both...and

Either...or

Neither...nor

Whether...or

Not only...but also

- **Both** my sister **and** my brother are **stupid**.
- Tonight's program is **either** speaking **or** sleeping.
- **Neither** selma **nor** Maria came to the party.
yesterday.
- I don't know **whether** we go **or** not
- **Not only** selma respect the old **but** she **also**
helps them.
- I will **either** write **or** telephone.

Neither your brother **nor** your sisters are responsible. Ok.

Many

A large number of people or things

1. **Many** people in this country are very poor
2. There are not **many** students in my class
3. There are too **many** mistakes in your homework

A word that you use to ask or talk the number of people
or things

- How **many** brothers and sisters have you got ?

From

1. **From** next door
2. **From** my friend

For

1. **For** two weeks
2. **For** you

too much and **too many**

I put **too much** sugar in my tea.

I have made **too many** mistakes in the exam.

Never

1. I **never** eat fish. I **never** learn singular words. I **never**.
2. He will **never** come back. He dead.
3. **Never** in all my life.

Once

Several times

Recently

Many times

Too and enough

The black shoes are *too big*.
The red shoes are *too expensive*.
The green shoes are *not cheap enough*.



154 Answer the questions using too or enough.



1. Can he run fast? (fat)
...No, he is too fat.....



2. Can she eat all the cake? (big)
No,



3. Can he lift the car? (heavy)
No,



4. Can he jump over the fence?
(young) No,



5. Can he make people laugh?
(funny) Yes,



6. Can he sleep in this bed?
(small) No,

Answer the questions using "too" or "enough".



1. Can he have a shower?
(cold) No, ..*it's too cold.* ...



2. Can he jump? (frightened)
No,



3. Can he go to work?
(well) No,



4. Can they carry him? (strong)
Yes,



5. Can he lift it? (strong)
No,



6. Can Bob win? (slow)
No,

Answer the questions using **too** or **enough**.



e.g. Can he eat his dinner?
(hungry)
No, *he isn't hungry enough.*



13 Can you buy this necklace? (expensive)
No,
.....



14 Can Tim win the race? (fast)
No,
.....

1. it's **too** hard for me.
2. it's **too** hard for me to explain.
3. it's **too** heavy for me to carry.
4. I'm not **too** sure about that.

enough enough enough too too too many too much too much

'There's always something wrong, isn't there? One day, I give you potatoes and not vegetables. Then the next day, there's cream in the sauce. I haven't got time to listen to all this. I'm busy. If you don't like my cooking, you do it. And another thing, I'm worried about you. You always go to bed late, so you're tired to get up for school in the morning. And you spend time playing computer games in your room. I don't think you're working hard .



have you got enough?

I think you have said enough.

I've had enough.

There is more than enough for all.

I think that will be enough.

It is enough for us to know that...

Enough books, enough money,...

I haven't enough room.

We had waited long enough.

It is proof enough that

Pleasant and very pleasant

It was a	Pleasant occasion. very pleasant occasion.
The party was	Pleasant very pleasant

We had some very **pleasant** times in Setif.

Countable	Example	Non countable	Example
some	some apples	some	some water
any	any apples	any	any water
a lot of	a lot of apples	a lot of	a lot of water
many	many apples	much	much water
a few	a few apples	a little	a little water

near

1. It was **near** to 6 o'clock. It is **near** to 6 o'clock.
2. **Near** here, **near** there.
3. He was standing **near** the table.
4. Stay **near** me.
5. Don't come **near** me!
6. The sun was **near** to setting. **Near death**
7. Her birthday is **near** mine.
8. He won't go **near** anything illegal.
9. I won't go **near** anything illegal.

1. French is **nearer** Latin than English is.
2. It is the same thing or **near** it.
3. In the **near** future.

of

- The wife **of** the doctor.
- A friend **of** ours.
- Love **of** money and children.
- He is not one **of** us.
- The second **of** June.
- What do you think **of** him.
- **Primes of the form :**
- Because **of** ...
- For fear **of** her.
- A girl **of** 20.
- A question **of** no importance.
- The city **of** Guelma

difficulty

1. This work is **difficult** to do.
2. With/without **difficulty**.
3. It's feasible, but with **difficulty**.
4. She has **difficulty** in walking/ speaking.
5. The **difficulty** is in choosing.
6. He was working under great **difficulties**.
7. I can see no **difficulty** in what you suggest .
8. He's having **difficulty** or **difficulties** with his wife/his car/his job.

can we do it? -- yes, it's **quite feasible**.

strange

There's something **strange** about him.

Wish + past simple

- I wish I could play football. (but I can't)
- I wish you were here. (but you are not here)
- I wish I was on holiday now. (but I'm not)
- I wish I had a car. (but I haven't got one)

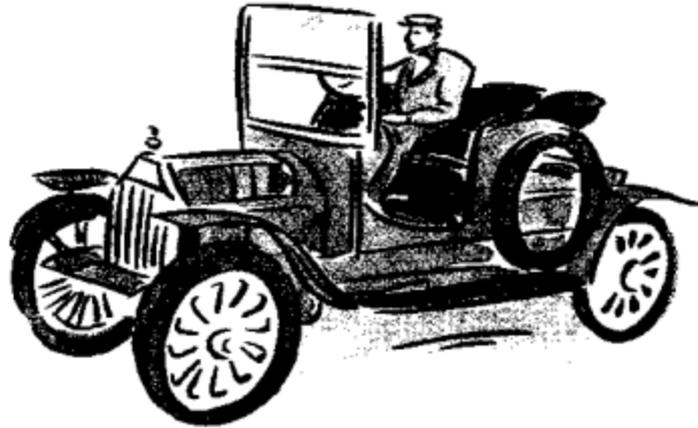
word

opposite

word	opposite
strong	weak
tidy	untidy
good	bad
first	last
light	heavy
loud	low
thick	thin
tall	small
healthy	ill, sick
nervous	calm
intelligent	stupid

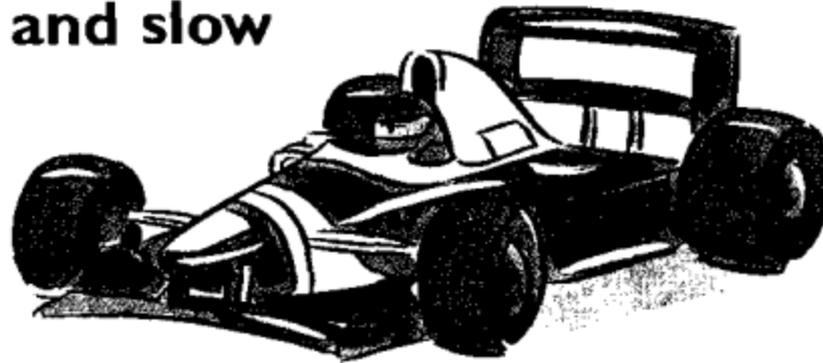
word	opposite
include	exclude
like	dislike
love	hate
lucky	unlucky
new	old
empty	full
easy	difficult
young	old
calm	rough
hot	cold
long	short

word	opposite
high	low
upper	lower
bounded	unbounded
light	heavy
clear	ambiguous
closed	open
dressed	undressed
son	daughter
bottom	top
diligent	
unfair	fair



This car goes very slowly. It's a slow car.

Fast and slow



This car goes very fast. It's a fast car.

slowly but surely

My watch is **slow**.

My watch is ten minutes **slow**.

To go **slow**.

Right and wrong

This sentence is **right**.

I like coffee very much.

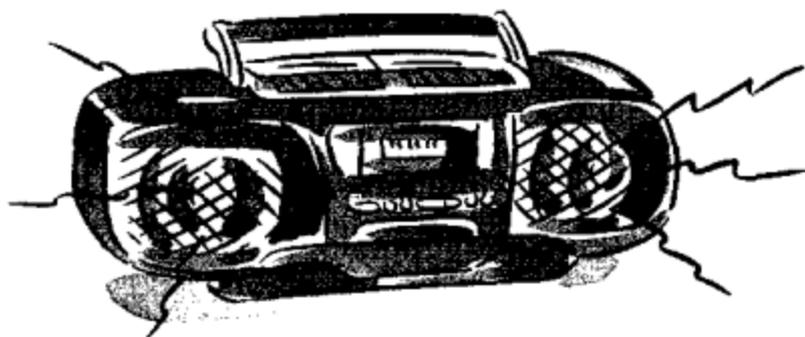


This sentence is **wrong**.

I like very much coffee.



Loud and quiet /laʊd/ and /kwaɪət/



The music is too loud.



It's very quiet here.

Well and badly



She's a good driver. She drives well.
He's a bad driver. He drives badly.

Way

Way means how someone does something.



He's speaking in a friendly way. She's speaking in an unfriendly way.

Complete the sentences.

- 1 This train is **slow**. It goes very*slowly*.....
- 2 He is a **bad** singer. He sings very
- 3 She is always **loud**. She speaks very
- 4 He's a **fast** swimmer. He swims very
- 5 This girl is **quiet**. She always speaks
- 6 He's a **good** English-speaker. He speaks English

Which do you think is better? Use your dictionary if you want to.

- 1 A loud person or a quiet person?
- 2 A fast bus or a slow bus?
- 3 A friendly person or an unfriendly person?
- 4 A right answer or a wrong answer?
- 5 To speak politely or impolitely?
- 6 To speak in a strange way or in a normal way?

Colors

Green

Red

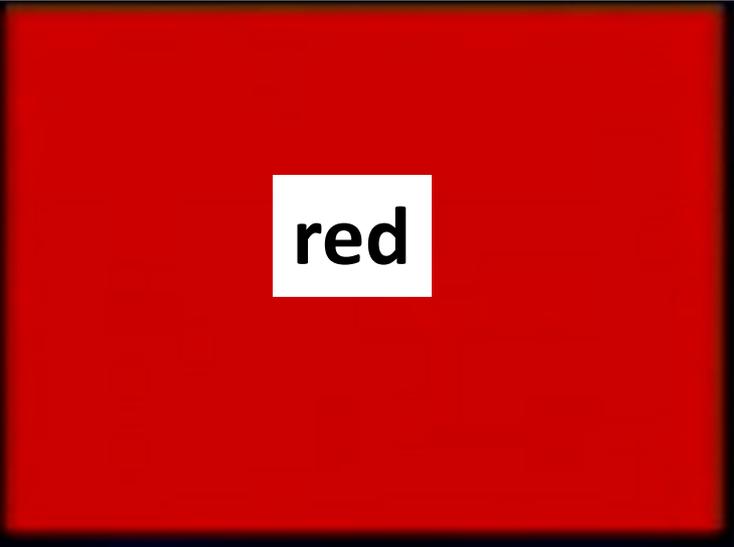
Blue

Yellow

Black

beige

white

A solid red square with a black border.

red

A solid pink square with a black border.

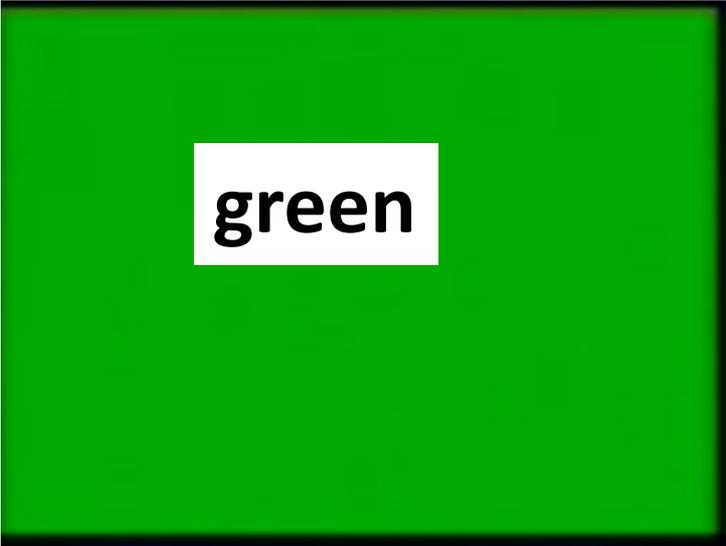
pink

A solid orange square with a black border.

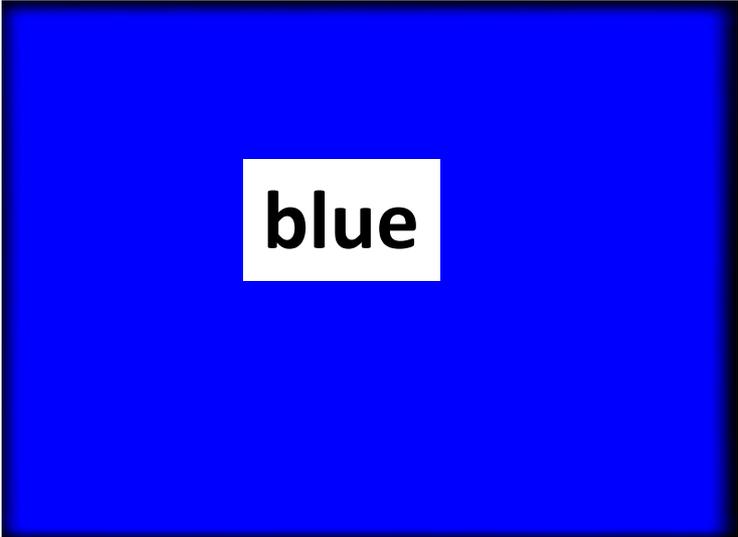
orange

A solid yellow square with a black border.

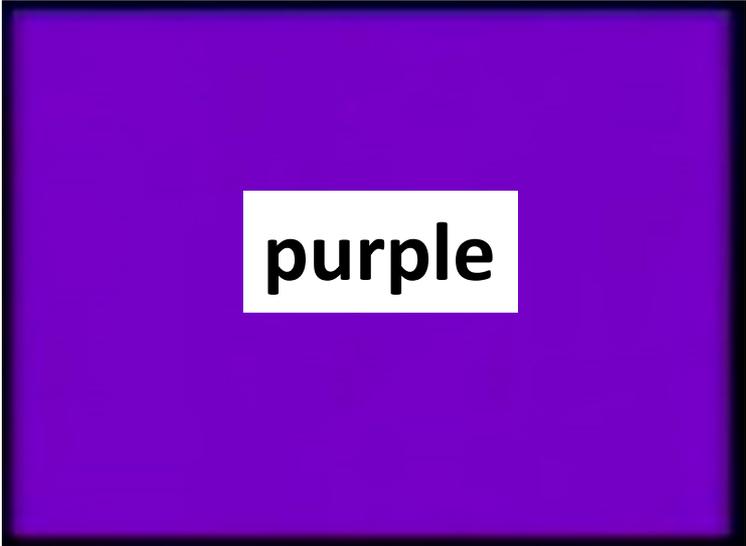
yellow

A solid green rectangular color swatch with a black border.

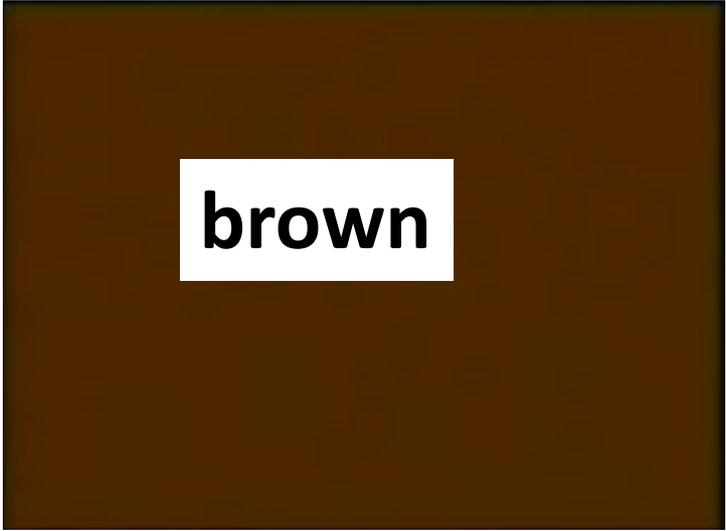
green

A solid blue rectangular color swatch with a black border.

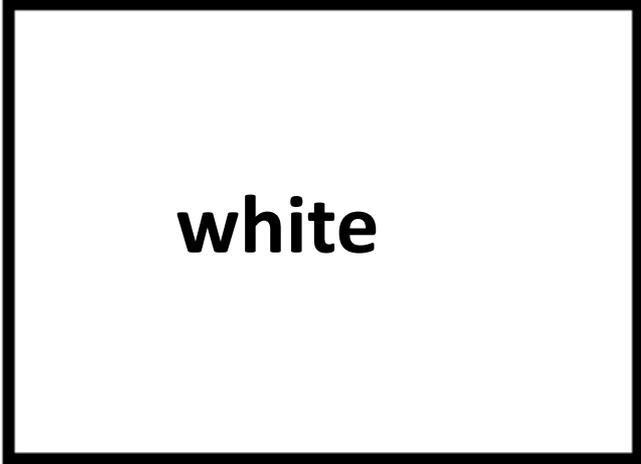
blue

A solid purple rectangular color swatch with a black border.

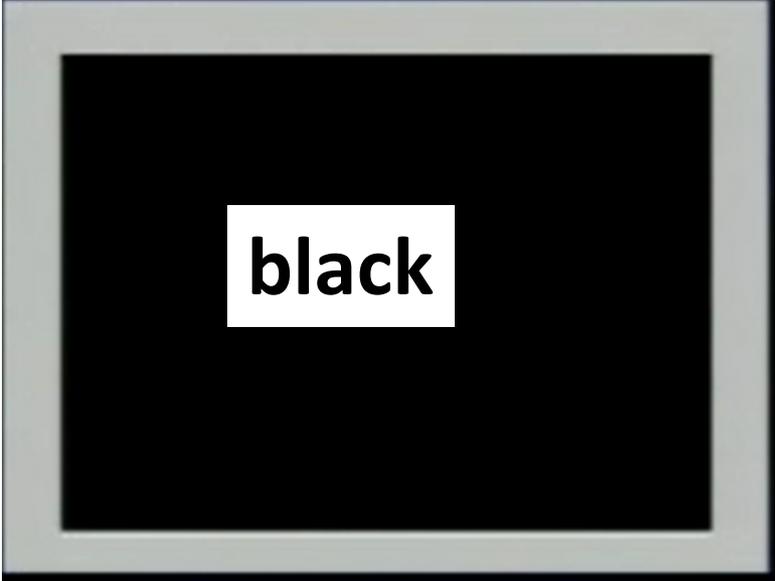
purple

A solid brown rectangular color swatch with a black border.

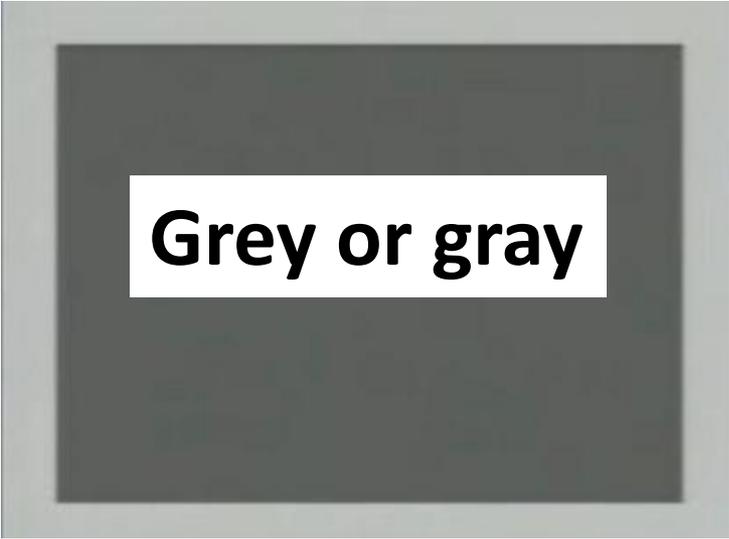
brown



white



black



Grey or gray



Dark blue
Light blue

Days of the week

1. Sunday
2. Monday
3. Tuesday
4. Wednesday
5. Thursday
6. Friday
7. Saturday

1. Sun day
2. Mon day
3. Tues day
4. Wednes day
5. Thurs day
6. Fri day
7. Satur day

Every Sunday = On Sundays
Every day = daily

On **Sundays**, there is a picnic with my wife.

Months

1. January
2. February
3. march
4. April
5. may
6. June
7. July
8. August
9. September
10. October
11. November
12. December

Every month = monthly



seasons





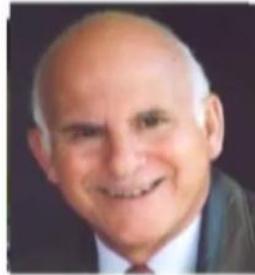
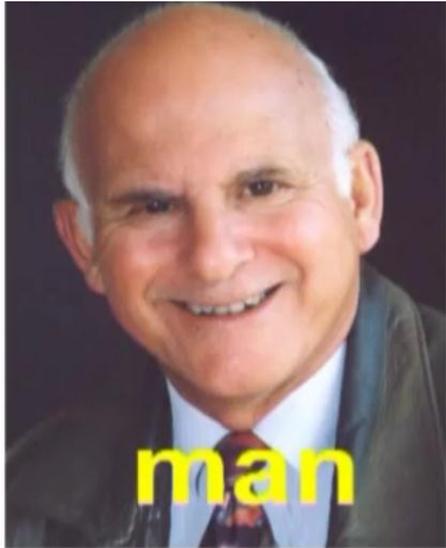
The house of my grandfather is old , spacious **and** has four bedrooms.





people





men



women



husband

and

wife





boy



girl



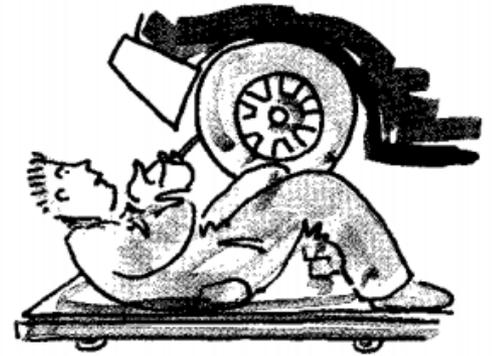
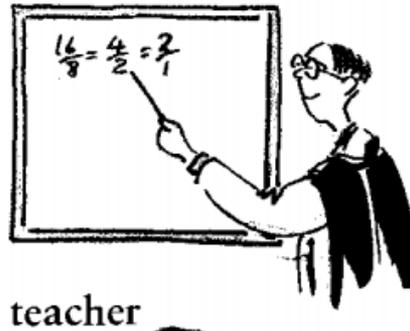
son



family

What's your job

A What's his/her job?



Meaning Of words

Fundamental

Basic

Essential

Principal

Main

major

MODERN

UP-TO-DATE

NEW

The masses

The public

The people

**way, method, procedure,
technique, process,
manner, mode, fashion**

Sentences

1. Hello, can I speak to you?
2. Ok, ill see you on Monday at 10:15.

though

1. I went to the game **even though** it was raining.
2. I like him very much, but **though** I hate his wife

Measurement

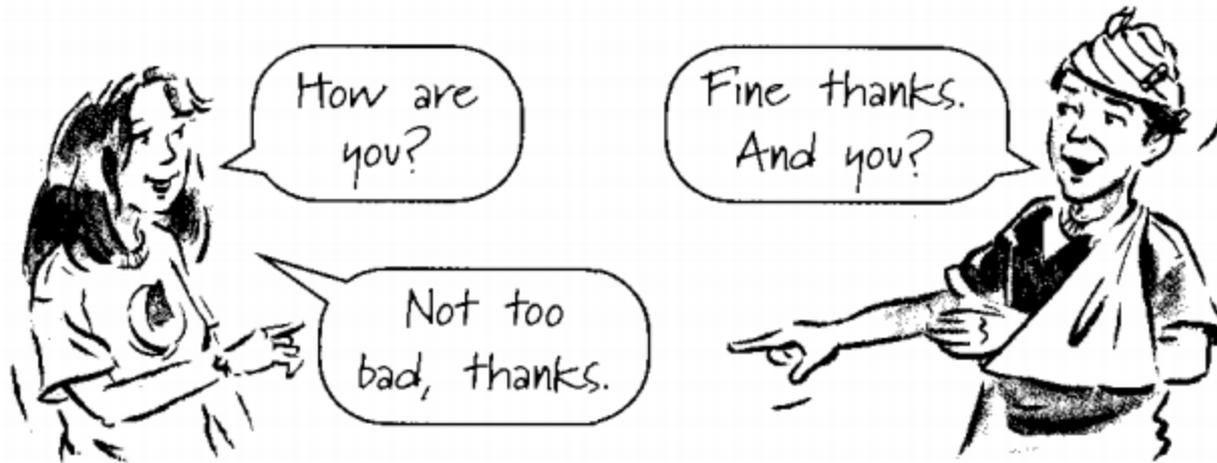
- What are the **measurement** of the kitchen?.

Sentences

Sentences are groups of words that make complete sense. When you give me a sentence I know you have told me or asked me something complete.

Sentences can be short . . .

- Susan lives there.
- Where are you going?



❑ Take the **series** we haven't enough time

invisible

If something is **invisible**, you cannot see it:

▶ *Wind is **invisible**.* OPPOSITE : **visible**

kind

1. ***What kind of** music do you like?*
2. *The shop sells ten different **kinds of** bread.*
3. *He looks kind of tired.*

- ▶ *Thank you for your **kindness**.*
- ▶ *You must treat strange people with more **kindness**.*

wood

- This table is made of very hard **wood**.
- Put some more **wood** on the fire.
- The table is made of **wood**.

mad

I think you're **mad** to go out in this snow.
Mina is **mad** about computer games.

Mentally adv

1. He is **mentally** ill.
2. He is **mentally** handicapped.

modest

- You are too **modest**!
 - Are these presents for me? I like **modest** presents.
 - A **modest** family.

 - Where can I **obtain** tickets for the **play**.
 - **Obtain**, means to get something.

 - In my **opinion**. She's wrong.
 - What's your **opinion** of his work?
 - He had strong **opinion** on everything.
1. *We're **having a party** this Saturday. Can you come?*
 2. *a birthday party*
 3. *He's a member of the Labour Party.*

- I had a free **period**, so I went to the **library**.
- Families with children can have a **reduction**.
- My mother was born on the **tenth** of December
- Today is the tenth of **April**.
- You're not part of the **team**. So you can't come.
- My parents are **both** doctor.
- Since you **don't want** to help me, I'm going to do it myself.
- Who wants some cake? **Me!**
- I think it **isn't** fair.

*The **division of** Germany after the Second World War.*

- My **left** hand **hurts**.
- Turn **left** at the traffic lights.
- Look, the box is **empty**.

Goodnight

Words that you say when you leave somebody in the evening or when somebody is going to bed.

Control noun

The driver **lost control** and the bus went into the river.

- *What do you want to **drink**?*
- *She was **drinking** a cup of tea.*
- *Would you like some wine?’ ‘No, thank you. I don't **drink**.’*

- *Would you like a drink?*
- *Can I **have a drink** of water?*
- *There was **lots** of food and drink at the party.*

- *Very bad weather with strong winds and rain.*
- *It was time to **go to bed**.*
- *The children are **in bed**.*

Very bad

- *That was a **serious** mistake.*
- *They had a **serious** accident.*
- *It's a very **serious** illness.*

Not funny

1. If you are **serious**, you are not joking or playing.
 2. *Are you **serious about** going to live in Spain?*
 3. *You look very **serious**. Is something wrong?*
- A period of time spent doing a particular activity:
*The first swimming **session** is at nine o'clock.*
1. *Pandas are **rare** animals.*
 2. *It's **rare to** see snow in April.*

crop

- *Rain is good for the **cro**ps.*

- Be careful when you **cro**ss the road.
- She sat down and **cro**ssed her legs.



- *He had an accident, but he didn't **do** any **dam**age to his car.*
1. *All my grandparents are **de**ad.*
 2. *This town is **de**ad: everywhere is closed after ten o'clock at night.*

- A great place to visit **in London** is the natural history **museum**.
- For me the best meal of the day is **breakfast**.
- Selma wants to see the photos. Can you show **them** to her?
- James is a good friend of **mine**. We lived next door to **each other** for ten years.
 1. *We've only seen the building from the outside.*
 2. the OPPOSITE OF OUTSIDE IS INSIDE.

Life : lives

- Do you believe there is **life** after death?
- Is there **life** after death?
- I don't believe **in life** after death.
- Is there **life** on other planets?
- He has lived here all his **life**.
- They were very happy throughout their married **life**.
- He lived in France all his **life**.
- She **began life** as a teacher.
- Young children are **full of life**.

- Would you like **a** drink?
- **A** dog has four legs.
- He's **a** teacher.
- She phones her mother three times **a** week.
- `Apple` begins with an **a**.
- happening or coming every month or once **a** month.

- **Look** at this picture.
- You should **look** both ways before you cross the road.
- You **look** tired.
- It **looks** as if it's going to rain.
- *a monthly magazine.* *I am paid monthly.*

1. My legs **ached** after the long walk.
2. **She's** got earache.
3. If you eat all those **sweets**, you'll get stomach ache.
4. **Miserable** weather makes you sad.
5. I waited in the rain for an hour, feeling cold, wet and **miserable**.
6. Mix yellow and blue paint **together** to make green.
7. Oil and water don't **mix**.
8. In my job, I **mix** with a lot of different people.
9. Don't **mix up** my papers.
10. Is their school mixed. *i.e* With boys and girls together.

- What you use when you **buy** or **sell** something.
- How much **money** did you spend?
- This jacket **cost** a lot of **money**.
- The film **made** a lot of **money**.

How much money do you have? Show me!

One of the twelve parts of a year:

- *December is the last month of the year.*
- *We went on holiday **last month**.*

The months of the year are: January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December.

- She was in hospital for a **month**.

- Not existing before:
- *Have you seen his **new** film? Have you seen his new wife?*
- *I bought a **new** pair of shoes yesterday.*
- *The teacher usually explains the **new** words to us.*
- *He's **new to** the job and still **needs** help.*

1. *Have you **heard** the news? Selma is getting married.*

2. *I've got some good news for you.*

break the news : to be the first person to tell somebody about something important: *Have you broken the news to your wife?*

- Choose a number between ten and one hundred.
- My **phone number** is
- I live at number. 47.
- A large **number of** our students come from Japan.
- There are a number of ways you can cook an egg.

- We have an **obligation** to do it.
- Fry the **onions** in oil.
- *This is our house.*

1. *We made **ourselves** some coffee.*
2. *We built the house **ourselves**.*
3. *We went on holiday by **ourselves**.*

- I tried to be **reasonable** even though I was very angry.
- I think 1000 D is a **reasonable** price.

1. These animals come out **at night**.
2. The baby cried **all night**.
3. She stayed at my house **last night**.
4. We went to a party **on Saturday night**.
5. He doesn't get home until 8 o'clock **at night**.
6. **Tonight** means the night or evening of today.

- *'Hot' is the opposite of 'cold'.*
- *She's very **organized** not **disorganized**.*

other

- Dina is Spanish, but the **other** students in my class are Japanese.
- I can only find one shoe. Have you seen the **other** one?
- I saw her on the **other** side of the road.
- John and Selma arrived at nine o'clock, but the **others** (= the **other** people) were late.
- I haven't told anybody **other** than you.
- I can't find my glasses. I know I put them somewhere or **other**.
- I saw your brother the **other** day.

- You can't **park** in this street.
- My car is **parked** opposite the bank.

- ▶ The sign says 'No Parking'.
- ▶ I can't find a **parking** space.

- ▶ *How many **rooms** are there in the new house?*
- ▶ *A **room** where you cook food.*
- ▶ *I fell and cut my **knee**.*

- *If you **subtract 6 from 9**, you get 3.*
- *The children are learning how to do **subtraction**.*

- She finally **succeeded** in getting a job.
- I tried to get a ticket for the **concert** but I didn't **succeed**.
- The class did the exercises and the teacher **corrected** them.
- Please **correct** me if I make a mistake.

1. ***When** did she arrive?*

2. *I don't know **when** his birthday is.*

3. *It was raining **when** we left school.*

4. *I saw her in May, **when** she was in London.*

5. *He came **when** I called him.*

- The telephone rang **while** I was having a shower.
- I listen to the radio **while** I'm eating my breakfast.

- ▶ *Whose car is this?*
- ▶ *That's the boy whose sister is a singer.*

- Time when people are not working because they want more money or are angry about something:
- *There are no trains today because the drivers are **on strike**.*

- ▶ He's very different from his public **image**.
- ▶ A lot of people have an **image of** London as cold and rainy.

- ▶ *Can you **imagine** life without electricity?*
- ▶ *I closed my eyes and **imagined** I was lying on a beach.*
- ▶ *I never said that, you're **imagining** things.*

- It was dark when we **reached** Paris.
- Have you **reached** the end of the book yet?

- ▶ *I was **listening to** the radio.*
- ▶ *Listen! I want to tell you something.*

I heard a **tap** at the door.

- Where do you **live**?
 - He still **lives** with his parents.
 - You can't **live** without water.
 - He **lived** to the age of 93.
 - They **live** a quiet life in the country.
 - Cows **live** on grass.
- ▶ *Would you like **rice** or potatoes with your chicken?*
- ▶ It's a favourite **resort** for **the rich** and famous.
- *They were laughing and joking together.*
 - *I didn't mean what I said – I was **only joking**.*
 - *The chair was hard and **uncomfortable**.*

- I was in **luck** – the shop had the book I wanted.
- Good **luck**! I'm sure you'll get the job.

1. *She is **lucky to be** **alive** after the accident.*
2. *My lucky number is 3.*
3. *I was late, but luckily they waited for me.*

- What's your favourite meal of the day?
- We **had** a nice **meal** in that restaurant.

▶ *These chairs are made of **plastic**.*

▶ *I don't buy **plastic** cups for my children.*

▶ to draw a line under a word or words. This sentence is underlined.

Or

1. *Is it blue **or** green?*
 2. *Are you coming **or** not?*
 3. *You can have soup, salad **or** sandwiches.*
 4. *She hasn't phoned **or** written for weeks.*
 5. *Go now, **or** you'll be late.*
- He works for an **organization** that helps old people.
 - She's busy with the **organization** of her daughter's wedding.
 - *Our teacher **has organized** a visit to the museum.*
 - There's too much **violence** on TV.

- Could you **shut** the door, please?
- The door **shut** behind me.
- The shops **shut** at 5.30.
- The factory **shut down** last year.
- **Shut up** and listen!
- It is more polite to say 'be quiet'.

- *The **quality of** her work is excellent.*
- *This furniture isn't very **good quality**.*
- *I only bought a small **quantity of** cheese.*

1. Their house is **at the top of the hill**.
2. Our new house is **spacious**.

size

- *My bedroom is **the same size as yours**.*
- *Have you got these shoes **in a bigger size**.*

Not important or serious

- ▶ *I've got a **slight** problem.*
- ▶ *a **slight** headache.*
- ▶ *I'm feeling **slightly** better today.*
 - *The house shakes when trains go past.*
 - *He was **shaking with** fear.*
 - *Shake the bottle before opening it.*
 - *An explosion shook the windows.*
 - **shake hands** : to hold somebody's hand and move it up and down when you meet them.
 - **shake your head** : to move your head from side to side to say 'no'

1. I've read this book **several** times.
2. **Several** letters arrived this morning.
3. If you need a pen, there are **several** on the table.

- *He gave me a birthday card **shaped like** a cat.*
- *a heart-shaped box of chocolates*

- ▶ *Today is a beautiful blue sky.*
- ▶ *There are no clouds in the sky.*
- ▶ The room was full of **smoke**.
- ▶ *He was smoking a cigar.*
- ▶ *Do you smoke?*
- ▶ *Her parents are both **heavy smokers** (= they smoke a lot).*

Visitor

1. *The old lady never has any **visitors**.*
 2. *Millions of **visitors** come to Rome every year.*
- This town has a good bus **service**.
 - The food was good but the **service** was very slow.
 - She left the company after ten years of **service**.
 - She takes her car to the garage for a **service** every six months.
 - We went to the evening **service**.
- ▶ *Her parents are very strict – she always has to be home before ten o'clock.*

weather

- ▶ **What 's the weather like** where you are?
 - ▶ We had bad weather last week.
 - *The shop assistant **weighed** the tomatoes.*
 - *'How much do you **weigh**?' 'I **weigh** 55 kilos.'*
1. Which way is **west**?
 2. They live in the **west** of England.
 3. I live in **west** London.
 4. The town is five miles **west** of here.

week

- ▶ I'm going on holiday **next week**.
- ▶ I play tennis **twice a week**.
- ▶ I saw him two **weeks** ago.
- ▶ I work during the **week** but not at weekends.
 - Any day except Saturday or Sunday: *I only work **on weekdays**.*

Who

- ***Who** is that girl?*
- *I don't know **who** did it.*
- *I like people **who** say what they think.*
- *The woman (**who**) I work for is very nice.*

can

- *She can't swim.*
- *We could see the sea from our hotel room.*
- The future tense of **can** is **will be able to**
- *You will be able to see it if you stand on this chair.*
- *She can speak three languages.*
- *Can you ski?*
- *It can be very cold in the mountains in winter.*
- *I can smell something burning.*
- *'What's that noise?' 'I can't hear anything.'*
- *You can go now.*
- *Can I have some more soup, please?*
- *The doctor says she can't go back to school yet.*
- *Can you tell me the time, please?*

in

- *He put his hand in the water*
- *She was lying **in bed**.*
- *There are 100 centimetres in a metre.*
- *My birthday is in May.*
- *He started school in 1987.*
- *I'll be **ready** in ten minutes.*
- *He was dressed in a suit.*
- *This room is **in a mess**.*
- *Sit in a circle.*
- *He's in the army.*
- *Write your name in capital letters.*
- *They were speaking **in French**.*

hungry

- Let's eat soon – I'm hungry!
- She is studying criminal law.
- Happening or coming every day or once a day:
- There are daily flights between London and Tokyo.
- a daily newspaper
- The museum is open daily from 9 a.m. to 5 p.m.

could

- ▶ The word for ‘can’ in the past:
 - *He could run very fast when he was young.*
 - *I could hear the birds singing.*
- ▶ a word that you use to ask something in a polite way:
 - *Could you open the door?*
 - *Could I have another drink, please?*
- ▶ a word that shows what is or may be possible:
 - *I don't know where Mum is. She could be in the kitchen.*
 - *It could rain tomorrow.*

*It was dark and I **couldn't** see anything.*

- I am so **sentimental**, I always cry at wedding.
- ▶ *Parents try to **protect** their children **from** danger.*
- ▶ *Wear a hat to **protect** your head **against** the sun.*
- The house is in a beautiful **setting** on top of a hill.

- *I saw a tall **man** with dark hair.*
- *All **men** are equal.*

1. *He wasn't very **pleased to** see me.*
2. *Are you **pleased with** your new watch?*

- *I phoned the hotel to ask if there were any rooms **available**.*
- *I'm sorry – the manager is not **available** this afternoon.*

allow

- *My parents allow me to stay out late at weekends.*
 - *Smoking is not allowed in most cinemas.*
 - *You're not allowed to park your car here.*
-
- You **allow somebody to do something**, but you **let somebody do something** (without 'to'):
 - *Her parents **let her stay up late** last night.*
 - *Smoking is not permitted in this building.*
-
1. Is everything **all right**?
 2. I was ill, but I'm **all right** now.
 3. 'Can you get me some apples?' '**All right.**'

wonderful

- ▶ *He plays several instruments and also writes music.*
- *The food is **wonderful**, and also very cheap.*

Very good, the SAME MEANING OF **fantastic**:

1. *What a wonderful present!*
2. *This food is wonderful.*

▶ In a normal speaking voice that other people can hear:

*I read the story **aloud** to my sister.*

never

- ▶ *She **never** works on Saturdays.*
- ▶ *I've **never** been to America.*
- ▶ *I will **never** forget you.*

no

- *'Do you want a drink?' '**No**, thank you.'*
 - *'He's Italian.' '**No** he isn't. He's French.'*
 - ***Oh no!** I've broken my watch!*
1. *Nobody in our class speaks Greek.*
 2. *There was nobody at home.*

Noisy, noisily

- *The children are very **noisy**.*
 - *The restaurant was too **noisy**.*
 - ▶ *He ate his dinner **noisily**.*
1. 'Who is **that** boy in the garden?' '**That**'s my brother.'
 2. She got married two years ago. At **that** time, she was a teacher.
- *A lion is an animal **that** lives in Africa.*
 - *The people (**that**) I met were very nice.*
 - *I'm reading the book (**that**) you gave me.*

That, those

a word that you use to join two parts of a sentence:

1. *Selma said (**that**) she was unhappy.*
2. *I'm sure (**that**) he will come.*
3. *I was so hungry (**that**) I ate all the food.*

- ▶ *I'm **going to the theatre** this evening.*
- ▶ *I'm thirsty. Can I have a drink of water, please?*

1. I don't know **those** boys.
2. Her grandfather was born in 1850. In **those** days, there were no cars.
3. Can I have **those**?

there

- *There is a man at the door.*
- *Is there a film on TV tonight?*
- *There aren't any shops in this village.*

- *Don't put the box there – put it here.*
- *Have you been to Bonn? I'm going there next week.*

- *Oh look, there's Kate.*

- **there you are** words that you say when you give something to somebody: *'There you are,' she said, giving me a cake.*

though

The word **though** sounds like **go**.

in spite of something SAME MEANING **although**:

- *I was very cold, though I was wearing my coat.*
- *Though she was in a hurry, she stopped to talk.*
- *I went to the party, **even though** I was tired.*

but: *I thought it was right, though I wasn't sure.*

1. *The house looks as though nobody lives there.*
2. *I'm so hungry – I feel as though I haven't eaten for days!*

try

1. I tried to remember her name but I couldn't.
2. I'm not sure if I can help you, but I'll try.
3. Have you ever tried Japanese food?
4. He was tried for murder.
5. I'll try and come early tomorrow.
6. I tried the jeans on but they were too small.
7. I can't open this door – will you have a try?

► **Unhappy:**

*The children were very **upset** when their dog died.*

► **ill:** *I've got an **upset** stomach. Sara has got a **stomach upset**.*

tomorrow

- ▶ Let's go swimming tomorrow.
- ▶ I'll see you tomorrow morning.
- ▶ We are going home **the day after tomorrow**.

this

1. *Come and look at **this** photo.*
2. ***This** is my sister.*
3. ***These** boots are really comfortable.*
4. *How much does **this** cost?*
5. *I am on holiday **this** week.*
6. *What are you doing **this evening** (= today in the evening)?*

- *We were pleased when she invited **us** to dinner.
Come with **us**.*

- *The students grow **vegetables** such as cabbages, beans and carrots.*

1. *When you go to London you must **visit** the Science Museum.*
2. *She **visited** me in hospital.*
3. *This is my first **visit to** New York.*
4. *He promised to **pay us a visit** next year.*

What is the best way to learn a language?

He smiled in a friendly way.

*Can you tell me **the way to** the station, please?*

*I **lost** my **way** and I had to look at the map.*

*We stopped for a meal **on the way to** Bristol.*

*Here's the museum. Where's **the way in**?*

*I can't find **the way out**.*

Come this way.

*She was looking **the other way**.*

*Is this picture **the right way up**?*

*Those two words are **the wrong way round**.*

by the way words that you say when you are going to talk about something different:

By the way, I had a letter from Ann yesterday.

Have to

1. *I **have to** go to school on Saturday mornings.*
2. *We don't **have to** get up early tomorrow.*
3. ***Have** we got to pay for this now?*
4. *We **had to** do lots of **boring** exercises.*

The coldest part of the year:

- *It often snows **in winter**, but not in Guelma.*

worry

1. I always worry when Selma doesn't come home at the usual time.
2. **Don't worry** if you don't know the answer.
3. There's nothing to worry about.

habit

- Smoking is a **bad habit**.
- She's got a **habit of** phoning me when I'm in bed.

her

1. *Tell Dina that I'll see **her** tonight.*
2. *I wrote to **her** yesterday.*
3. *I saw **her** last night.*

history

1. *It was an important moment in **history**.*
2. ***History** is my favourite subject.*

hobby

- *My **hobbies** are reading and swimming.*

hot

1. *I'm **hot**. Can you open the window?*
 2. *It's **hot** today, isn't it?*
 3. *I need **hot** water.*
- *How many rooms are there in your **house**?*
 - *We're having dinner at **Jane's house** tonight.*

how

- *How does this machine work?*
- *She told me **how to** get to the station.*
- *Do you know how to spell 'essential'?*
- *'**How is** your sister?' 'She's very well, thank you.'*
- *'What is your sister like?' 'She's tall with brown hair.'*
- *How was the film?*
- ***How old** are you?*
- ***How many** brothers and sisters have you got?*
- ***How much** does this cost?*
- ***How long** have you lived here?*
- ***how are you?** do you feel well?: 'How are you?'*
'Fine, thanks.'

Ice cream

- *Do you like **ice cream**?*
- *Two chocolate **ice creams**, please.*

unless

if not; except if:

1. *You will be late **unless** you leave now.*
2. ***Unless** you work harder you'll fail the exam.*

unlike

unlike preposition, different from:

1. *She is **unlike** anyone I've ever met.*

OPPOSITE **like**

idea

- *It was a **good idea** to give Martin a pen for his birthday.*
- *I've **got an idea**. Let's have a party!*
- *I've **got no idea** (= I do not know) where she is.*

not married; without a husband or wife

THE SAME MEANING OF : **single**

not with everything in the right place

- *Your room is always so untidy!*
- ▶ **untidiness** noun (no plural): *I hate untidiness!*

illness

- *I missed a lot of school because of **illness** last year.*
- *She **died** after a long **illness**.*

illustration

- *This dictionary has a lot of **illustrations**.*

imaginary

not real; only in your mind:

- *The film is about an **imaginary** country.*

important

- *It is **important to** sleep well the night before an exam.*
- *I think that happiness is more **important** than money.*
- *The prime minister is a very **important** person.*

*The teacher spoke to each student **individually**.*

- ▶ *She **introduced** me **to** her brother.*
- ▶ *He **introduced** himself **to** me (= told me his name).*

informal

- *I wear **informal** clothes, like jeans and T-shirts, at weekends.*
- *We have discussed the matter **informally**.*

- ▶ *Can you give me some **information about** trains to London?*

- ▶ *an international football match, an international flight*
- ▶ *an internationally famous musician*

kiss

- ▶ *She **kissed** me on the cheek.*
- ▶ *They **kissed**, and then they left.*
- ▶ *My baby, Give me a **kiss**!*

knock

- *I heard a **knock at** the door.*
- *I heard a **rap** on the door.*

know

- *I don't know her name.*
- *He **knows** a lot **about** cars.*
- *Do you **know how to** use this machine?*
- *Did you **know that** he's going to live abroad?*

- *I have known Selma for four years.*
- *I know Guelma quite well.*
- *I liked him when I **got to know him** (= started to know him).*
- *Well, you know, it's hard to explain.*

lake

- *We went swimming in the lake.*

large

- *They live in a **large** house.*
- *She has a **large** family.*
- *Have you got this shirt in a **large** size?*
- *Have you got as this in a **large** size?*

insult

- *She **insulted** my brother by saying he was fat.*

Insult : noun

- *The boys shouted **insults** at each other.*

laugh

1. *His jokes always make me **laugh**.*
2. *The children **laughed** at the clown.*
3. *They all **laughed** at me when I said I was afraid of dogs.*

murder

to kill somebody deliberately:

- *She was murdered with a knife.*
- ▶ **murderer** *noun*: *The police **have caught** the murderer.*

leaf

- *Leaves fall from the trees in autumn.*

believe

to feel sure that something is true; to feel sure that what somebody says is true:

- *Long ago, people **believed that** the earth was flat.*
- *She says she didn't take the money. Do you believe her?*

to think that something is true or possible, although you are not certain: *'Does Mick still work here?' 'I **believe so.**'*
believe in somebody or something to feel sure that somebody or something exists: *Do you believe in ghosts?*

Left

- *I've broken my **left** arm.*
- ***Turn left** at the church.*

correct

1. *What is the correct time, please?*
2. *All your answers were correct.*

OPPOSITE incorrect

▶ **correctly** *adverb*:

- *Have I spelt your name correctly?*

OPPOSITE incorrectly

legal

▶ *In many parts of the US it is **legal** to carry a **gun**.*

OPPOSITE : **illegal** or **against the law**

▶ *They are not legally married.*

less

1. *A poor person has **less** money than a rich person.*

2. *The doctor advised him to drink **less** beer.*

lesson

1. *We have a French **lesson** after lunch.*
2. *She gives English **lessons**.*
3. *I'm **taking** driving **lessons**.*

lift

1. I can't *lift* this box. It's too heavy.
2. *Lift* your arm *up*.

all

- She's eaten **all** the bread. Thank you **all**.
- It rained **all** day.
- **All** cats are animals but not **all** animals are cats.
- I invited thirty people to the party, but not **all of** them came.
- Are you **all** listening?
- All I've eaten today is one banana.
- I didn't enjoy it **at all**.

light

- *Strong **sunlight** is bad for the eyes.*
 - *The **light** was not very good so it was difficult to read.*
 - *Turn the **lights** off before you go to bed.*
 - *It's getting dark. Shall I switch the **light** on?*
-
- ▶ Do you have a **light**?
 - ▶ *There's a **strong likeness** between John and his brother.*

literature

- ▶ *He is studying English **literature**.*

air

- *Please open a window — I need some **fresh air**.*
- *He threw the ball up **into the air**.*
- *It's more expensive to travel **by air** than by train.*
- *This radio station is on the **air** 24 hours a day.*

little

1. I did very **little** today.
2. We have very **little** money.
3. I've got some ice cream. Would you like a **little**?
4. I speak a **little** French.
5. **Little by little** she started to feel better.

Adv :

- ▶ *I'm tired – I slept very **little** last night.*

logical

- ▶ *There is only one **logical** conclusion.*

Love : noun

1. *Their **love** for each other was very strong.*
2. *Who was your first **love**?*
3. *The score is 15-**love**.*
4. *He says he is in **love** with her and they are going to get married.*
5. *He fell in **love** with Anna the first time they met.*
6. *See you soon. **Love**, Selma.*

Love : verb

1. *I **love** him very much.*
2. *She **loves** her parents.*
3. *I **love** speaking English.*
4. *I **would love to** go to America.*

mathematics

Maths is my favourite subject.

▶ **mathematical**, *adjective*:

- *a mathematical problem.*
- *I've many mathematical problems.*

stupid

- *Don't be so stupid!*
 - *What a stupid question!*
 - ▶ *There are no limits to his stupidity!*
 - ▶ *I stupidly forgot to close the door.*
-
1. *I wish you **success** with your studies.*
 2. *The film 'The Matrix' was a great **success**.*

such

1. *He wears such strange clothes.*
2. *It was **such** a nice day that we decided to go to the beach.*
3. *'Can I speak to Mrs Djamel?' 'I'm sorry. There's **no such** person here.'*
4. *Sweet foods such as chocolate can make you fat.*

Off, adj

not fresh enough to eat or drink:

- *The milk's off.*

off

- ▶ away from a place; at a distance in space or time:

My birthday is not far off.

I must be off soon (= leave).

- ▶ down or away from something:

He fell off the roof.

We got off the bus.

The thief ran off.

- ▶ used for talking about removing something:

If you're hot, take your coat off.

Can you clean that paint off the carpet? OPPOSITE **on**

- ▶ not connected; not working:

Make sure the lights are off before you go. OPPOSITE **on**

- ▶ not at work or school: *I had the day off yesterday.*

- ▶ joined to something and leading from it: *The bathroom is off the bedroom.*

Sudden, of

► *His death was very **sudden**.*

1. *What's the name **of** this mountain?*
2. *a litre **of** water*
3. *the fourth **of** July*
4. *a piece **of** wood*
5. *a cup **of** tea*
6. *Is this shirt made **of** cotton?*

used for giving your opinion about somebody's behaviour:

- *That's very kind **of** you.*

used for showing that somebody or something is part of a group:

1. ***One of** the girls*
2. ***Some of** his friends*

suggestion

- *I don't know what to buy Selma for her birthday. Have you got any **suggestions**?*
 - *May I **make a suggestion**?*
1. *The **sun** is shining.*
 2. *We sat **in the sun** all morning.*
- ▶ *I am going to Spain **in the summer**.*
- *The **summer holidays***

Sunny

- *a sunny day*
- *Tomorrow will be warm and sunny.*

blackboard

a dark board that a teacher writes on with a white substance (called **chalk**):

- *Look at the blackboard.*

surprise

- ▶ *I arrived early to **surprise** her.*

bitter

angry and sad about something that has happened:

- *He felt very **bitter about** losing his job.*

food has a sharp unpleasant taste:

- *The coffee was bitter.*

very cold:

- *a bitter wind*

- ▶ *The strike caused great bitterness.*

switch

to change to something different:

*I **switched to** another seat because I couldn't see the film.*

- 1. I switched the TV off.*
- 2. Don't forget to switch off the lights!*
- 3. Switch the radio on.*

table

- *There is a **table of** irregular verbs at the back of this dictionary.*

admire

- *I really **admire** you **for** doing such a difficult job.*
 - ▶ *I have great admiration for her work.*

ago

1. *His wife died five years **ago**.*
2. *I learned to drive a long time **ago**.*
3. *Long **ago** there were no cars or aeroplanes.*

talk

1. *Dave and I **had a long talk about** the problem.*
2. *The two countries are **holding talks** to try and end the war.*
3. *Professor Wilson **gave** an interesting **talk on** Chinese art.*

tall

1. *It is a tall tree.*
 2. *Richard is taller than his brother.*
 3. *How tall are you?*
 4. *She's 1.62 metres tall.*
- *What is the best **method of** cooking beef?*

I am going to go

1. *I phoned and said I was busy.*
 2. *I'll (= I will) see you tomorrow.*
 3. *I'm not going to fall, **am I?***
- *I've just bought a car and, **as a consequence**, I've got no money.*
1. *I'm considering applying for another job.*
 2. *We must consider what to do next.*
 3. *I consider her to be a good teacher.*
 4. *I can't move to Australia! I have to consider my family.*

might

used as the form of 'may' when you repeat later what somebody has said:

- *He said he might be late (= his words were 'I may be late'), but he was early.*

a word that shows what will perhaps happen or what is possible:

- *Don't run because you might fall.*
- *'Where's Anne?' 'I don't know – she might be in the kitchen.'*

a word that you use to ask something in a very polite way:

Might I say something?

mood

The way that you feel at a particular time:

1. *Dad is **in a bad mood** because he's lost his glasses.*
 2. *Our teacher was **in a very good mood** today.*
 3. *I'm not **in the mood** for a party.*
- *When was the first **landing** on the moon?*

spoon

- *I need a knife, fork and spoon.*
1. *'What colour are your new shoes?' 'Black.'*
 2. *The leaves change colour in autumn.*

come

1. **Come here, please.**
2. *The dog came when I called him.*
3. *I'm sorry, but I can't **come to** your party.*
4. *If you go along that road, you will **come to** the river.*
5. *A letter came for you this morning.*
6. *Do you want to **come with** me?*
7. *June **comes after** May.*
8. *How did this situation come about?*
9. *I came across these old photos yesterday.*
10. *What time will you be coming back?*

concentration

- *You need total **concentration** for this type of work.*
- *The smoke made me **cough**.*
- *He was killed **in a car crash**.*
- *I heard a **crash** as the tree fell.*

fight

1. *Our grandfather fought in the war.*
2. *My brothers are always fighting.*
3. *He **fought against** the illness for two years.*
4. *The workers are **fighting for** better pay.*
5. *It's not worth **fighting about** money.*

first¹ *adjective*

- *January is the **first** month of the year.*
- *You've won **first** prize!*

please

1. *What's the time, please?*
2. *Two cups of coffee, please.*
3. *'Would you like a cake?' 'Yes, please.'*

suffer

1. *She **suffers from** bad headaches.*
 2. *It's not right for children to suffer.*
- *I need to **do** some **revision for** the History exam.*

revolt

to fight against the people in control:

- *The army is **revolting against** the government.*
- ▶ **revolt** *noun*:
- *The army quickly stopped the revolt.*

suggest

1. *I **suggest that** you stay here tonight.*
 2. *Simon suggested going for a walk.*
 3. *What do you suggest?*
- *Until Jane went to school, she had little contact with other children.*
 - *Are you still **in contact** with the people you met on holiday?*
 - *Doctors **come into contact with** (= meet) a lot of people.*
- Verb: If you see this man, please **contact** the police.*

anger

- *She was shaking with anger.*
1. *He gave a cry of pain.*
 2. *We heard her cries and ran to help.*
- *The baby cries a lot.*
 - *'Help!' he cried.*
 - *She **cried out** in pain.*
1. *There are **daily** flights between London and Tokyo.*
 2. *a **daily** newspaper*
 3. *The museum is open **daily** from 9 **a.m.** to 5 **p.m.***

annoyed

- *I was annoyed when he forgot to phone me.*
- *My dad is **annoyed with** me.*
- *It's annoying when people don't listen to you.*
- *We **had** an interesting **discussion about** politics.*

as

1. Just *as* I was leaving the house, the phone rang.
2. Paul is *as* tall *as* his father.
3. I haven't got *as* many clothes *as* you have.
4. I'd like it done ***as soon as possible***.
5. She works *as* a secretary for a big company.
6. I used my shoe *as* a hammer.
7. Please do *as* I tell you!

because:

- *As* she was ill, she didn't go to school.

ask

1. *I asked him what the time was.*
2. *'What's your name?' she asked.*
3. *Liz asked the teacher a question.*
4. *I **asked** Sara **to** drive me to the station.*
5. *I **asked** my teacher **if** I could go home.*
6. *I asked if I could go home early.*
7. *Mark has **asked** me **to** a party on Saturday.*
8. *Phone this number and ask for Mrs Green.*
9. *He asked for a new bike for his birthday.*

best

1. *I work **best** in the morning.*
2. *Which picture do you like **best**?*

better *adj*

- *This book is **better than** that one.*
- *I was ill yesterday, but I **feel better** now.*

best *adj* (good, better, best)

better than all others:

1. *This is the **best** ice cream I have ever eaten!*
2. *Tom is my **best friend**.*
3. *Jo's the **best** player on the team.*

OPPOSITE **worst**

better

better ² *adverb*

1. *You speak French **better than** I do.*
 2. *I'm better off now that I've got a new job.*
 3. *You look ill – you'd be better off in bed.*
 4. *You'd better go now if you want to catch the train.*
- *My birthday is on May **second**.*
 - *a birthday present.*
 - *Happy Birthday!*

what

1) a word that you use when you ask about somebody or something: *What's your name?*

- *What are you reading?*
- *What time is it?*
- *What kind of music do you like?*

2) the thing that: *I don't know what this word means.*

- *Tell me what to do.*

3) a word that you use to show surprise or other strong feelings:

- *What a terrible day!*
- *What beautiful flowers!*

what about ...? words that you use when you suggest something SAME MEANING **how about...?**: *What about going to the cinema tonight?*

what ... for? for what purpose or reason?: *What did you say that for?*
What's this machine for?

what is ... like? words that you use when you want to know more about somebody or something: *'What's her brother like?' 'He's very nice.'*

what's on? words that you use when you want to know what television programmes or films are being shown: *What's on TV tonight?*

what's up? what is wrong? SAME MEANING **what's the matter?:** *You look sad. What's up?*

wet

1. *This towel is wet – can I have a dry one?*
2. *There was a strong smell of wet paint.*
3. *a wet day*

wink

▶ **wink** *verb*:

to close and open one eye quickly as a friendly or secret sign to somebody:

- *She winked at me.*

▶ **wink** *noun*:

- *She gave me a wink.*

until

Up to a certain time or event:

1. *The shop is open **until** 6.30.*
2. *Stay in bed **until** you feel better.*
3. *I can't come **until** tomorrow.*
4. Until the next day.
5. From morning until night.
6. It won't be ready until tomorrow.
7. Don't start until I come.

unusual

- *It's unusual to see a cat without a tail.*
- *What an unusual name!*
- ▶ **unusually** *adverb:*

It was an unusually hot summer.

hat

- *She's wearing a hat.*

ride

1. *I'm learning to ride (= a horse).*
2. *Don't ride your bike on the grass!*

problem

- *She has a lot of problems. Her husband is ill and her son is in prison.*
- *There is a problem with my telephone – it doesn't work.*
- *I can't **solve** this **problem**.*

hard

- *These apples are very hard.*
- *I couldn't sleep because the bed was too hard.*

difficult to do or understand:

- *The exam was very hard.*
- *hard work*

full of problems:

- *He's had **a hard life**.*

not kind or gentle:

- *She is very **hard on** her children.*

happen

- *How did the accident happen?*
- *Did you hear what **happened to** me yesterday?*

revolution

a fight by people against their government in order to put a new government in its place:

- *The French **Revolution** was in 1789.*

a big change in the way of doing things:

- *the **Industrial Revolution***

WOW

- ***Wow!** What a lovely car!*
- *Her love for him had turned to **hate**.*

reason

- *The **reason** I didn't come to the party was that I was ill.*
- *Is there any **reason why** you were late?*
- *She gave no **reasons for** her decision.*

Work, noun

1. *I'm looking for work.*
2. *What time do you **start work**?*
3. *How long have you been **out of work** (= without a job)?*
4. *I'm looking for work or you have to say **a job** or **jobs**: I'm looking for a job.*
5. *I phoned him **at work**.*
6. *I'm not **going to work** today.*
7. *Digging the garden is **hard work**.*
8. *She's so lazy – she never **does any work**.*
9. *The group are **at work on** (= making) a new album.*
10. *The teacher marked our work.*
11. *The artist only sells her work to friends.*

word

- ❑ *What's the Italian **word** for 'dog'?*
- ❑ *Do you know the **words** of this song?*

something that you say:

- *Can I **have a word with** you?*
- *Don't **say a word** about this to anybody.*

a promise:

*She **gave** me her **word** that she wouldn't tell anyone.*

*Claire said she would come, and she **kept** her **word** (= did what she had promised).*

in other words saying the same thing in a different way:

*Joe doesn't like hard work – **in other words**, he's lazy!*

take somebody's word for it to believe what somebody says

word for word using exactly the same words: *Ian repeated word for word what you told him.*

wherever

at, in or to any place:

- *Sit wherever you like.*

a way of saying 'where' more strongly:

- *Wherever did I put my keys?*

1. *He wore a **white** shirt and a blue tie.*

2. *I'd like a **white** coffee.*

- ***Whoever** broke the glass must pay for it.*

when

at what time:

- ***When** did she arrive?*
- *I don't know **when** his birthday is.*

at the time that:

- *It was raining **when** we left school.*
- *I saw her in May, **when** she was in London.*
- *He came **when** I called him.*

half

1. *Half of six is three.*
2. *I lived in that flat for two and a half years.*
3. *The journey takes an hour and a half.*
4. *I've been waiting more than **half an hour**.*
5. *She gave me **half of** her apple.*
6. *Half this money is yours.*

in half so that there are two equal parts:

- *Cut the cake in half.*

group

- *A **group of** people were standing outside the shop.*

build

1. *He built a wall in front of the house.*
2. *The bridge is **built of** stone.*

business

- *I want to **go into business** when I leave school.*
- ***Business** is not very good this year.*
- *The manager will be away **on business** next week.*

boat

- *We travelled **by boat**.*

things that you buy or sell:

- *That shop sells electrical **goods**.*

Cows and sheep eat **grass**:

- *Don't walk on the **grass**.*
- *My brother has **green** eyes.*

bite

- *That dog bit my leg!*

If an insect or snake **bites** you, it hurts you by pushing a small sharp part into your skin:

- *I've been bitten by mosquitoes.*

a piece of food that you can put in your mouth:

*He took a **bite of** his sandwich.*

Blood : the red liquid inside your body.

with a lot of killing: *It was a bloody war.*

snow

1. *It often snows in Scotland in winter.*
2. *It's snowing!*

sister

- *I've got two **sisters** and one brother.*
- *Jane and Anne are **sisters**. They are **in a difficult situation** at the moment.*

Tired and ready to sleep:

- *I felt **sleepy** after that big meal.*
- *a **sleepy** little village.*

1. *This dress is **too small** for me.*
2. *My house is **smaller than** yours.*
3. *They have two small children.*

for

- **For or since?**

We use **for** to say how long something has continued, for example in **hours, days** or **years**:

- *She has been ill **for** three days.*
- *I've lived in this house **for** ten months.*
- *We have been married **for** ten years.*

since

- *He has been ill since Sunday.*
- *I haven't seen him since 1987.*
- *She has lived here since she was a child.*
- *George went to Canada in 1974 and he has lived there **ever since** (= in all the time from then until now).*
- *Andy left three years ago and we haven't seen him since.*
- *I have been here **since** six o'clock.* • *She has been alone **since** her husband died.* • *We have been married **since** 1996.*
- *Since it's your birthday, I'll buy you a drink.*
- *They got married five years ago and have since had three children.*

die

- *People, animals and plants **die** if they don't have water.*
- *She **died of** cancer.*
- *It's so hot! I'm **dying** for a drink.*
- *My brother is **dying** to meet you.*

- ✓ *Who **has responsibility for** the new students?*
- ✓ *The dog is my brother's **responsibility**.*

different

- *These two shoes are different sizes!*
- *They sell 30 different sorts of ice cream.*

▶ **differently** *adverb*:

He's very quiet at home but he behaves differently at school.

1. *a difficult problem*
2. *The exam was very difficult.*
3. *It's difficult to learn a new language.*
4. *She's a very difficult child.*

difficulty

- *I have difficulty understanding German.*
- *My grandfather walks **with difficulty** now.*

near

1. *Let's walk to my house. It's quite **near**.*
2. *Where's the **nearest** hospital?*
3. *My parents live quite **near**.*
4. *I don't need a car because I live **near** the city centre.*

dirty

- *Your hands are **dirty** – go and wash them!*
- *I **discussed** the problem with my parents.*

do

1. *Do you want an apple?*
2. *I like football but I don't (= do not) like tennis.*
3. *She doesn't speak English, but I do (= I speak English).*
4. *'I like football.'* ***So do I.***
5. *'I don't speak Chinese.'* ***Neither do I.***
6. *You do look nice!*

between

1. *The letter B comes between A and C.*
2. *I sat between Sylvie and Bruno.*
3. *I see her most weekends but not very often **in between.***
4. *The meal will cost between £20 and £25.*
5. *I'll meet you between 4 and 4.30.*
6. *What is the **difference between** 'some' and 'any'?*

bit

a small piece or amount of something:

1. *Would you like a **bit of** cake?*
2. *Some **bits of** the film were very funny.*

a little:

- *You look a bit tired.*

a short time:

- *Let's wait a bit.*

ready

1. *I'll be **ready to** leave in five minutes.*
2. *I must go and **get ready** to go out.*
3. *Dinner will be ready soon.*
4. *He's always **ready to** help.*

simple

- *This dictionary is written in **simple** English.*
- *'How do you open this?' 'I'll show you – it's **simple**.'*
- *She wore a **simple** black dress.*
- *a **simple** meal.*

computer

1. *All the work is done **by computer**.*
 2. *He spends a lot of time **on the computer**, sending emails.*
 3. *a **computer program** (= information that tells a computer what to do)*
 4. *They play **computer games** every evening.*
- *It's only a copy.*
 - *The secretary **made two copies** of the letter.*
 - *Two million copies of this newspaper are sold every day.*

cough

- *I've got a bad **cough**.*
- *He gave a little **cough** before he started to speak.*

*Do you live in the town or **in the country**?*

The dentist's (*no plural*) the place where a dentist works:
I have to go to the dentist's today.

brother

- *My younger brother is called Ramzi.*
 - *Gavin and Dim are brothers.*
 - *Have you got any **brothers and sisters**?*
-
1. *Try to **keep calm** – there's no danger.*
 2. *a calm sea*
 3. *calm weather*
- ▶ *He spoke calmly about the accident.*
-
- *She travels to work **by car**.*

blame

- *The other driver **blamed** me **for** the accident.*
 - *The police found a body in the river.*
1. *a brief telephone call*
 2. *Please be brief.*
 3. *Here is the news in brief (= words said on a radio or television programme).*
- ▶ *He had spoken to Emma only briefly.*
- *a broken window*
 - *'What's the time?' 'I don't know – my watch is broken.'*
 - *The TV is broken.*

satisfaction

- *She finished painting the picture and looked at it **with satisfaction**.*

same

1. *Selma and I like the same kind of music.*
 2. *I've lived in the same town all my life.*
 3. *He went to the same school **as** me.*
- You **say** 'please' when you ask for something.
 - 'This is my room,' he **said**.
 - She **said that** she was cold.

period

1. *This is a difficult **period** for him.*
2. *What **period** of history are you studying?*
3. *We have five **periods** of German a week.*

admit

1. *He admitted stealing the money.*
2. *I admit that I made a mistake.*
3. *This ticket admits one person to the museum.*

else

1. *What else would you like?*
 2. *Is anyone else coming to the party?*
- *This cafe's full, let's go somewhere else.*
 - *It's not mine – it must be somebody else's.*
 - *There was nothing else to eat so we had eggs again.*

reduce

1. *I bought this shirt because the price was reduced from £20 to £12.*
2. *Reduce speed now* (= words on a road sign).
 - *Where's Andy? I can't see **him**.*
 - *I spoke to **him** yesterday.*

stop

1. *The train stopped at every station.*
 2. *The clock has stopped.*
 3. *I stopped to post a letter.*
 4. *Stop making that noise!*
 5. *Ring the bell to stop the bus.*
 6. *My dad stopped me from going out.*
- *I must leave. It's late.*
 - *We left the house at eight.*
 - *Gold is expensive.*
 - *She's nice. Isn't she?*

heat

hot weather:

- *I love the heat.*

SO

1. *This bag is **so** heavy **that** I can't carry it.*
 2. *I'm so tired I can't keep my eyes open.*
 3. *Why are you **so** late?*
- *The police are still trying to **solve** the crime.*

hear

- *Can you **hear** that noise?*
- *I heard somebody laughing in the next room.*

When you **listen to** something, you are trying to hear it:

- *I **listen to** the radio every morning.*
- *Have you heard the news?*
- *Have you heard from your sister?*
- *Who is he? I've never heard of him.*

will not hear of something will not agree to something:

- *My father wouldn't hear of me paying for the meal.*

party

1. We're **having a party** this Saturday. Can you come?
 2. a birthday party
- They have a **son** and two **daughters**.
 - The President **made a speech**.
 - He has problems with his **speech**.

far

1. *My house isn't **far from** the station.*
2. *It's too far to drive in one day.*
3. *I walked much further than you.*
4. *It's a long way to walk – let's take the bus.*
5. *He's far taller than his brother.*
6. *That's **far too** expensive.*
7. *I read as far as the second chapter.*

family

1. *How many people are there in your **family**?*
2. *My **family** have all got red hair.*
3. *His **family** lives on a farm.*

dew

small drops of water that form on plants and grass in the night:

- *In the morning, the grass was wet with dew.*

finish

1. *I **finish** work at half past five.*
2. *Hurry up and **finish** your dinner!*
3. *Have you **finished** cleaning your room?*
4. *School **finishes** at four o'clock.*
5. *He **finished** off the bread.*
6. *Have you **finished** with that book?*

father

- *Where do your mother and father live?*

fault

1. *It's her **fault that** we are late.*
 2. *It's my **fault for** being careless.*
 3. *There is a serious **fault** in the machine.*
- *The baby's crying – I'll go and **feed** her.*

face

1. *Have you washed your face?*
2. *She had a smile on her face.*
3. **face to face**
4. *I wanted to say that I was sorry to her face, not on the phone.*

Look at this

- *Have you washed your face?*
- Do you wash your face?

experience

1. *She has four years' teaching experience.*
2. *Do you have much **experience of** working with children?*
3. *He wrote a book about his **experiences** in Africa.*

exchange

- *I would like to **exchange** this skirt **for** a bigger size.*
 - *We **exchanged** phone numbers.*
1. *Does life **exist** on other planets?*
 2. *That word **does not exist**.*

exemple

- *This dictionary gives many **examples of** how words are used in sentences.*
- *Do you speak any other languages, **for example** French or German?*
- The short way of writing '**for example**' is **e.g.**

examine

1. *The doctor **examined** her but could find nothing wrong.*
2. *Have the car **examined** by an expert before you buy it.*
3. *You will be **examined on** everything you have learnt this year.*

everything

1. Sam lost *everything* in the fire.
 2. *Everything* in that shop is very expensive.
- It was **evident that** the damage was very serious.
 - We need to know the exact time the **incident** occurred.
 - We've got an English exam next week.
 - 'Did you pass all your exams?' 'No, I failed History. I've got to take it again in December.'

energy

1. Children are usually **full of energy**.
2. It is important to try to **save energy**.

enjoy

- I **enjoy** playing football.
- Did you **enjoy** your dinner?
- I really **enjoyed** myself at the party.

evening

1. What are you doing **this evening**?
2. Most people watch television **in the evening**.
3. John came on Monday evening.

end

1. *What time does the film end?*
 2. *The road ends here.*
 3. *Most adverbs in English **end in** '-ly'.*
 4. *We **ended** our holiday **with** a few days on the beach.*
- *If she continues to steal, she'll end up in prison.*
 - *I ended up doing all the work myself.*

earth

- *The moon travels round the earth.*
- *They live in one of the hottest places **on earth**.*

how, who, what, where, etc. on earth? (*informal*) used in questions when you are very surprised

- *What on earth are you doing?*
- *Where on earth is Paul? He's two hours late!*

early

1. *Come in the early afternoon.*
2. *She was in her early twenties (= aged between 20 and about 23 or 24).*
3. *I have to **get up early** tomorrow.*
4. *The train arrived ten minutes early.*
5. *You're early! It's only half past six.*
6. *I was **early for** the lesson.*
7. *I'm really tired, I think I'll have an early night.*

ear

- *Elephants have big **ears**.*
- *She has had a lot of **boyfriends**.*

middle

- *A peach has a stone **in the middle**.*
- *The phone rang **in the middle of** the night.*
- *I can't speak to you now – I'm in the middle of cooking dinner.*

▶ **middle**, *adjective*:

*There are three houses and ours **is the middle one**.*

positive

1. *It's important to stay positive.*
2. *The teacher was very **positive about** my work.*
3. *Are you **positive that** you closed the door?*

possible

- *Is it possible to get to Guelma by train?*
 - *I'll phone you **as soon as possible**.*
 - *'Will you be free tomorrow?' 'Possibly.'*
 - *I'll come as soon as I possibly can.*
- ▶ *We met **at midday**.*

position

- *Can you show me the **position of** your village on the map?*
- *Is everyone **in position** (= in the right place)?*
- *She was still sitting **in** the same **position** when I came back.*
- *Keep the box in an upright position.*
- *He's **in** a difficult **position** – he hasn't got enough money to finish his studies.*
- *There have been over a hundred applications for the **position of** Sales Manager.*

politics

1. *Are you interested in **politics**?*
2. *She studied **Politics** at university.*

- liked by a lot of people:

Football is a popular sport in Britain.

- *We must stop the **pollution of** our beaches.*
- **Rain** : the water that falls from the sky.

1. *It's **raining**.*
2. *It **rained** all day.*

nearly

- I'm *nearly* 16 – it's my birthday next week.
- She was so ill that she *nearly* died.
- The book wasn't *nearly* as good as the film.

both

- Hold it in both hands.
- Both her brothers are doctors.
- **Both of us** like dancing.
- We both like dancing.
- **both ... and not only ... but also:** She is both rich and intelligent.

my

- *Where is **my** watch?*
- *These are **my** books, not yours.*
- *I've hurt **my** arm.*

- a part of the government that controls one special thing:
*The **Ministry of Defence**.*

Passion

very strong feeling, usually of **love**, but sometimes of **anger** or **hate**.

much

1. *I don't like him very much.*
2. *Your flat is much bigger than mine.*
3. *'Do you like it?' 'No, **not much.**'*

pear : a fruit that is green or yellow on the outside and white on the inside.

pinch

- *Don't **pinch** me – it hurts!*

morning

- *I went swimming **this morning**.*
 - *I'm going to London **tomorrow morning**.*
 - *The letter arrived **on Tuesday morning**.*
 - *I felt ill **all morning**.*
 - *I start work at nine o'clock **in the morning**.*
- ▶ **in the morning** tomorrow during the morning:
I'll see you in the morning.
1. *It's the **most** beautiful garden I have ever seen.*
 2. *Which part of your holiday did you enjoy **most**?*

study

- *He's doing a course in Business **Studies**.*
 - *Biology is **the study of** living things.*
1. *We will forget your past mistakes.*
 2. just before now, SAME MEANING : **last**:
 3. *He has been ill for the past week.*

with no fighting:

- *a **peaceful** demonstration*
- *It's so **peaceful** here.*
- ▶ *She's sleeping **peacefully**.*

history

- ▶ *Tim is a **history** student.*

Student or **pupil**? We usually say **student**. We often say **pupil** when talking about children at school.

- *The teacher **made** a few **corrections** to my essay.*
- *She has the **ability** to pass the exam, but she must work harder.*
- *Will you be **able** to come to the party?*
- *Is Simon **able** to swim?*
- *We need to make some **economies**.*

nowhere

- ▶ *There's nowhere to stay in this village.*

spend

1. *I don't **spend** a lot of money **on** clothes.*
 2. *I **spent** the summer in Italy.*
 3. *He **spent** a lot of time sleeping.*
- *The train **came to a stop**.*
 - *I'm getting off at the next **stop**.*
 - *A teacher put a **stop** to the fight.*

now

1. *I can't see you now – can you come back later?*
 2. *She was in Paris but she's living in Rome now.*
 3. *Don't wait – do it now!*
- ▶ **From now on** (= after this time) *your teacher will be Mr Djamel.*
- *I've finished writing this letter. Now, what shall we have for dinner?*
 - *Be quiet, now!*
- ▶ **now and again, now and then**
We go to the cinema now and again.

urgent

1. The doctor received an **urgent** telephone call.

1. We are having a party this Saturday.
2. He did it without my knowledge. I didn't know.

Knowledgeable : knowing a lot.

1. I'm very knowledgeable about girls.
2. Tension can give you headaches
3. She **wore** a long white wedding dress.

A.E.

8

was/were and past simple (1) 5/5

The words in red are wrong. Type the correct word in the gaps.

1 Where **were** you buy your new coat?

Where  you buy your new coat?

2 Did you know that James **is** in hospital last week?

Did you know that James  in hospital last week?

3 We didn't **went** on holiday last year.

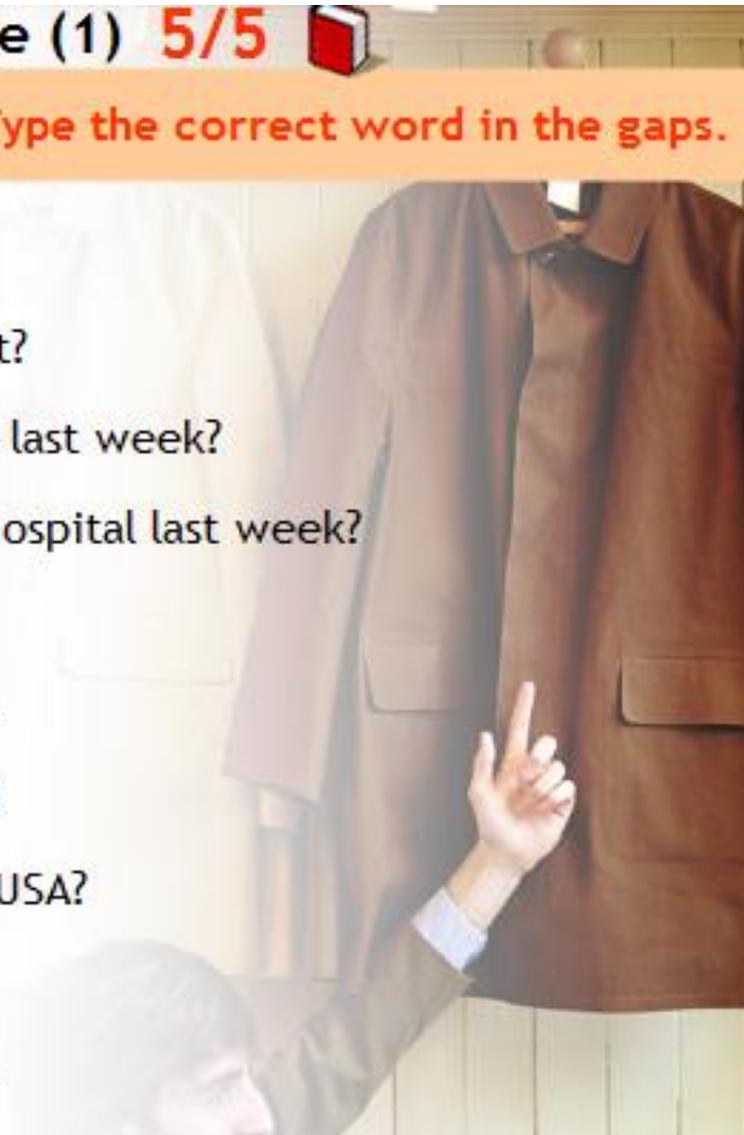
We didn't  on holiday last year.

4 How long **was** Carmen live in the USA?

How long  Carmen live in the USA?

5 Rob **weren't** at home yesterday.

Rob  at home yesterday.



A.E.

9

was/were and past simple (2)

Match the answers to the questions.

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| ▶ What did Charlie Chaplin usually carry? | a walking stick |
| ▶ How many symphonies did Mozart write? | over 40 |
| ▶ Where did Gustave Eiffel build a tower? | Paris |
| ▶ Who was 'The King of Rock and Roll'? | Elvis Presley |
| ▶ Who was the first man in space? | Yuri Gagarin |
| ▶ What did Marie and Pierre Curie discover? | radium |
| ▶ Which city did Marco Polo come from? | Venice |

Prepositions (2) 12/12 

Read the sentences. Click on the *two* correct answers.

- ▶ 1 My family lived in Turkey until 1999.
 on until in since
- ▶ 2 James is working until the end of the month.
 on at in until
- ▶ 3 Kate was ill for a few days during her holiday in Japan.
 during after for while
- ▶ 4 I met my husband-to-be in hospital .
 on a bus stop since spring at a party in hospital
- ▶ 5 Josie's arriving this Friday.
 on next this on last
- ▶ 6 I saw it on TV .
 at the moment on TV on the way to work on foot

unemployment

when there are not enough jobs for the people who want to work:

- *If the factory closes, **unemployment** in the town will increase.*

Opposite : employment

that you must have:

- *Food and clothes are **necessities** of life.*

Doing things too quickly, especially because you do not have enough time:

- *The letter was written **in haste** (= quickly).*

1. What is **the purpose of** your visit?
2. 'You've broken my pen!' 'I'm sorry, I didn't do it on **purpose.**'

something is **visible**, you can see it:

- Stars are only **visible** at night.
- Don't **shine** your torch **in** my eyes!

1. Good day Djamel.
2. Good morning Selma
3. Good afternoon Maria
4. Good night
5. Good evening my friend.
6. It is day time
7. It is mid-day
8. It is night
9. It is midnight
10. Well, the story is simple.

1. Do you go to school?
2. Yes. I go to school every day.
3. She knows me well.
4. I am Mr. Djamel
5. I know her well, and they know her well too.
6. Have you brothers and sisters
7. Yes, I have **two** brothers and **seven** sisters.

I hurt **myself** badly.

The child cried when he hurt **himself** badly.

You can look at **yourself** in the mirror.

She can look at **herself** in the mirror.

1. Do you know **him** well?
2. What have **you** said?
3. Yes. I do. Yes I did.
4. He is a friend of mine or he is one of my friends.
5. Do you have friends.

Do you have **a** friends

6. Yes, I have.
7. No, I haven't.

1. What are you doing now?
2. I am reading the newspaper.
3. Selma. What are you doing now?
4. I am cooking dinner.
5. I am going to my work. I must get there before eight.
6. I **went** to the university.

1. he says he doesn't know the facts but he does.
2. he says he didn't know the facts but he did.
3. She likes girls better than I do.
4. She like girls better than I did.
5. I don't think so, and neither do you.
6. I didn't think so, and neither do you.

1. I am very **interested** in English language.
2. Please tell me where can I find **him**?
3. Please tell me where can I find **her**?
4. You spend too much money.
5. Who is this miss?
6. Pay attention to the following sentences :
7. She phoned us earlier this evening.
8. We phoned her earlier this evening.

1. He goes to the shop every day.
2. At the butcher's **shop**.
3. He paid for them.
4. They won't accept your **apology**.
5. I won't take up any more of your time.
6. How long did you spend there?
7. I spent three weeks.

Dear Djamel,

I hope that you are well and that you are enjoying yourself. I have told my father and mother what good friends we have been at school, and they desire me to say that they would be **delighted** if your parents would allow you to spend the next **fortnight** with us. Let me know what day you can come and the time of your **arrival** so that I can meet you at the air-port.

Trusting you will be able to come.

Yours sincerely Maria

1. The sun is set, the sun is up.
2. It is fine weather, it is bad weather.
3. It is hot, it is cold.
4. It is late, it is early.
5. Come here, bring the book.
6. Open your book. Page 38.

1. Read the lesson. Write the exercise.
2. Stand up. Sit down.
3. Well-done.
4. The next is ..., Go on
5. That is enough.
6. Take your rest. Wash your hands.

1. Dry your hands with the towel.
2. Have your lunch.
3. Brush your teeth.
4. He spends a lot of money on food and clothes.
5. He spends a lot of money on his house, car, girlfriend.
6. Go to bed.
7. Put off the light
8. Sleep quietly. Who are you?. I am Djamel.

1. What is your name. please? My name is Loubna.
2. How old are you?
3. Where do you live?
4. Where is your house?
5. I am Mr. Bellaouar.
6. My name is Djamel Bellaouar.

1. I am forty years old
2. I live in Setif. Algeria
3. My house is in Badis street
4. Sandra is my mother's name.
5. Your room must be the one next to mine.
6. Have you brothers and sisters?
7. Yes, I have two brothers and seven sisters.
8. No, I have not any brothers or sisters

1. Do you have friends?
2. Yes I have
3. No I have not
4. Do you know Mr. Bell
5. Yes I know him
6. No, I don't know him. Yes, I do
7. He is a friend of mine? One of my friends.

1. Do you go to school? Do you go to work?
2. Yes, I go to school every day.
3. What do you learn?
4. I learn Arabic, English, Mathematics, History and Geography.
5. Do you go to the **pictures**?
6. Yes, I often go to the pictures.

1. Do you hear what I say?. Did you hear what I say, said?
2. Yes I do, I hear very well

3. Do you believe me?
4. Yes, I believe you. Or Yes, I do

5. Do you see our friend Djamel?
6. No, I don't see him.
7. He is not here.
8. He is in Setif

9. Is there any news about him?

1. Yes, there is some news.
2. What does he do there?
3. He works and **studies** English
4. When is he back?
5. After he finishes his **studies**.
6. Do you tell me the **truth**?
7. Yes, I do
8. You don't tell me the truth. You lie to me.
9. No, I don't.
10. She had a **terrible** accident.
11. You should be more careful.

1. Have you a car?
2. Yes, I have a car. Yes I have.
3. No, I have not a car
4. No, I haven't.
5. Can you take me with you?.
6. Yes I can take you with me.
7. No, I can't take you with me.

8. You seem ill.
9. What is the matter with you?
10. Can you tell me your story?
11. I can't tell you my story. It is very bad.

1. May I see you tomorrow?
2. Yes, you may.
3. How are you today.
4. How is your health.
5. How do you feel?
6. I am fine, thank you.
7. I feel very well.
8. I am very tired.
9. I am not so well.

10. Take **care** of your health.

1. Don't **worry**!
2. Let me see you tomorrow.
3. Come **as** early **as** you can.
4. Don't be late.
5. Wait for me
6. Tomorrow, morning
7. I don't know when.
8. Where do you want to go?
9. I want to go to France.
10. Is your friend Sami there ? Yes he is
11. Do you write to him? Yes I do. Does he answer
your letters.
12. Yes, he does

1. What do you mean by these words?
2. I don't mean any thing **at all**.
3. I mean many things.
4. Can you explain?
5. Try to understand by yourself
6. Do you agree with me?
7. Is it an important matter?
8. Yes, it is
9. Does it concern you?
10. Yes it concerns me very much
11. What do you want me to do?

1. Nothing, but to listen.
2. Can you solve the problem?
3. Yes of course I can.
4. Take it easy. You seem nervous.
5. Get in to my car.
6. Some body wants to meet you.
7. Do you like him?
8. No, I don't like him.
9. I hate him.
10. Do you remember him?

11. Do me this **favor**.

1. Leave me **alone**.
2. Don't **disturb** me. Please.
3. Keep quiet!
4. What is **that** noise? What is **this** noise?
5. I wish I can do some thing for you.
6. Go to sleep!
7. Get up early!
8. Please give me a cup of tea.
9. I am **quite** at your service.

1. Are you an **employee**?
2. Yes, I am
3. I believe so
4. I know that
5. I want to see him
6. Hi is busy now
7. I not free tomorrow
8. Let it be the day after
9. As you like
10. Let us discuss the matter
11. Thank you for all

1. You are mistaken.
2. I can assure you that it is so
3. No, you are wrong
4. **Upon** my honour, it is true
5. That is **incredible**.
6. Five years **from** now.
7. What is your opinion?
8. **From** Guelma to Setif.
9. Where are you from? Where do you come from?

1. I want you today
2. What for?
3. I want you for something important.
4. I pray you.
5. Make **haste!**
6. Excuse me!
7. **Never mind!**

1. Who is this gentleman?.
2. He is my brother.
3. What is his name?
4. His name is Djamel.
5. What her name?
6. Her name is Loubna.

Never mind.

7. Civilian

A person who doesn't belong to a military organization.

1. Who is this miss?
2. She is the wife of Djamel
3. She is my daughter
4. What is her name ?
5. Her name is Loubna
6. What is the time.
7. It is one O'clock. It is the time of prayer.

8. Are your **grandparents** **alive**?
9. Yes. They are.

1. It is very far, we can not walk.
2. It is very dark. I can not see anything.
3. This book is very difficult, I can not read it
4. I must work as hard as I can.
5. Answer these questions
6. You must answer in English
7. That needs a lot of thinking about it
8. Which gives more light, the sun or the moon

1. Which is better this one or that one
2. Which cost more, these or those.
3. He has **plenty** of money.
4. We have **plenty** of time.
5. They are not afraid of you. They can face anybody.
6. I see that he is a man of **courage**.
7. Write down all you want.
8. It is very interesting.

1. He is very interested in English language.
2. Loubna is very interested in English language.
3. Please tell me where can I find him?
4. Look ... he is over there.
5. Can I go after him?
6. Of course you can.
7. The protestors were demonstrating **outside** the White House .

1. The boy **throws** a ball.
2. The boy **throws** the ball.
3. The girl catches it.

4. You spend too much money.
5. You waste your time.
6. Dina gave my son a birthday present
7. Dina gave a birthday present to my son.
8. Try to be useful.
9. You **may** ask the speaker another question.
10. You may ask another question of the speaker.
11. The sick man gets better.
12. I want coffee for breakfast.

1. I read a book before I go to bed.
2. Yesterday I **read** a book
3. May I have a look
4. You grow fatter every day
5. What is wrong with you?
6. I have a headache, toothache.
7. Up to now, you speak in the present tense.
What is about the other tenses.

1. Present tense is the most important of all tenses. However, I will use different types of other tenses.
2. Pay attention to the following sentences.
3. He goes to the shop everyday.
4. Where is my father?. He has gone to the shop.
5. He went to the shop yesterday.
6. He is going to the shop now
7. He was going to the shop when I met him
8. He will go to the shop tomorrow

1. He wants to buy some eggs
2. He bought some eggs
3. He pays for them
4. He paid for them
5. He puts them into a bag
6. He put them into a bag
7. He opens his mouth and shut his eyes
8. He opened his mouth and shut his eyes

9. He needed both his hands
10. Mr. Dj felt unhappy
11. Where did you buy that hat?

1. I bought it from Djamel's shop.
2. How much did it cost?
3. It cost three dinars
4. What time did you get up this morning
5. I got up at seven.
6. What did you have for **breakfast**?
7. I had two eggs, a glass of milk and a cup of coffee.

8. How long did you spend there?
9. I **spent** three weeks

1. Which of those books did you like best?.
2. Where did you go last night?
3. I went to the cinema
4. Where did you spend your holiday last year?
5. I spent it in France.
6. I found my friend Djamel there
7. I met him by accident
8. He will give me a present for my birthday
9. What are you doing now?
10. I reading the newspaper.
11. He spends his time reading.

1. Where are you spending your honey month?
2. Where are you going now?
3. I **must get** there before eight
4. When are we going to see you again?
5. Are you going to visit him again this week?
6. Are you going to have a **hair cut** tomorrow?
7. You will come to see me soon.

8. You will make a telephone call
9. I will be waiting for you
10. Don't forget!

1. The lecturer explained the functions of subjects.
2. That man is my father.
3. Tell me the result of the match.
4. I'm baking a cake.
5. The Department has offered me a post.
6. Joan is good at mathematics.
7. Don't take offence.
8. You can put your clothes in the washing machine now.
9. I'm working for my father during the spring break.
10. Pay attention.

11. It is much colder today.
12. Norman speaks Russian fluently.
13. I thought the interviewer rather intimidating.
14. My sister has recovered from her operation.
15. Nobody was in, to my surprise.
16. Most of the contestants were immature.
17. You can switch on the television.
18. She gave me good advice.
19. I'm writing an essay on Milton.
20. The local authority closed the school.

We say that we travel *by land* when we are on land.

We say that we travel *by sea* when we are on the water.

We say that we travel *by air* when we are in the sky.

1. Bad chocolate **contains** a lot of sugar.
 2. If you **need** to do something. You must do it.
 3. Selma is very ill. She **needs** to go to hospital.
 4. Do we **need** to pay now, or can we pay next week ?.
 5. Do you **need** to pay now, or can you pay next week ?.
- There is no **need** for you to come.
 - He is in **need** of his girlfriend.
1. Millions of **visitors** come to Guelma every ten years.
 2. My car is **outside** the house.
 3. His hands are in his pockets.
 4. The water **has boiled**.

By the way.

- **Your thoughts quick.**

1. Extend my best compliments to your father.
2. Why didn't you say so before?
3. Do you think I am **wrong**?
4. There will be no choice to **hesitate**.
5. You are right!
6. You will stay here till I come back

1. I won't do what you tell me. **I refuse**
2. I won't take up any more of your time
3. They won't accept your **apology**.

4. He says he will get a rise next week
5. He is a good fellow. He **deserves**.

6. He is about to leave for his country.

1. You must decide immediately.
2. Must you go? Can't you stay?
3. We shall go soon

4. You **mustn't** talk to me like that.

1. He hates her like **poison**
2. They arrived yesterday. They were in London.
3. He used to heat his wife. She makes him nervous

1. Have another cigarette. Please light the cigarette.
2. Let us **pretend** we are not here.
3. Have you lived here all your life?.
4. Have you had your dinner?.
5. Have you seen a good film **recently**?
6. What books have you read during the last few months?.
7. I haven't seen you since Monday.
8. I haven't seen you for a week.

1. I am writing letters to my friend.
2. I have been writing letters all the morning.
3. I **saw** him two years ago
4. He is as strong as a horse
5. I **found out** the reason
6. She is singing because she is happy.
7. She is a very charming girl
8. They went home after they **had finished** their works

1. He asked why we had come so early
2. He was walking very quickly when I met him yesterday.
3. I want to ask you some questions.
4. What can I do for you?
5. Anything I can do for you?
6. I need your help
7. Lend me some money? How much?

1. One thousand dinars.
2. I regret I can't lend you such a sum
3. What have you got in your pockets?
4. Try, don't say I can't
5. I am looking for a job, but I don't find what shall I do?
6. I spent two hours on that letter.
7. Try once again. Don't give up

1. It is polite to get up when a stranger enters the room.
2. This man gets on my nerves
3. Take it easy. Care him not!
4. Would you like to join us?
5. Take a look at yourself in the mirror.
6. Get your hair cut!
7. I want to speak to you

1. Do what are you told, or you will get into trouble.
2. When are you beginning your holiday?
3. You are five minutes late
4. My watch is five minutes slow
5. You are five minutes early
6. My watch is five minutes fast
7. Come with me I want to **show** you something.

1. He will come if you call him
2. He would come if you called him
3. He would have come if you had called him
... but he didn't come! Why? Because you didn't call him.
4. It is good for you to eat **plenty** of vegetables
5. Stop talking, please. You are talking too much
6. The time has come for us to say **good-bye**.

1. I have the time to go there.
2. I've enough time.
3. You mustn't lose any time.
4. He spends the best part of his time on London.

5. My time is my own.
6. He was working against time to finish it.

I **would** like to do it but I have **no** money.

Suggestion.

if I may make a suggestion

1. I suggest that you talk to him soon.
2. You mustn't forget to mention your family situation.
3. I suggest to you to learn English.

- 1 maths
- 2 physics
- 3 history
- 4 geography
- 5 physical education
- 6 English
- 7 chemistry
- 8 biology
- 9 information technology

suggest



[sə'dʒest]

I **suggest** that we go to the museum.

Apology

I'm really very sorry

I'm sorry.

Please accept my **apologies**

Please forgive me

Describing people and their daily activities

My name is **Bellaouar Djamel**. I'm forty years old.

- I'm married.
- I'm single.

The name of my wife is **Selma**. I have two boys and two girls. I'm a teacher in a secondary school. I teach English and mathematics. My wife doesn't work. She is a housewife. Yes a **housewife!**.

She looks after our children. My older son is twelve years old.

He is a very sensitive man.

Don't say anything about her marriage because she's sensitive about it.

What **nationality** are you?

Which part of your holiday did you enjoy most.

A big political movement.

There is no relation between the size of the countries and the number of people who live there

They go to church every Sunday.

Examples:

Life is getting more and more difficult. **Therefore**, I am thinking of going **abroad**.

What are you planning to do there?

To look **for** a job.

Do you think that jobs are **available** there?

I don't know **but** many young men emigrate every year.

Emigration will not solve the problem of **unemployment**.

Moreover, you will find more problems there

Like what?

1. Racism, my dear. They look down to your race and your culture. **Besides**, you live in permanent insecurity. **Consequently**, immigrants and their children live on the **fringe** of social and civil life.
2. I am not going to emigrate, I only want to work there for two or three years. All the immigrations say that at the beginning. I don't intend to emigrate. Believe me. Why don't you go to the south and get a piece of land and cultivate it?. Cultivation of land in the Sahara is expensive, and I don't have money. You can join a group of friends and form a cooperative. Many young men went to the south and succeeded. It depends **upon** your **will-power**.

The government encourages the youth and you will find a lot of facilities. I will think deeply of what you have said.

Please tell me where can I find **Selma**?

It's raining.

It's already eleven o'clock.

It's too hot.

It's a long way to Miami.

Possibility

We use language forms which express possibility

These language forms are :

1. Perhaps
2. It is possible that
3. May be
4. Might be
5. It could be

Examples

- Will the train arrive on time?
- **Perhaps** it will, but I am not sure?
- **May be** it will
- **It is possible that** it will
- It might arrive, but I'm not sure
- Is your car outside?
- No, I took it to the garage to have it repaired
- Will the mechanic repair it today?
- Perhaps, he will.



Do you remember me?
Yes, but I forgot your name.

1. The new book **helps** you learn the most important sentences.
2. **get in** to my car.
3. some people buy cars to show off.
4. I **need to organize** my books before I **study**.
5. The word daughter **sounds** like water, because we **don't say** the letters **g** and **h** in this word.
6. The cat **goes** to the beach in the **summer**.
7. **It's** a great pleasure **to meet** you my friend.
8. I don't like **flying**.
9. Pardon me, I **disturb** you too much. I don't make it again.

- Hello, can I speak to you
- Ok, I'll see you on Monday at 10:15

Though

- I went to the game even **though** it was raining
- I like **him** very much, but **though** I hate **his** wife.

- The new book **helps** you learn the most important sentences.

- I **need** to organize my books before I study.

Explosion

Envoy

Guardian

Investigation

research

Difficulties

Boundaries

Mourning

Roughness

Wicked

Society

equality

Vitality

Activity

Horrible

Artificial

Good news

Multiplicity

mobilization

Minister

Minister for
Education and
Employment

funny

Her books sell well.

We talked about you last night.

Your ball has broken my window.

I listened to her respectfully.

Without

1. He is living **without** wife. He is single. He's alone.
2. It's cold, don't go out **without** your coat.
3. I'm going to my work **without** my coat, **without** any money.
4. He is **without** friends, he is **a lone**. (Lonely girl)
5. With or **without** sugar ?
6. **Without** any person knowing.
7. I drink coffee without sugar.
8. he left **without** me.
9. They left **without** saying goodbye.

Could

1. it **could** be true.
2. It was dark, so I **couldn't** see anything.
3. he could have changed his mind without telling you.
4. When I was young, I **could** play football all day.

Because

- The word daughter sounds like water, **because** we don't say the letters **g** and **h** in this word.

Had (*the past of to have*)

Had not, Hadn't

1. I **had** a good time at the party with my wife.
 2. I'd a good time at the party with my **girlfriend**.
- No, **The** books are all on the table in the living room.
 - Where **are** my shoes?
 - This information **is** very important.
 - The meeting was very interesting for me.

From A to Z = from beginning to end

1. Let us wait **till** the rain stops.
2. You must be calm and not getting angry when you are waiting something or when you have problems. So, you must be **patient**.

1. Hello students. Hello every one. *How do you do?*
2. How are you today?
3. See you next time.
4. Take the series. We haven't **enough** time.

1. You must **rest** for an hour.
2. He won't **rest** **till** he finds out the truth.
3. She **never** **rests**.

1. The cat **goes** to the beach in the **summer**
2. It's a great pleasure to meet you my friend
3. You can see the house, he ate the banana
4. You can't see the house, he didn't eat the banana.
5. You don't can see the house.
6. **Do** you can see the house?
7. The student asked a question.
8. I don't know. Ask your father.
9. Ask him if he has seen her.
10. You are very hot because you are ill.
11. Many animals are afraid of **fire**.
12. He was **imprisoned** for killing his wife.

Don't ask me!

I ask you!

I'm not asking you!

- I use only one pillow for my head when I sleep
- Your advice is good
- Are you taking a holiday?
- Do you want coffee or tea?
- We will meet on Monday not Tuesday
 - The word could sounds like good
 - A word that you use to ask something
 - Could you open the door?
 - Was the book good?, yes it was
 - Would you like some tea? Yes I would

1. Do you have **enough** money to buy the car?.
2. $1+2 = 3$ is **an** easy equation.
3. I like to read every evening **before** I go to bed.
4. There is **enough** pie so that each of us can have. a piece.
5. Turn **left** at the next corner.
6. The students **did** a good job.
7. Please **don't** close the door.
8. **There are** hard words.
9. The bad dog **ate** the dinner.
10. The dinner **was eaten** by it.

1. I like to walk, I like to eat.
2. It was a great game.
3. Cats drink milk. Cat **drinks** milk.
4. Mice eat cheese, mouse eat cheese.
5. The mice will eat the cheese.
6. The mice have been eating the cheese.
7. I'm going to do it
8. Do you want to do it?.
9. The student are writing the exam
10. The exam is being written.

1. I'm not sure.
2. Your work's finished.
3. The place where you buy books is called a bookshop.
4. You can seek that information in the library.
5. How will you feed the hungry children?.
6. Thank you for every thing you did for me last month.
7. Tom took the children to lunch.
8. Thursday is not the third day of the week.
9. I will call you tomorrow.
10. We will be here if you need **us**.

1. Would you like **an** apple to eat?
2. He is a teacher's aide
3. The sun rises **in** the east
4. I washed the car **while** you slept
5. Why did you hit **your** sister?
6. What time shall **we** meet?
7. When I'm sick I see **my** doctor
8. Homework is school work you do **at** home
9. A house is building where people live in it
10. The game is so easy that **even** a child can play it

Storm

1. It's **storm** day, *that means very bad weather with strong winds and rain.*
2. After **storm** comes sunshine.

Crawl

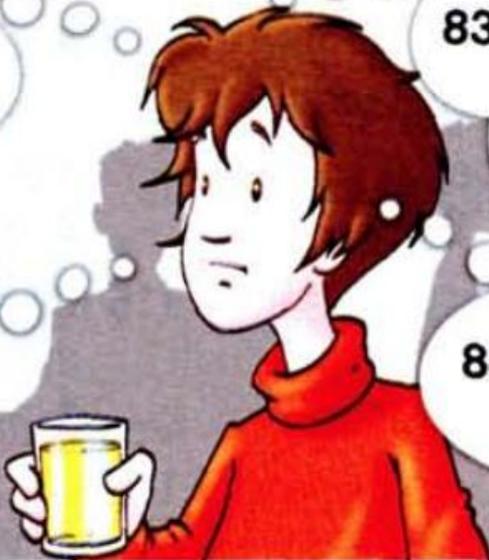
1. Babies **crawl** before they can walk.
2. we had to go at a **crawl** through the main streets.
3. To crawl on one's hands and knees.
4. The child has begun **to crawl**.

1. I don't laugh, I don't **even** smile.
2. They all laughed at me when I said I was afraid of dogs
3. He'll arrive at 07 o'clock.
4. That **her** pen, the pen is **hers**.
5. It's **my** pen, It's **mine**.
6. I have pain in my knee since I fell down on **it**.
7. The new student has a lot of **wit**.
8. I **won't** go.
9. I have **pain** in my knee **since** I fell down on it.
10. I liked the beginning, but the rest of the film wasn't very good.

1. You should look both ways before you cross the road
2. Look, I know you're busy, but I need your help
3. There was a rain storm last night
4. Open the door and **let me** in the house
5. Don't waste your time by watching too much television.
6. Please don't make the noise
7. The new car is mine.
8. I'm getting fat I need to lose **weight**.
9. The table is weak so don't put too much **weight** on it
10. I have the **wrong** answer to the question

81 I don't know anyone at this party. I don't enjoy it.

82 There is no telephone. I can't call a taxi.



83 I didn't have any money. I didn't buy a new dress for the party.

84 I'll get to bed late. I'll be tired all day tomorrow.

1. I don't need your car.
2. I don't need your coat. It's not cold.
3. I'm very ill I need to go to hospital.
4. I was very ill, so I nearly **died**.
5. A nation is a country and all the people who live in **it**.
6. Do you know the name of this girl? She's very charming.
7. I lost my watch, so please help me find it.
8. The math exam was very difficult.
9. She's closing the door.
10. She's closed the door .

1. Few people live to the age of 100
2. Few of students worked well
3. I don't like R and R doesn't like me
4. He doesn't like his job
5. You don't work very hard
6. There is a train every hour
7. I'm hungry but there isn't anything to eat
8. I know that I will get my wish
9. We say hello when we meet someone
10. A word that you say when you meet somebody or when you answer the telephone. **Hello.**

1. I'm going to solve the problem.
2. The problem is going to be solved.
3. They are going to play the game.
4. The game is going to be played.
5. If you need something you must have it.
6. All plants and animals need **water**.
7. Next year, she will join the primary school.
8. I wasn't **able** to help **him**.
9. Please give my **thanks** to your sister for **her** help.
10. The **temperature** is five degrees below zero.

1. We didn't have **enough** light to read the map
2. Smoking is bad for your **health**
3. There is someone in the door
4. Selma has a red scarf
5. I will repeat the sentence again
6. Try once again don't give up!
7. It's polite to get up when a stranger enters the room
8. The prayer is a word that you say when you speak to God
9. The word *there* sounds just like *their* and *they're*
10. It will be hot this afternoon

1. **Do** you want milk in your coffee?
2. This machine doesn't work.
3. The dog is fat because **he eats** too much.
4. Please put **less** milk in my tea.
5. How many brothers and sisters have you got
6. **Some girls use too much makeup.**
7. Nice to meet you. May I help you?
8. There is no work without pain.
9. I eat fish at least once a week.
10. There are five oranges in the **fridge.**

1. Vegetables are usually cooked to help digestion.
2. I have two children **both** are girls.
3. I like to drink **either** tea or coffee.
4. I like both cities.
5. There are two ways from here to the university. I can go **either** way.
6. I like both of those pictures.
7. It is important to eat **good food**.
8. I ate too many grapes, so I feel ill.
9. I hurt my arm when I fell down.
10. Dinner is the name for the **last meal** of the day.

1. Try not to make any **mistakes** in your exam.
2. If you do something bad it's your fault.
3. It is my fault we are late.
4. Sorry, I took your book by mistake.
5. You have made a lot of spelling mistakes in this sentence.
6. We must avoid making a sin or a wrongdoing.
7. Most girls are being free to go where they want and do what they want, but it is false.
8. What your option of learning Mathematics or computer science
9. Don't philosophize at me.
10. I asked her a question but she remained **silent**.

1. If you are feeling ill you should stay in bed.
2. You should look both ways before you cross the road
3. I **need** a drink of water
4. Did you forget your pen?
5. When is your birthday?
6. She's going to have a baby
7. You have a low level. You must work very hard
8. There was a cold wind from the east
9. I brush my teeth after every meal
10. I will meet you between **4** and **5. ok.**

- **my** book
- **my** table
- **my** friend
- **my** clothes
- I've broken **my** leg

Excuse me, but I'm the person **whose** seat this is.
That's the place **where**
I was sitting.

Well, you're sitting on my ice-cream!

Tell me the reason
why I should move. You say
you're the man **who** was sitting here but can you prove it?

You are sitting on my ice-cream

1. Thank you all my students and best wishes.
2. She's his **third** wife.
3. It's lunch time.
4. I wash my hair with shampoo and make it tidy with a hairbrush or a **comb**.
5. People, animals and plants die if they don't have water.
6. We had bad weather last week.
7. You must have new techniques for learning languages
8. Spring is the season of flowers.
9. Winter is cold and rainy.
10. Summer is hot and dry especially in Guelma.

1. No **news** is good news.
2. Look before you **leap**.
3. I don't eat much meat in general.
4. I will meet you at lunchtime.
5. Each student buys a book and a map.
6. They are looking at each other.
7. Each of us can have a piece .
8. Please show me how to work the computer.
9. Yes, I will help you.
10. Why don't you know?
11. Why didn't you know?

1. It's good **for** you to eat vegetables too much
2. I've finished eating but I still hungry
3. He **would** come **if you called** him
4. What's official language of your country?
5. Our new television has a very clear picture.
6. Today **has been** a very long day.
7. Try not to make any mistakes in your exam.
8. My **wife** has a **loud** laugh.
9. where can I get some information about your Country.
10. Can I have a bread, please?

1. When you **are** tired don't drive.
2. An international **flight** goes from one country to **another**.
3. Can you explain?.
4. It's polite to ask permission.
5. Yes that's true.
6. You should treat old people with more respect.
7. She died after a long illness.
8. My meat isn't cooked **enough**.
9. Let me give you an advice
10. the east of the country usually has a better Weather than the west.
I've **one**. I've **some**.

My age is 20 years.

I am 20 years

It is seven and a half.

It is half past seven.

This book is to me.

This book is mine.

The right is with you.

You are right.

Your book is with me.
I have your book.

I opened the radio.
I turned on the radio.

I closed the radio.
I turned off the radio.

She sees herself very much.
She is very proud.

She was making herself ill.
She was pretending to be ill.

I took permission.
I got permission.

Let us go from here.
Let us go this way.

I saw her one time or two times.
I saw her once or twice.

1. In Ramadan, my first meal is begun with some dates and a cold cup of Leben.
2. Do you smoke and take drugs together?.

Ring

1. I'll give a **ring** later.
2. A circle of metal that you wear on your finger.
3. Your wedding ring is very nice.
4. The telephone is ringing.
5. He isn't here now. Can you ring back later.

To kill

To **kill** is to cause something or someone **to die**.

1. I sent **her** a letter in the day before **yesterday**.
2. Did you see Selma yesterday?.
3. Have you seen Selma ?
4. what is your weight ?
5. what's your **weight** ?
6. I have a lot of work and I have no time for you.

Pair and repair

1. Two things of the same kind that you use together.
2. A pair of shoes.
3. Shoes are only sold in **pairs**.
4. The students are working and walking in **pairs**.

but

1. I didn't use to like fish, but I do now.

Especially

- I hate getting up early **especially** in the winter.

I **tore** the piece of paper in half

I cant use this bag, it's torn

Bad, worse, worst

- That was the **worst** day of my life
- My new born baby.
- He was very **unhappy** when his wife left him

Weather, whether

1. Cold **weather** is usual in the winter
2. I don't know **whether** it's true or not, I don't know **whether** or not it's true.

1. The country is **under** military rule
2. To stay **under** water
3. He stayed **under** water for three minutes.
4. The cat is **under** the table
5. If you are **under** 17 you are not allowed to drive a car
6. I am wearing a vest **under** my shirt
7. Yes, I think so.
8. What size are your shoes ?
9. it is not far from the center of the town.
10. I **get up** at six o'clock in the morning.

1. He is really in shape because he does a lot of sports.
2. What can I do for you?
3. Every Saturday, she does the cleaning in the apartment.
4. Selma is good at math and English because she does homework.
5. Does she have a map?. No she doesn't
6. I am looking for my car keys. Have you seen them?
7. Come and see me soon.

I'm sorry to *tell you* that you can't play football.



What did the doctor *say*?



He *told me*
I couldn't play football.

Well, if he *said so*, he's seen you play, hasn't he?

1. Can you tell me **exactly** what **happened** ?
2. Don't come near me? You seem nervous.
3. Which do you prefer **love** or **friendship** ?
4. That's exactly what I did.
5. Why are you telling me all this ?
6. That seems very good.
7. You must make time.
8. I haven't time to rest.
9. Do you like swimming ?
10. Yes I do. Yes I did.

1. I love roses.
2. I love walking in the early morning
3. I love my mum and my dad
4. Have you had a good time, day?
5. We had a good time. On that year
6. She was a good wife and mother.
7. The room was full of **smoke** (noun).
8. Do you **smoke** ? (verb).
9. Her parents are both heavy smokers. They smoke a lot.
10. We can all **get in** my car.

1. The word **some** sounds just like **sum**.
2. The police are still trying to solve the crime.
3. Hundred of people are killed every year because of road accident.
4. A room where you cook food (**Kitchen**).
5. Please give my **regards** to your family.
6. I'd with him a good **memories**.
7. Excuse me, I think you're in my seat.
8. Listen **and** speak.
9. Has anybody found the answer to this question.
- 10. Before** driving **off**, I check **the** oil and water.

1. Excuse me, I'm **older** than you.
2. People drink the **milk** of the cows and some other animals.
3. **Milk** is the white liquid that a mother makes in her body to give to her baby.
4. How much money did you **spend** last month ?
5. She was in hospital **for a month**.
6. The **month** is one of the twelve parts of a year.
7. It's the **most beautiful** garden that I've seen.
8. I'll meet you at **lunchtime**.
9. Every student **must** write the exam.
10. I danced with **her all** night.

1. After storm comes **sunshine**.
2. Its storm day. That means very bad weather with strong winds and rain.
3. If you are feeling ill you should go to the doctor
4. Have you washed your face?
5. I'm only going away for two days.
6. Pupils study all the branches of knowledge.
7. The school where I teach is very big.
8. It was built in 1980.
9. I contains 30 classrooms.
10. There are **about** sixty teachers working in it.
11. I am tired. You are not the only one!
12. It seems only like yesterday.

1. My parents **separated** when I **was** a baby.
2. I become to see you as **worms**. I hate you too much.
3. Only one person **spoke**.
4. Blood circulates round the body
5. She still depends with her parents for money because she hasn't got a job.
6. To give something to somebody who pays you money for it. → **to sell**
7. I go to school by **bike**.
8. The word **birth** sounds like **earth**.
9. He wouldn't help me.
10. I would buy a big house.
11. Would you prefer to see a woman doctor?

1. He gave me a vague direction about the house.
2. Have you seen Djamel, yes **I saw him** last Thursday.
3. She has called me four times since we met on the weekend.

4. I was **delighted** too much. I'm **delighted** to meet you
5. Are you going to take your **bath** now?
6. Don't put **all** the blame on me.
7. You will **gain** fame and **fortune**.
8. I wear **light** clothes in summer.
9. **Your** car and **mine** are both in a good state.
10. That exactly what I did.

Delight : to make somebody very pleased or happy.

1. We have decided to go to France for our holidays.
2. She decided that she didn't want to come.
3. I cant decide what colour to paint my room.
4. I must make a decision about what I'm going to do when I leave school.
5. I gave the police a description of the thief.
6. Can you describe the man you saw?
7. She described the accident to the police.
8. I've been bitten by mosquitoes.
9. My main reason for learning English is to get a better job.
10. There is a funny smell in this room.
11. There is a matter I would like to discuss with you.

Well : **adverb**, *in a good or right way*. **Not badly**

1. You speak English very **well**.
2. These shoes are very **well** made.
3. I don't know Guelma very **well**.
4. Shake the bottle **well** before you open it.

Write a synonym for *get* in each of these sentences.

- 1 Where can I get something to eat round here?
- 2 I'm just going to get some paper from the office. I'll be back in a minute.
- 3 What time did they get here last night?
- 4 He got very angry when I told him what you did with his CDs.
- 5 I couldn't get a room; all the hotels were full.
- 6 We normally get five weeks' holiday.
- 7 This book is getting quite interesting.
- 8 I must get some stamps before I go home.
- 9 He sent the letter last week but I didn't get it until yesterday.
- 10 Do they often get here early?

**No don't sigh after a moment the
laugh returns and the fire that in your
Chest becomes cold.**

**I become to see you as worms.
I become to see you as wastes.**

**Cold weather is usual in the winter.
I am going to go at work.**

Wrongdoing for you legal for us.

Hobby, hobbies

Something that you like doing in your free time.

My hobbies are reading and swimming

him

A word that shows a man or body. Where is Djamel ? I can't see **him**. I spoke to **him** yesterday.

here

1. Your glasses are **here**
2. Come **here**. Please!
3. **Here's** my car
4. **Here** comes the bus
5. **Here** and there.

heaven

the place where many people believe God lives and where good people go to when they die.

Heavy ≠ light

I can not carry this bag it is too heavy.
The traffic was very heavy this morning.

Heavily

It was raining heavily.

nearly

1. I am nearly 40, it is my birthday next week.
2. She was so ill that she nearly died.
3. The book wasn't nearly as good as the film.

orphan

A child whose parents are dead.

flu

An illness like a very bad cold that makes your body sore and hot. I think I've got flu.

Life, lives

1. Many people lost their **lives**.
2. They were very happy throughout their married **life**.

Fat, fatter, fattest

You will get fat if you eat so much.

- Fat ≠ slim it is not polite to say somebody is **fat**
- Fat ≠ thin

1. Pious people enter the **paradise** or the **heaven**.
2. I thought I'd died and gone to **heaven**!
3. I **promise**, I will phone you later or tomorrow.
4. When I **stay** somewhere, I don't go to **another** place.
5. Does he work in the **evenings**?
6. It is **unbelievable** problem.
7. What are your favorite kinds of TV programmers. How many hours of TV do you watch every day.
8. How many TV channels do you have.
9. Put your hands **up** (the police).

Acceptable

1. It is not acceptable to make so many mistakes
2. She can't accept that her son is dead.
3. he can't accept that his mum is dead.
4. I accepted the invitation to his party.

Achieve

He worked hard and **achieved** his aim of becoming doctor.

activity

On the day of the festival there was a lot of **activity** in the streets.

Replay

1. Have you had a replay to your letter?
2. What did you say in replay to his question?

Something

1. A thing you can not name it.
2. There is something under the table. What is it?
3. I want to tell you something.

Safe adj

1. Don't go out alone at night. You won't be **safe**?
2. Is it **safe** to swim in this river?.

Shake

1. No, thank you. He **shook** his head
2. **Shake** hands!
3. They **shook** hands

Serious

1. You look very serious
2. If you are serious, you are not joking or playing.
3. Are you serious about going to live in Spain?

Source

A place where something comes from. Our information comes from many **sources**.

Rape

Don't rape minor girls?

Flee

During the war, thousands of people **fled** the country.

It is a **political** crisis in Syria.

First

Good morning my friend.

Then

I love you very much.

next

Can we make a good
relation between us.

After that

My friend is a bad person.

Finally

We are divorced.

Do and make

Fill the gaps with *make* or *do*.

- 1 I always a lot of mistakes when I speak English.
- 2 If I my homework every day, my English will get better.
- 3 Let's go to bed now. We can the dishes in the morning.
- 4 I want to an exam in French. Do you know where I can one?
- 5 We always try not to a noise after ten o'clock at night.

It makes me (feel) ...

Going by train always **makes me (feel)** tired.

My friend called me stupid. It **made me (feel)** angry.

That film **made me (feel)** sad.

I'll **make** some tea/hot chocolate. (make)

I **make** breakfast/lunch/supper every day. (supper = a meal just before bed)

Correct the mistakes in this dialogue.

ANNA: Where did you went on your holidays? To London?

PAVEL: No, we don't go to London this year. We went to Scotland.

ANNA: Do your grandmother lives in Scotland?

PAVEL: No, she don't but my uncle do.

What do you do?



What **do** you **do**? (= What is your job?)

I'm a student. *or* I'm a teacher. *or* I'm an engineer.

What **does** your wife **do**? (= What's your wife's job?)

She's a doctor. *or* She's a secretary. *or* She's a mechanic.

What do you say? Choose a phrase opposite.

- 1 You want to order a coffee. The waiter is reading the newspaper.
- 2 A friend buys you a drink.
- 3 A child says 'Goodnight' to you.
- 4 You answer the phone at work. It is 10.30 a.m.
- 5 You answer the phone at work. It is 3 p.m.
- 6 It is 2 a.m. on January 1st. You meet a friend on the street.
- 7 A friend spoke too quickly. You don't understand.
- 8 It is 24th December. You meet a friend on the bus.

Write down in English:

- 1 the name of your country.
- 2 the names of the countries next to your country.
- 3 the names of any other countries which are important for your country in some way.
- 4 the word for your language.
- 5 the name for people from your country.

What do you need?

- 1 To make coffee I need ... *coffee, water, milk, a coffee maker, a cup, a spoon.*
- 2 To make tea I need
- 3 To fry an egg I need
- 4 To eat my food I need
- 5 To drink some water I need
- 6 To make my dinner in just two minutes I need

I talk to my friends on the phone every evening. *or*
I ring my friends every evening.

Sometimes, I just **do nothing.**
I like to **have a sleep** after lunch.

Fill in the missing verbs.

- 1 Sometimes I ...*listen*..... to CDs or tapes.
- 2 I prefer to magazines more than newspapers.
- 3 I to my sister on the phone every Sunday.
- 4 A lot of people like to a sleep after lunch.
- 5 Do you ever friends to dinner?
- 6 The children computer games every evening.
- 7 Shall we a video tonight?
- 8 Did you the programme about Namibia yesterday?
- 9 My father vegetables in his garden.

Answer for *yourself*.

- 1 If you have friends around, what do you like to do?
- 2 Does anyone come to stay at your house/flat?
- 3 What do you like to read most?
- 4 How often do you ring your friends?

Questions in the kitchen

Where can I find a mug / cloth / some kitchen paper?

Can I help with the washing-up / the cooking?

Where does this cup / plate / frying pan go? (where do you keep it?)

Where shall I put this cup / the milk?

Note that the verbs **sound, look, taste, feel, seem** are followed by an adjective.

He **sounded** **angry** when I spoke to him on the phone.

Sounded : verb

Angry : adj

1. I can **see** him.
 2. I **saw** him read the letter.
 3. I **saw** him reading the letter.
 4. Do you **see** what I mean?
 5. I **don't see** why.
 6. I am **seeing** the doctor tomorrow.
 7. Mathematics is my favourite subject.
 8. See you later!
-
- It broke his **heart** when his wife **died**.
 - I have learned the poem by **heart**.
 - Your heart **sinks** : My heart **sank** when I saw the first question on the exam paper.

To get

له معاني كثيرة منها:

- He **got** the car from his friend.
- They get lunch at school.
- If I'm not working I get no pay.
- You will **get** fat.
- When I **get** home, I will phone you.
- I will **get** you something to eat it.
- I have to **get** some money.
- They tired to **get** me to sign.
- Leave it with me; I'll **get** to it later.
- When they **get** to arguing, we'll never stop them.
- **get out**
- **get up**

First I need
to get a
better idea
of the
situation.

- You can turn off the television. I'm not watching it.
- The weather is nice it's not raining.
- Please be quiet. I'm working.
- There is a **matter** I would like to discuss with you.

- **We use the present simple for things that are true in general, or for things that happen sometimes or all the time.**
 1. I **like** big cities.
 2. Your English **is** good. You **speak** very well.
 3. We **do** a lot of different things in our free time.
 4. It **costs** a lot of money to build a hospital
 5. I **drink** coffee, but I **don't drink** tea.
 6. Selma **drinks** tea, but she **doesn't drink** coffee.
 7. You **don't work** very hard.
 8. We **don't watch** television very often.
 9. The weather **is** usually nice. It **doesn't rain** very often.
 10. Djamel and Selma **don't know** many people in Guelma.

A Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

e.g. If I were you, I *would call* (**call**) the police.

- 1 If he (**drive**) more carefully, he wouldn't have crashed the car.
- 2 I won't go to the party unless you (**come**) with me.
- 3 If she hadn't left the door open, the cat (**not/run away**).
- 4 If you (**see**) him, can you ask him to call me?
- 5 If I (**have**) enough money, I'd buy a computer.
- 6 Unless you apologise, she (**not/forgive**) you.
- 7 If they (**not/rob**) the bank, they wouldn't have been sent to prison.
- 8 If it (**rain**), we won't go to the park.
- 9 If I had known about their plans, I (**tell**) you.
- 10 If you go to Paris, you (**see**) the Eiffel Tower.

1 Do you need some money _____ the taxi?

get for getting for

2 Jane's baby is really funny. He always makes _____.

me smile me to smile me smiling

3 What was Gill _____ when I came in?

talk about to talk about talking about

4 It's difficult to persuade _____ something when she doesn't want to.

Katy doing Katy do Katy to do

5 After the party, Ella offered _____ the floor.

clean to clean cleaning

6 Leo hasn't got time _____ his wife for lunch.

to meet for meet for meeting

7 I drove to the garage _____ some petrol.

for getting getting to get

1. The driver is **responsible** for the lives of the people on the bus.
2. Who was **responsible** for the accident?
3. The accident resulted in the death of two drivers.
4. How many people **came** to the meeting.
5. People often arrive late at parties.
6. The football season starts in August.

7. **Resignation** : saying that you want to leave your job.

8. Can you help me? You're my only **hope**. **Noun**
9. I am **dead** tired. **adv**
10. All my grandparents are dead. **adj**
11. This town is **dead** : everywhere is closed after ten o'clock at night. **adj**

Else

I've lived in Setif all my life; I can't imagine living anywhere **else**.

rush

I always try to avoid driving through the city centre during the **rush** hour

Do and **make**

Take and **bring**

Say and **tell**

Speak and **talk**

Rob and **steal**

Cross out the incorrect answers.

- 1 We decided to work / working during our holiday.
- 2 She promised to help / helping us.
- 3 I don't feel like to go / going for a walk at the moment.
- 4 He forgot to take / taking the cake out of the oven.
- 5 Do you really hate to drive / driving when it's wet?
- 6 I can't imagine to eat / eating pasta every day of the week.
- 7 Most of the time she prefers to work / working on her own.
- 8 I don't remember to go / going to the zoo when we stayed in Madrid.
- 9 He hopes to finish / finishing his thesis by the end of the month.
- 10 I don't mind to help / helping you if I'm not busy.

Complete part c) of each number in a suitable way.

- 1 Most people want:
a) to be rich b) to get married c)
- 2 A lot of people can't stand:
a) getting wet b) getting up early c)
- 3 Most people enjoy:
a) going to parties b) lying on a beach c)
- 4 On hot days most people don't feel like:
a) working b) eating big meals c)
- 5 Most people expect
a) to be happy b) to find a job they will like c)
- 6 A lot of people don't mind:
a) washing-up b) ironing c)
- 7 Some parents make their teenage children:
a) wear certain clothes b) do housework c)
- 8 Other parents let their teenage children:
a) wear what they like b) stay out all night c)

Read the story and answer the questions below.

When Julie was 17, her father said she could go on holiday with two school friends. He also said that he would lend her the money for a hotel, but she must pay for the air fare and her entertainment. Julie was delighted and said she would bring him back a wonderful present and pay him back in six months. But first they had to decide where to go. They looked at lots of brochures and finally agreed on a two-week holiday in the south of France. They had a great time, but unfortunately Julie spent all her money and forgot to buy a present for her father.

-
- | | |
|---|--------------------|
| 1 What did Julie's father let her do when she was 17? | He let |
| 2 And what did he offer to do? | He offered |
| 3 But what did he refuse to do? | He refused |
| 4 In return what did Julie promise? | She promised |
| 5 What did the three girls decide? | They decided |

It's great to see you.

I'd prefer to drink some water.

These words have the same meaning.

lighter

baby, kid, child, boy, son

You must buy a lighter.

1. Look at this
2. I **look forward** to seeing you soon.
3. Have you seen them?

Look after
Look for
Look forward to
Look into
Look up

Provided that

1. I **met** susan on the street yesterday.
2. That was the **worst** day of my life.
3. I'm the **worst** in the class at grammar.

periodic

Weaken

He was **weakened** by the illness.

Why did you get **weakened** as this.

1. I can't find the way out.
2. She was looking the other way.
3. **By the way** : words that you say when you are going to talk about something different. **By the way** I had a letter from Selma yesterday.

Soldier

A person in an army.

I will never forget you. I remember you every day.

1. In the summer. The majority of girls not wearing clothes. They are **naked**.

Monthly : happening or coming every month or once a month. I'm **paid** monthly.

Paid : is an adj, verb or noun?

She's on holiday at the **moment** but she'll be back next week. Can you wait a **moment**?

At the **moment**. That means, now.

1. Hard : **adverb**
2. She works very hard.
3. You must try harder
4. It 's raining hard. She hit him hard.

Adjective

hard work not easy and full of problems.

He 's had a hard life **adj**

1. My future wife is called Loubna.
2. She is a charming girl and wife.

Give the name of the place where you live?

His death was very **sudden**.

This week, there is a **sudden** change in the weather.

This week, there is a **sudden** changes
in the weather. ???

1. Is there anything **specific** that you want to talk about?.

I made this cake **specially** for you.

1. Do you know a good place to have lunch
2. The wedding of John and Sara will take place on 22 may.
3. I am going to the **pharmacy**.

Look at this

1. Affirmative
2. Negative
3. Interrogative
4. Negative Interrogative

1. you speak English.
2. you don't speak English.
3. Do you speak English?.
4. Don't you speak English?.

insistence

1. I've a big **insistence** to learn English.
2. My wife is an insistent woman.

How is his health?

He is getting better. Don't worry.

Don't disturb.

1. I will give more **importance** to learn English.

priority

1. The **priority** is for this bus.
2. The **priority** is for women.
3. We give **priority** to families with small children.

advantages

advantage [əd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ]

There are a lot of **advantages** to speak English.

1. you can speak with every person from the world.
2. you know everything about the countries.

Up to now, till now

inspection

inspection

If you don't know the meaning of the word **inspection**. So you are stupid.

Inspect

To look at something carefully.

1. The police made an **inspection** of the house.
2. I inspected the car before I bought it.

Eye-witness : I

1. Many people eat meat or fish almost every day.
2. Do you want some bread?.
3. Most British people like fish and chips.

Yes, I've an eye-witness.

Advice (no plural)

The book gives some **advice** on travelling abroad.

The doctor 's advice
I did what the doctor told me to do and stayed in bed.

- He is in Guelma for a short **stay**.
- will it be a long **stay**?
- He is here to **stay**.
- If the weather **stays** fine.
- He **stayed** away from the meeting.

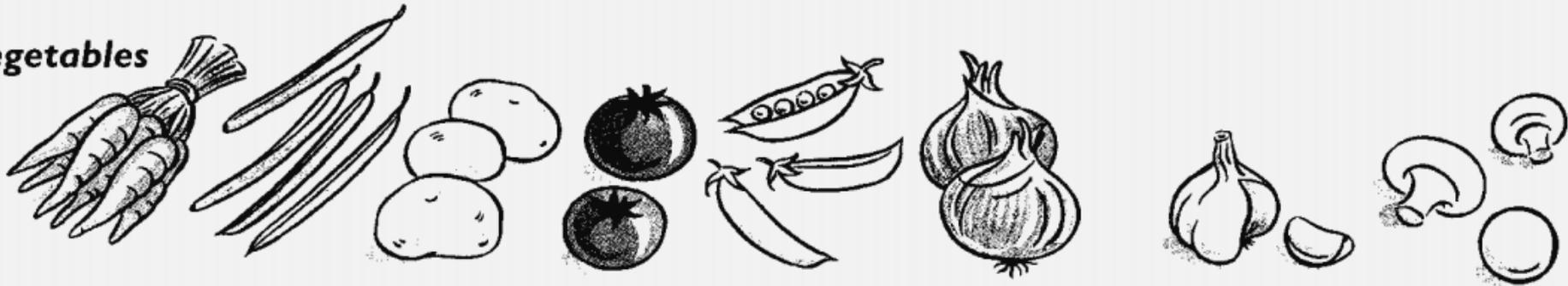
Vegetables

&

fruit

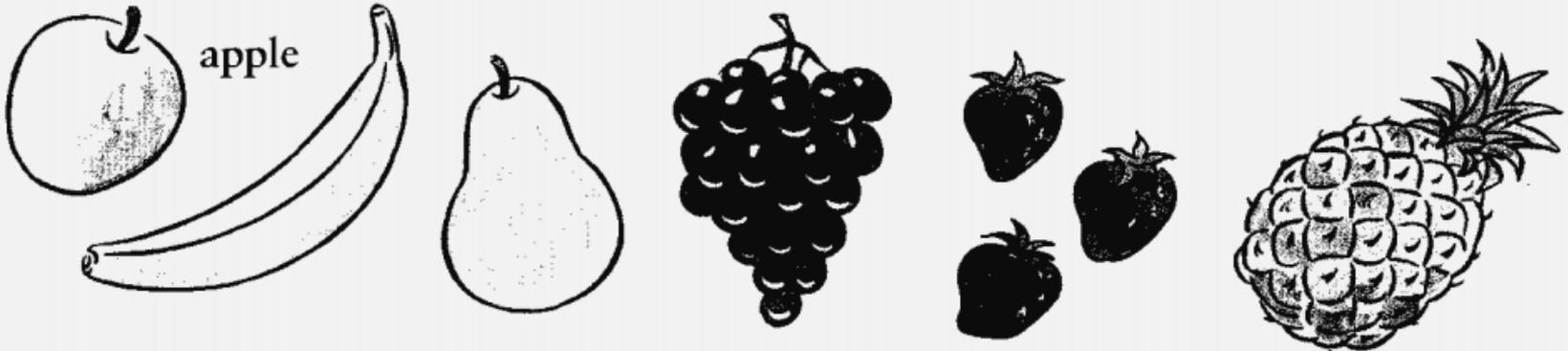
Vegetables are good for you. Fruit is also good for you. (singular) [NOT fruits]

Vegetables



carrots beans potatoes tomatoes peas onions mushrooms garlic mushrooms

Fruit



orange apple banana pear grapes strawberries pineapple

pear [pɛəˈr]

Drinks

Drinks



tea



coffee



milk



fruit juice



beer



wine



mineral
water

beer [bɪəː]

Would you like to drink something?

- Tea, coffee, milk, juice, Mineral water
- Beer, wine

Match the subject on the left with the topic on the right.

- 1 maths
- 2 physics
- 3 history
- 4 geography
- 5 physical education
- 6 English
- 7 chemistry
- 8 biology
- 9 information technology

- a animals
- b gymnastics
- c $25y + 32x = 51z$
- d $e = mc^2$
- e H_2O
- f the countries of the world
- g the 15th century
- h computers
- i spelling

Constitution

Moment, instant
In the presence

Surname, nickname, family, name, title

Traditional

I like **traditional** food.

Self-help

I make the **self-help** to learn English. Simply, I study English alone every day.

To increase = to multiply

Feeling = sensation.

remembrance

Obstacles = difficulties

Buying = purchase

Milk teeth

Clever, intelligent, **sagacious**

Ruthless

To make something ruthless (hard)

Sociable

I'm not feeling very sociable this evening.
Yes. She's a **sociable** person.

Sociology

Snack

to have or to eat a snack.

Hardness = solidity

faith = belief

Except = but

Lesson = example

real = true

Her books are selling well.

We were talking about you last night.

They have been playing in the yard.

She is looking at us

Their children are being noisy. ('behaving noisily')

I am having a party next Sunday evening.

story = tale

life = existence

Sleeping = asleep

- 
- 1 Have you ever visited India?
visited travelled gone to
- 2 I've never been to Spain before.
yet never ever
- 3 Brian has been working at that company since 2004.
has been working is working works
- 4 Congratulations! I've just heard the news!
I already hear I've just heard I'm hearing
- 5 I've been learning Japanese for a year .
a year ago for a year since a year
- 6 James's exam is tomorrow and he has been studying all day.
has been studying studied studies

To arrange = to organize

foreword

time= period, season

Consultation

In religion he was **eclectic**. He tried several churches.

I need a strong drink.

To make mistakes is human nature.

There is somebody waiting for you.

There are two men waiting for you

Sensibility

simplicity

exploration

Answer, reply, response

answer ['ɑːnsə] **reply** [rɪ'plaɪ]

response [rɪ'spɒns]

statue

Hard = harsh

To run away = to escape

To help to escape

development

Wealth n

Wealthy adj

Teenager

Stop. You are a **teenager** girl. So. I haven't the special treatment for you.

Quest, inspection, search

Enjoyment, pleasure

We repeat the **counting**.

When's the wedding?

I don't know when I'll see him **again**

Everything looks **nicer** when the sun is shining.

How can you understand **when** you won't listen.

**English
Vocabulary
in Use**

Things we use in the kitchen

washing-up liquid



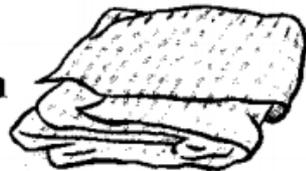
tea towel



saucepan

frying pan

cloth



teapot

kitchen paper/roll



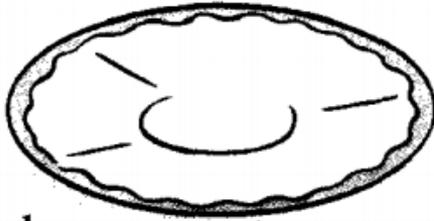
coffee maker



Things we use for eating and drinking



cup



plate

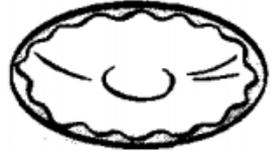


knife

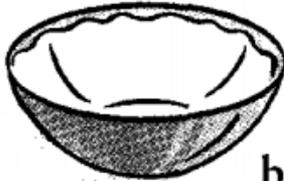


chopsticks

glass



saucer



bowl



fork

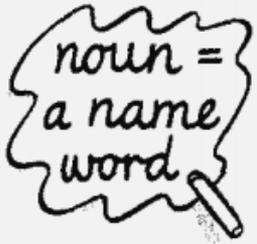


spoon

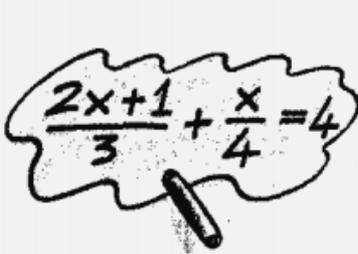
mug



Subjects



English



mathematics
(maths)



art



history



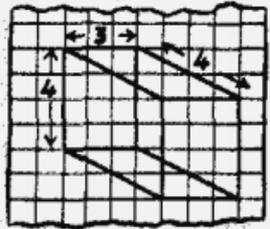
geography



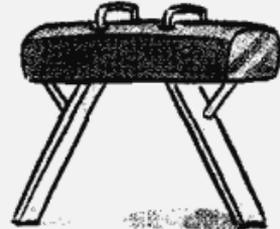
biology



information
technology



technical
drawing



physical
education



chemistry



languages



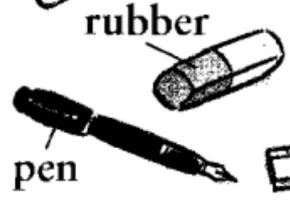
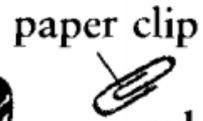
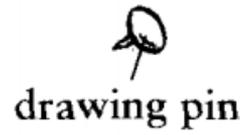
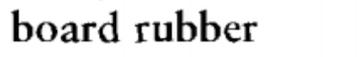
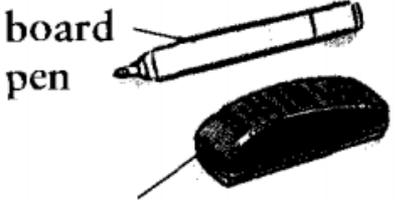
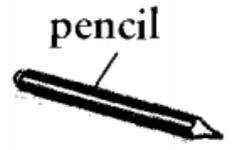
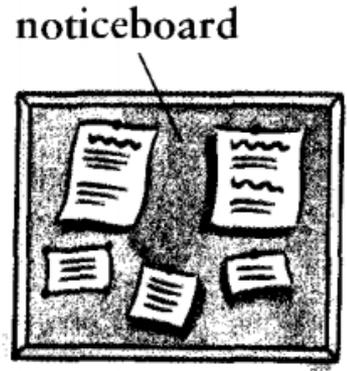
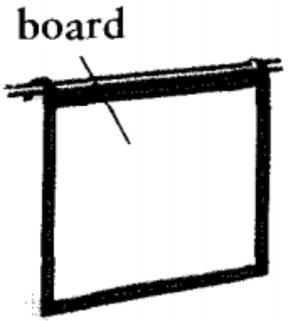
physics



music

Sociology

B Useful things



board

noticeboard

cassette

piece of paper

pencil

textbook

board pen

crayon

board rubber

drawing pin

tape recorder

paper clip

rubber

pencil sharpener

notebook

pen

ruler

desk

video recorder

computer

weather

Cloudy

It is very **cold** today.

We can't go out

It is very **hot**. I can't go out

Cloudy

In the morning you might look out of the window to find the sun shining.



we spend time like we spend money and we can buy time, too

Which words can go with *weather*? Use a dictionary.

wet high big dry warm happy cool rainy dark

wet

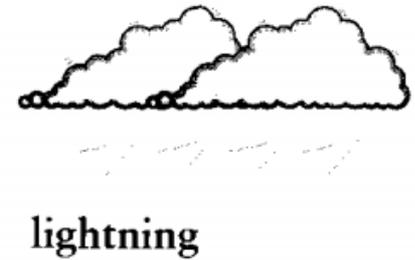
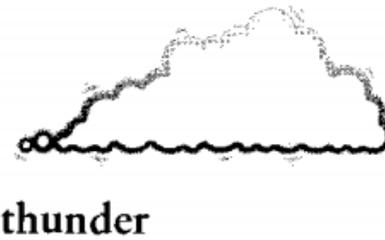
weather

weather



Weather

Types of weather



noun

adjective

sun

sunny

rain

rainy

wind

windy

cloud

cloudy

snow

snowy

fog

foggy

thunder

thundery

lightning

—

It is light



It is getting dark



It is dark

temperature hot, warm, cool, cold

How's the weather today?

It's rainy.

How was the weather yesterday?

It was sunny.

How will the weather be?

It'll be hot.

How's the weather going to be?

It's going to be snowy.

Is it cold today. Yes it is.

Was it warm yesterday.

No, it wasn't . It was chilly.

Will it be cloudy tomorrow? Yes it will.

Is it going to be windy tomorrow. No it won't.

Which gives more light, the **sun** or the **moon**?

Dedication

I present my **dedications** to my family and my friends.

Salutation

Salute

1. military salute.
2. I hate military salute.

civilization

1. **Look the civilization life of women in Guelma.**
2. The **majority** of women in Guelma live in a bad civilization.

1. I am calling to see **if you** and Selma are free this Thursday.
2. Well, **if you** and Selma are free I would like to invite you to dinner.
3. I am free that evening.
4. Can we meet at 7:00 p.m.
5. Yes, where shall we meet?

Ablution

We wash my hands three times until the wrist. We begin by the right. Then I rinse out the mouth three times, and ,.....I don't know

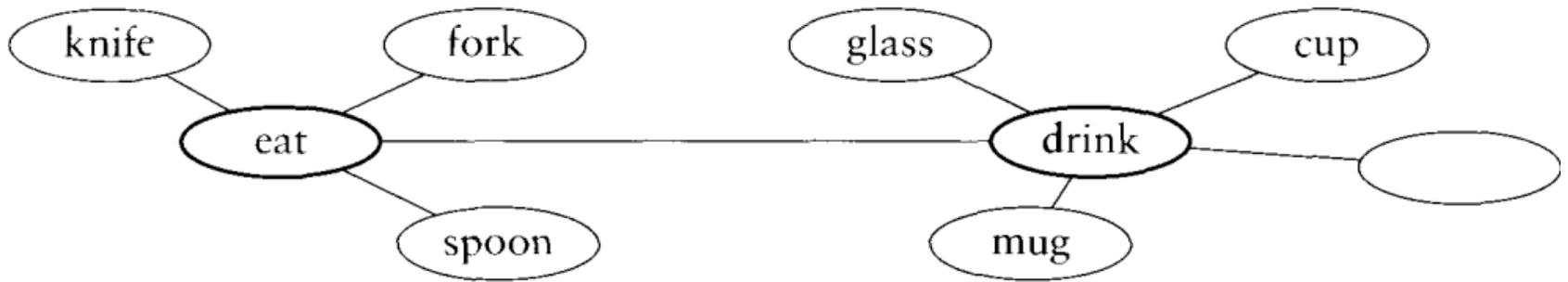
food

1. Rice
2. Spaghetti
3. Butter
4. Bread
5. Milk
6. Water
7. Tea
8. Coffee
9. Juice
10. Meat
11. soup

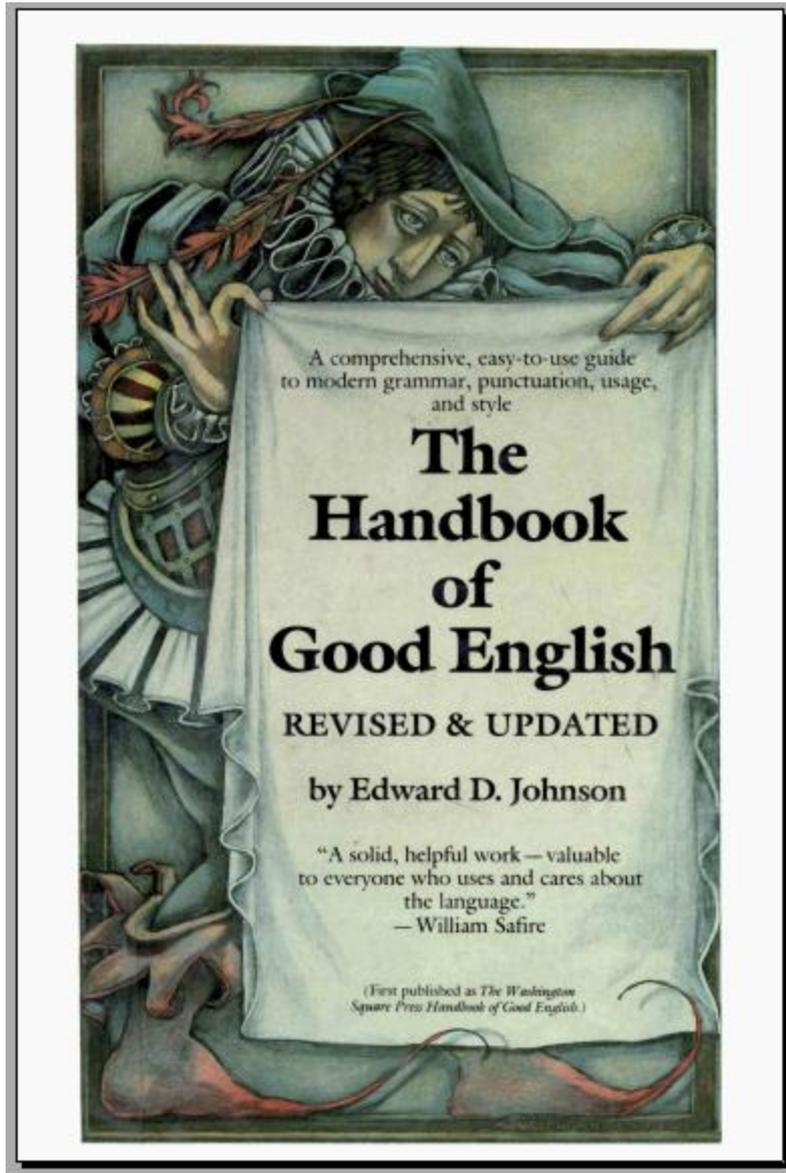
I like **traditional** food



Please, Give me the spoon, madam.



Clothes
&
Clothing



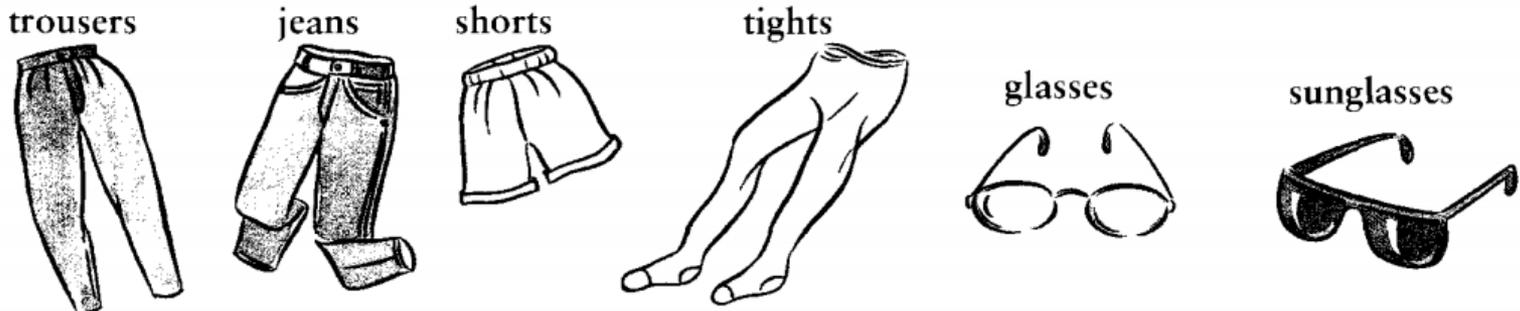
Clothes

Clothes

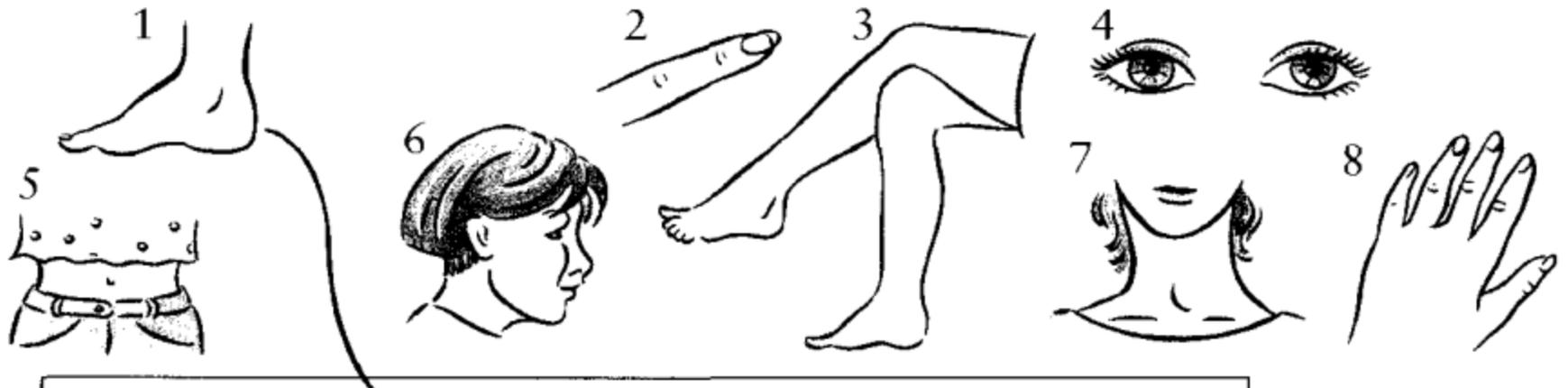


Plural words

These words are always plural in English. They need a plural verb.



Match the part of the body with the item of clothing.

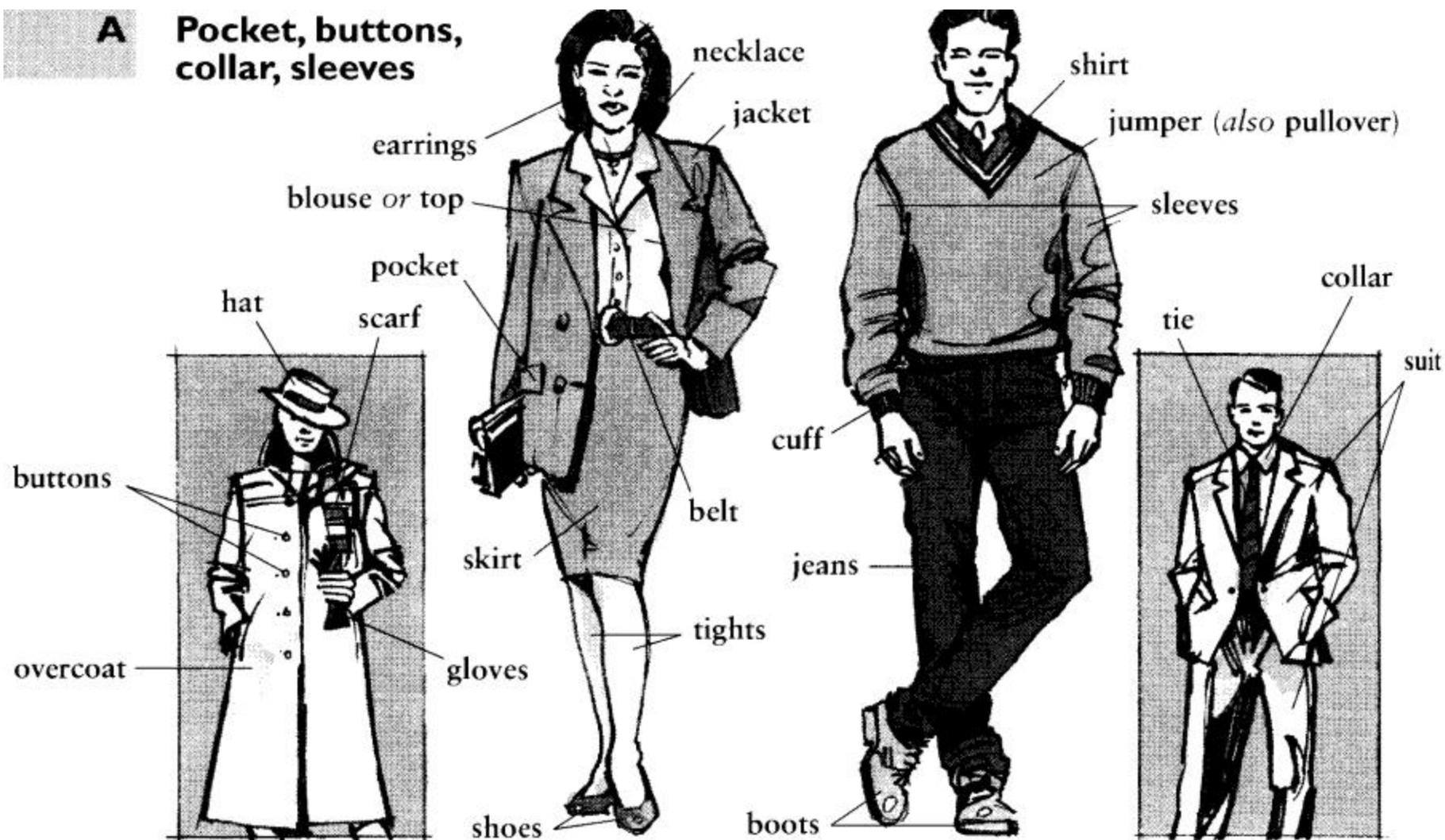


scarf belt shoe hat glove glasses ring tights

In the morning you get dressed or put your clothes on. At night you get undressed or take your clothes off.



A Pocket, buttons, collar, sleeves



Note: Some of these words are plural nouns, e.g. jeans and trousers. See Unit 27.

Hat

Coat

Jacket

Scarf

Gloves

Shoes

Boots

Suit

Socks

Watch

Shirt

Dress

Ring

Belt

Underwear

Tie

Skirt

Glasses

Sunglasses

Jeans

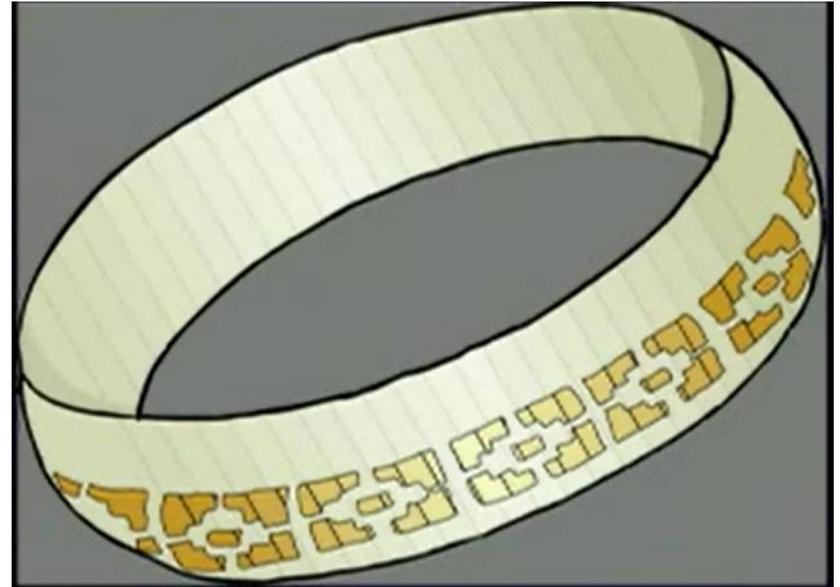
T-shirt



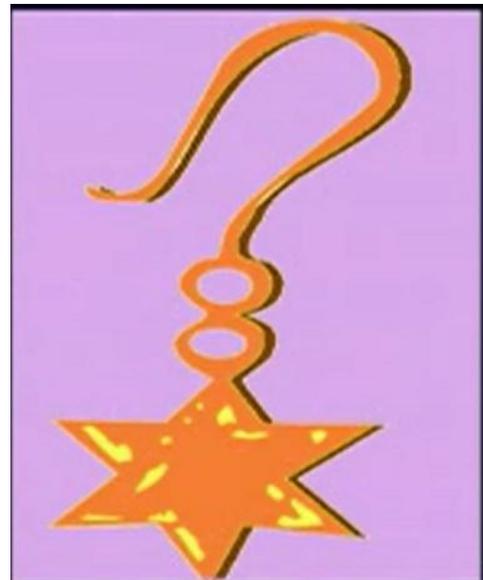
umbrella



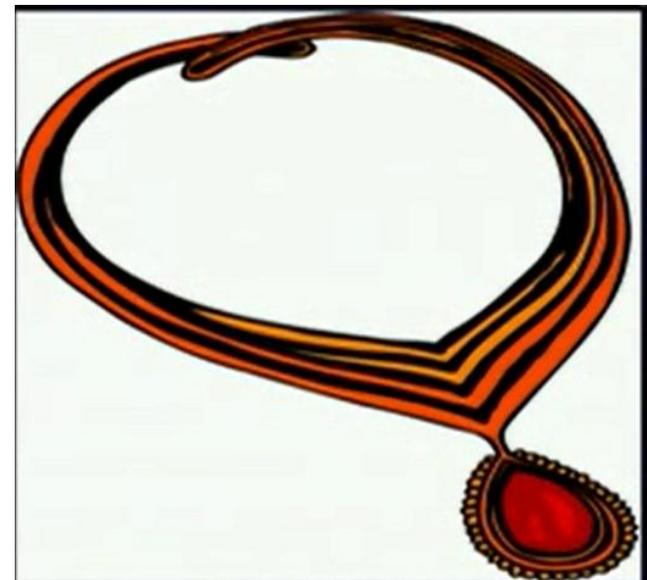
belt



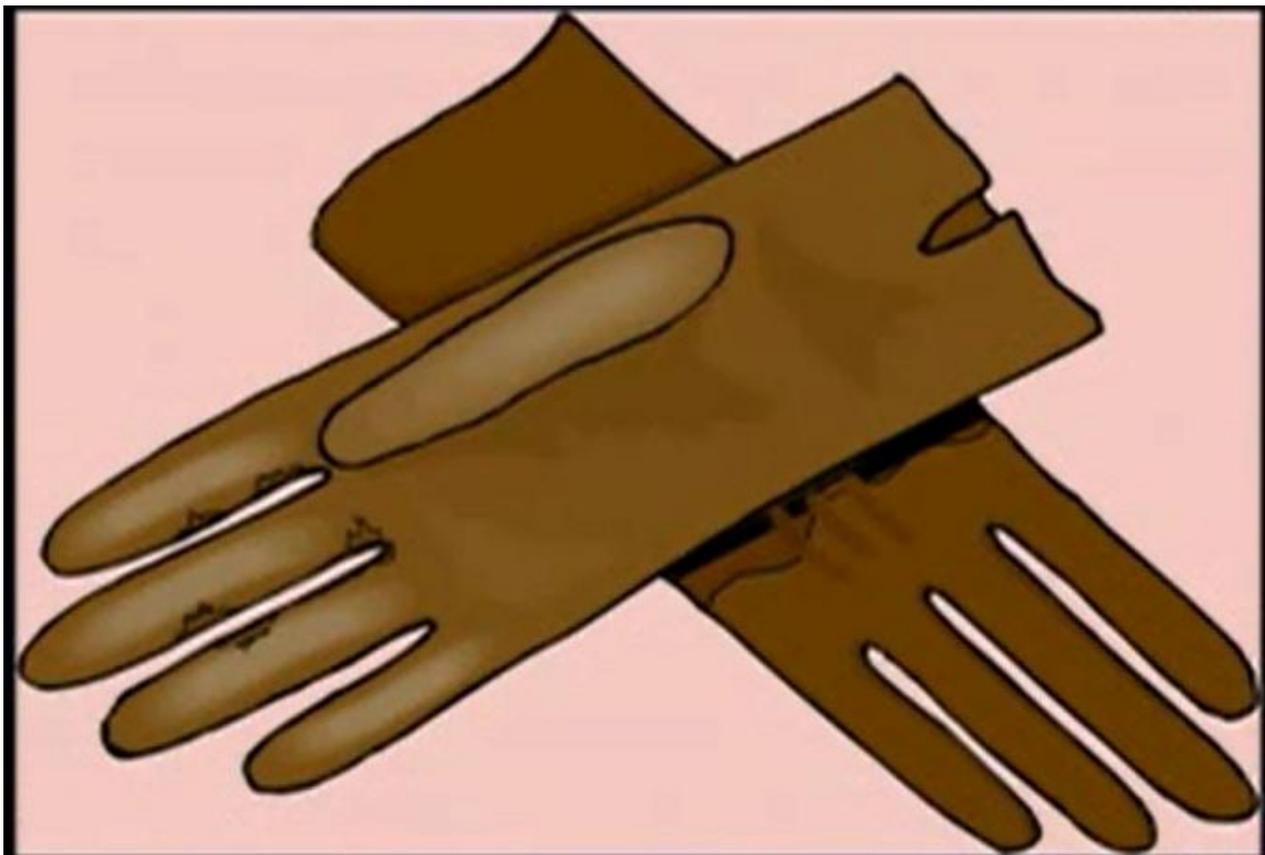
bracelet



earrings



necklace



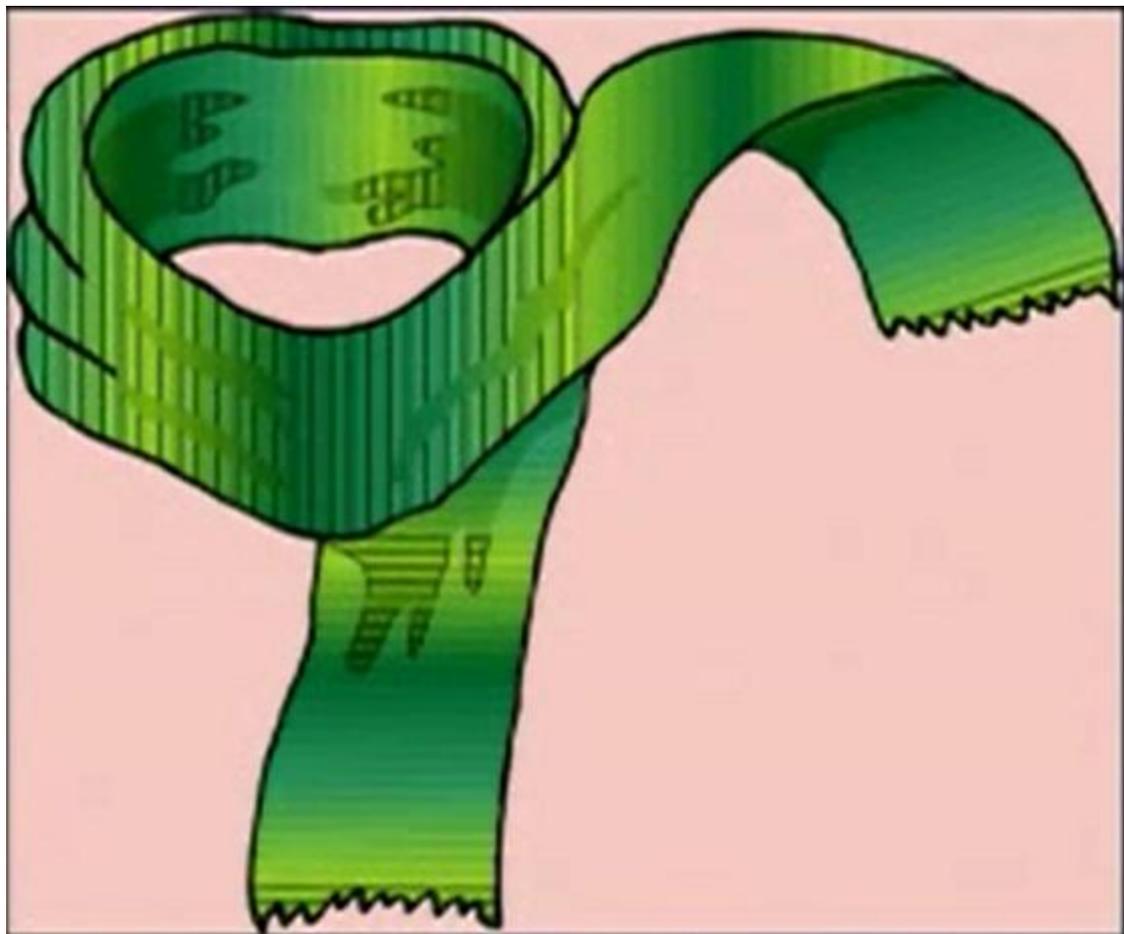
gloves



hat



ring



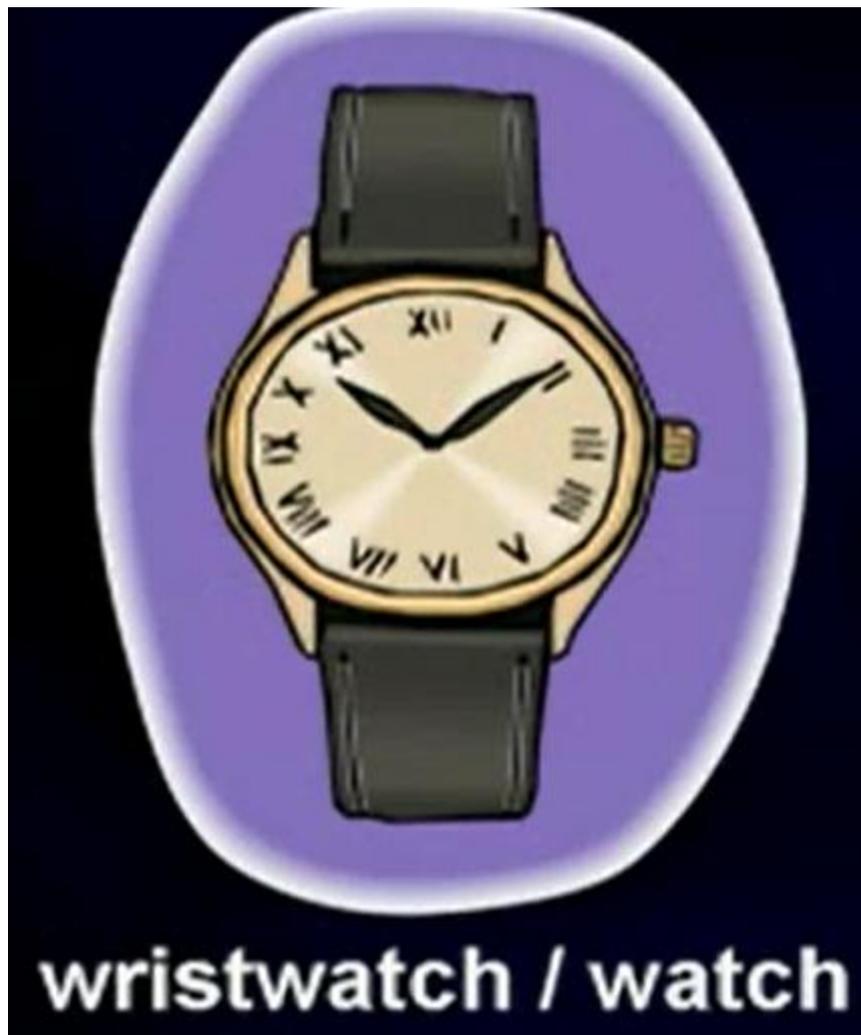
scarf



tie

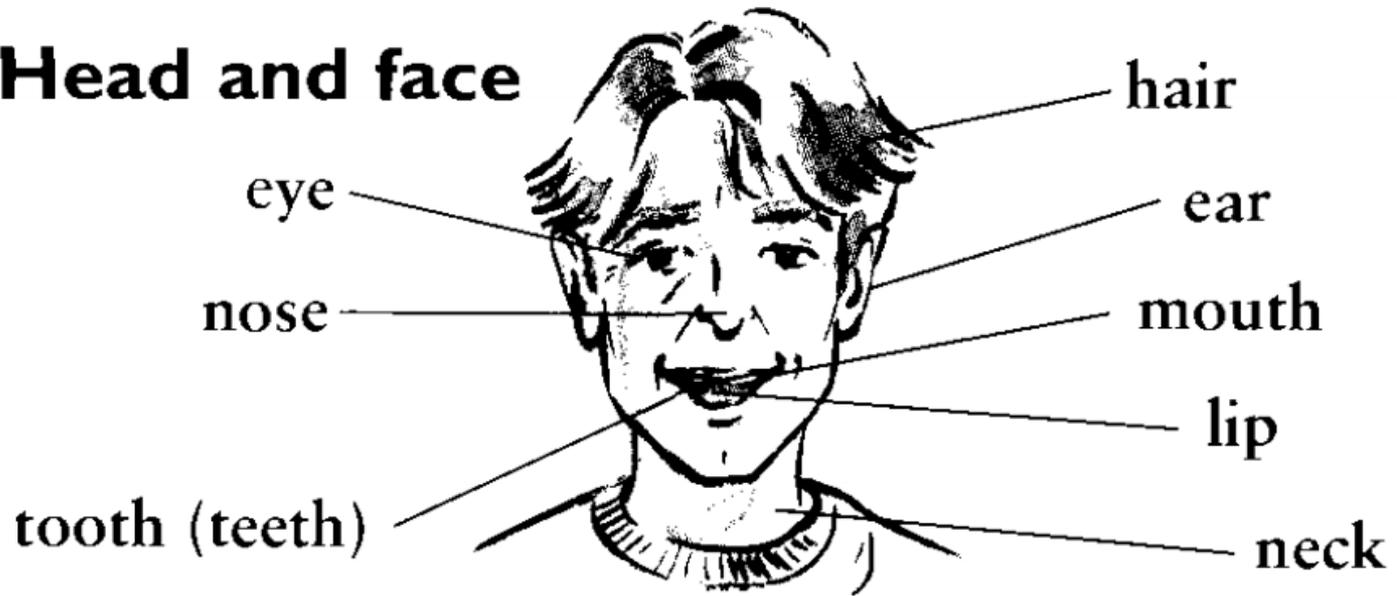


blouse



wristwatch / watch

Head and face







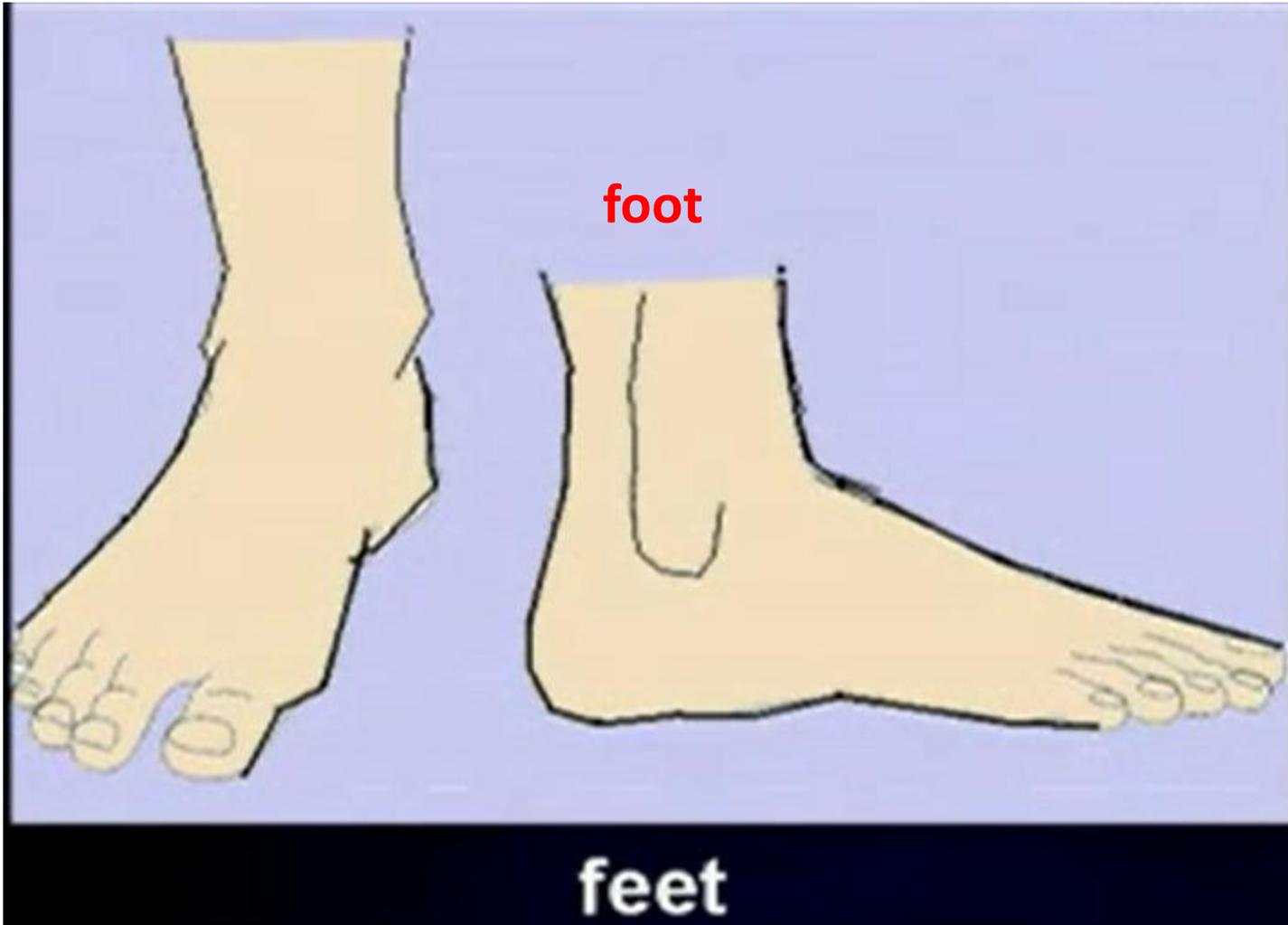


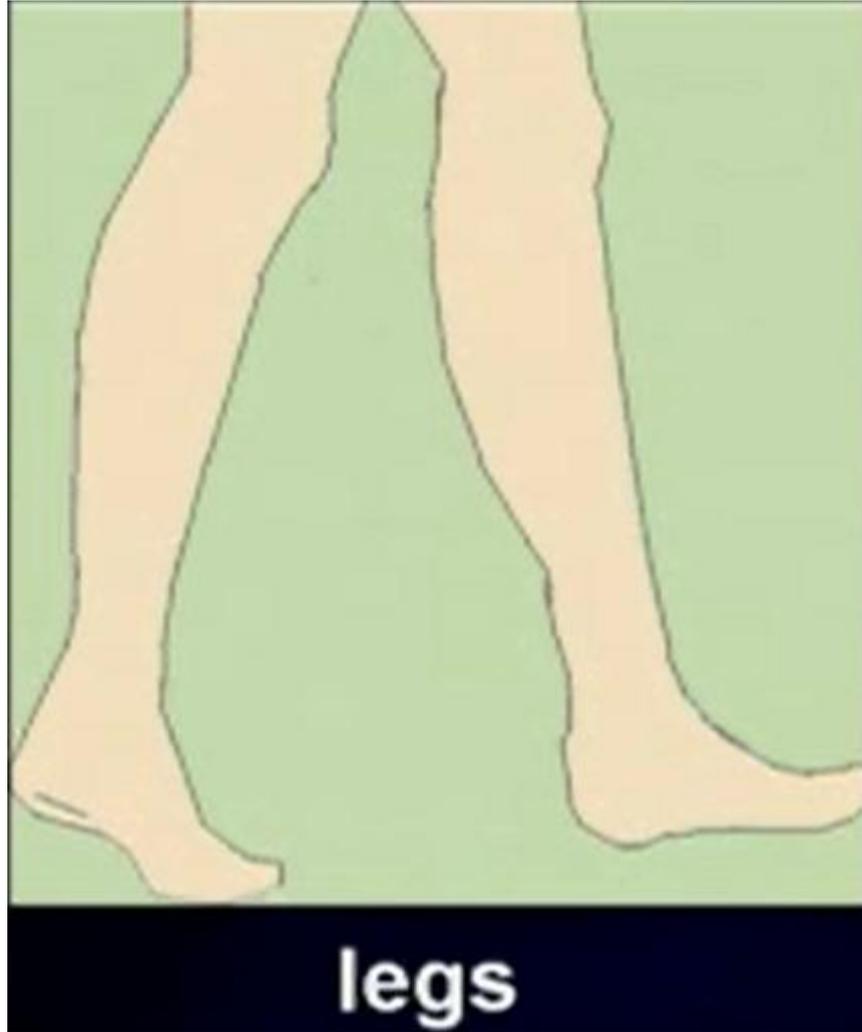
Woman has a long hair
and a tallest **tongue**.

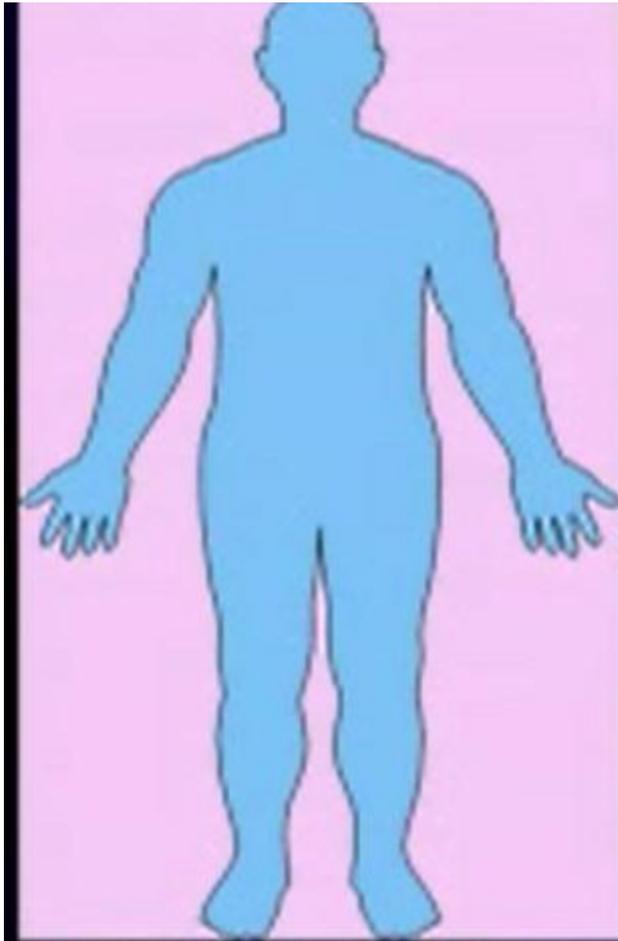


One tooth, three teeth

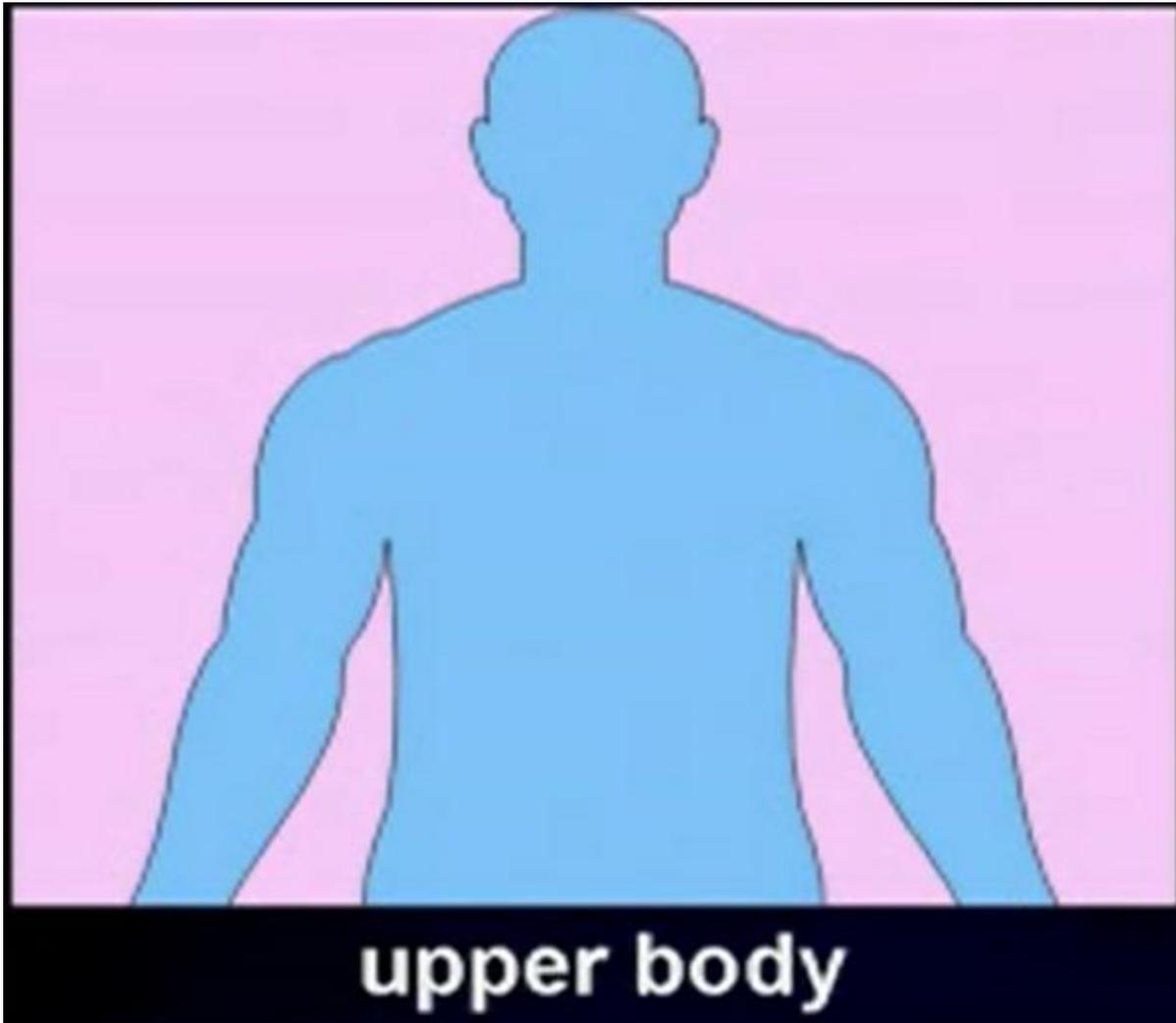








whole body

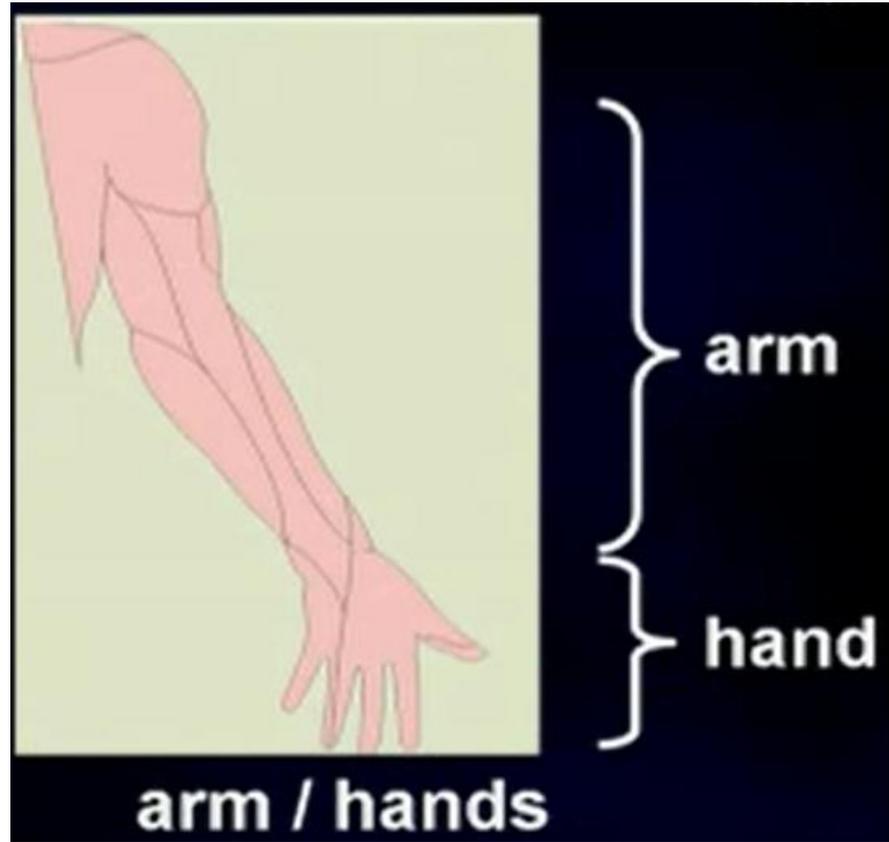


upper body



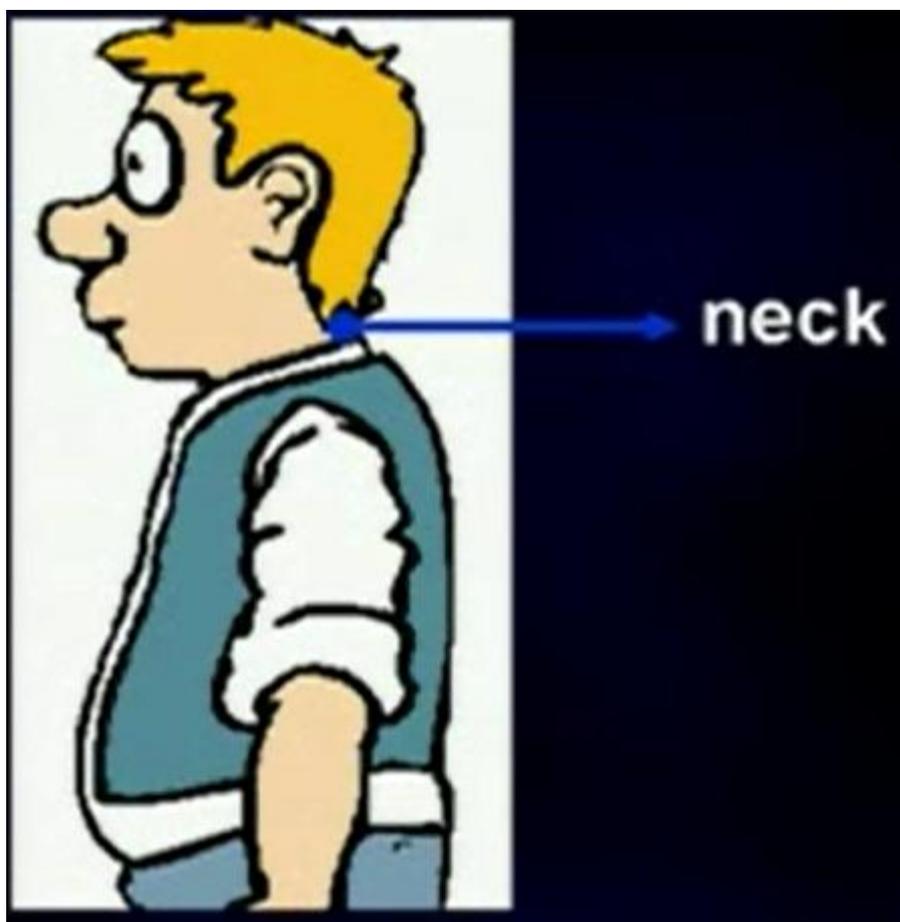








she has good skin



Don't hit babies on the
head.

It is completely above
my head.





No don't sigh after a moment the laugh returns
and the fire that in your **chest** becomes cold.







bottom



clothing







skirt



frock









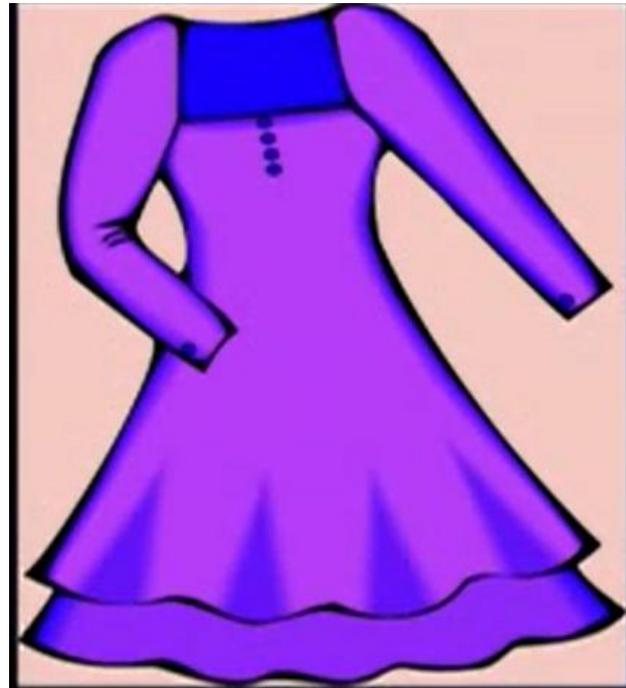
boots



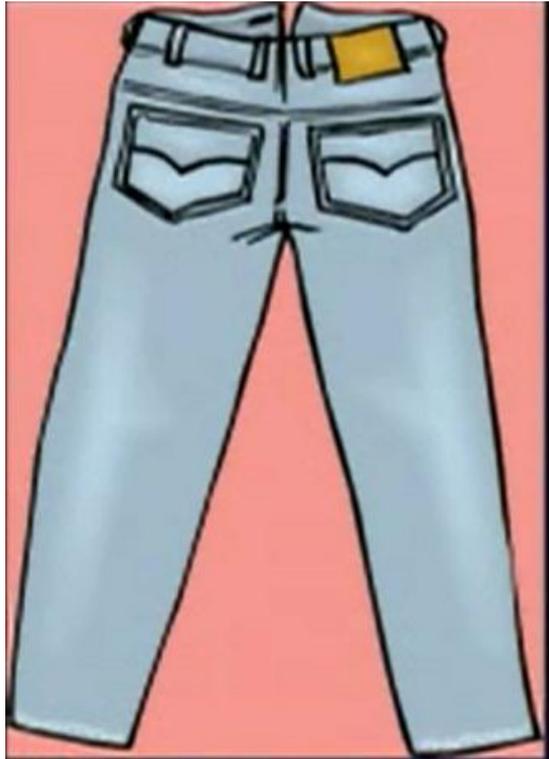
boots



coat



dress



jeans



nightgown



pajamas



pants



shirt



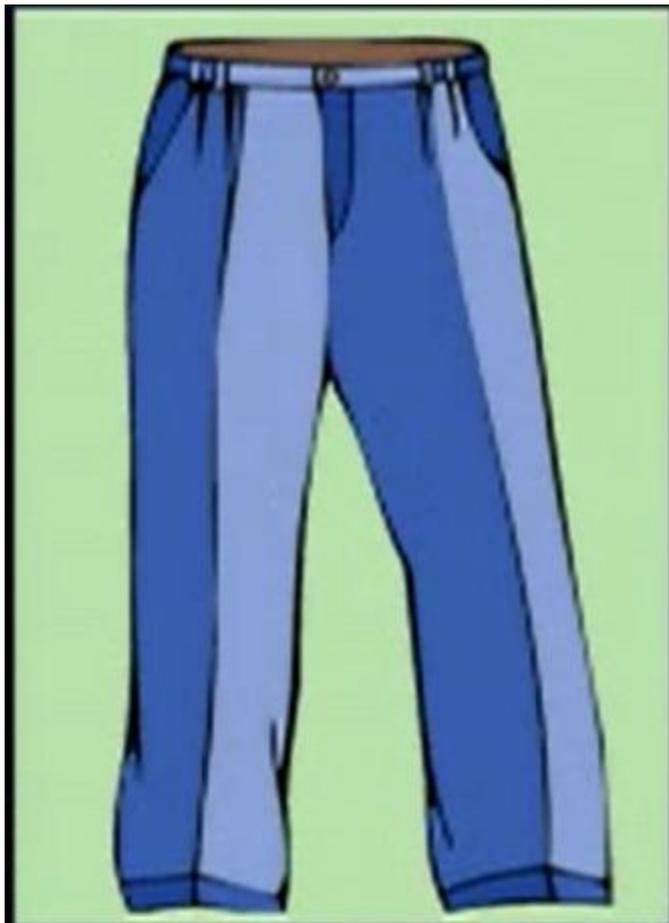
shoes



shorts



skirt



slacks



socks



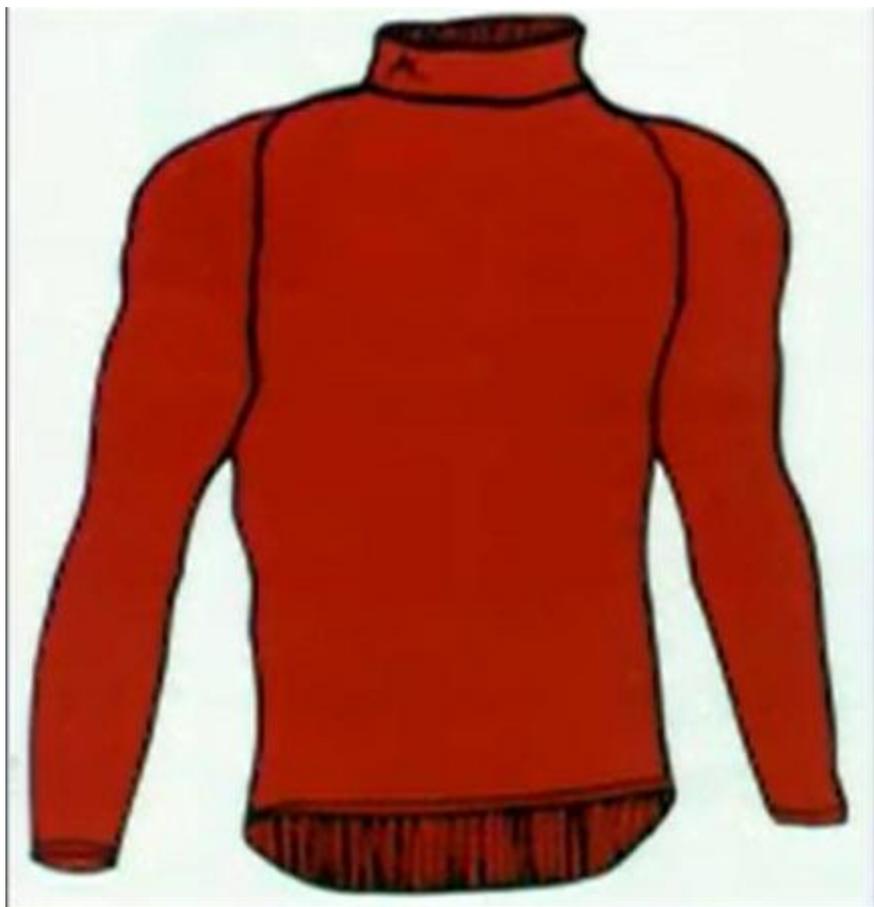
suit



sweater



T- shirt



turtleneck shirt



tuxedo







slippers





food



I am sorry to **disturb** you.

My car is **full option**.

I am going to the shop **to get** a newspaper.

I'm getting tired, I want **to go to** bed.

When you get to New York, ring me. Ok. Give me your number.

S an Dj was getting married in **august 4.**

2005

Bedroom



bed

bedside lamp



cupboard



mirror



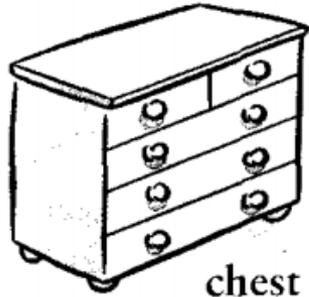
hairbrush



comb



dressing table

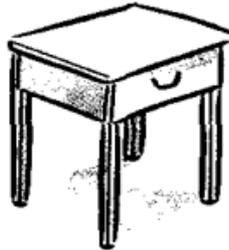


chest
of drawers

alarm clock



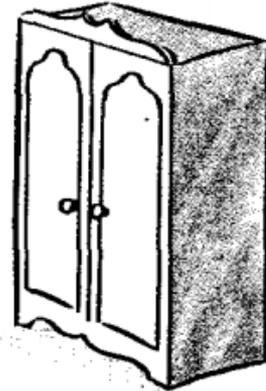
bedside table



nightdress/nightie



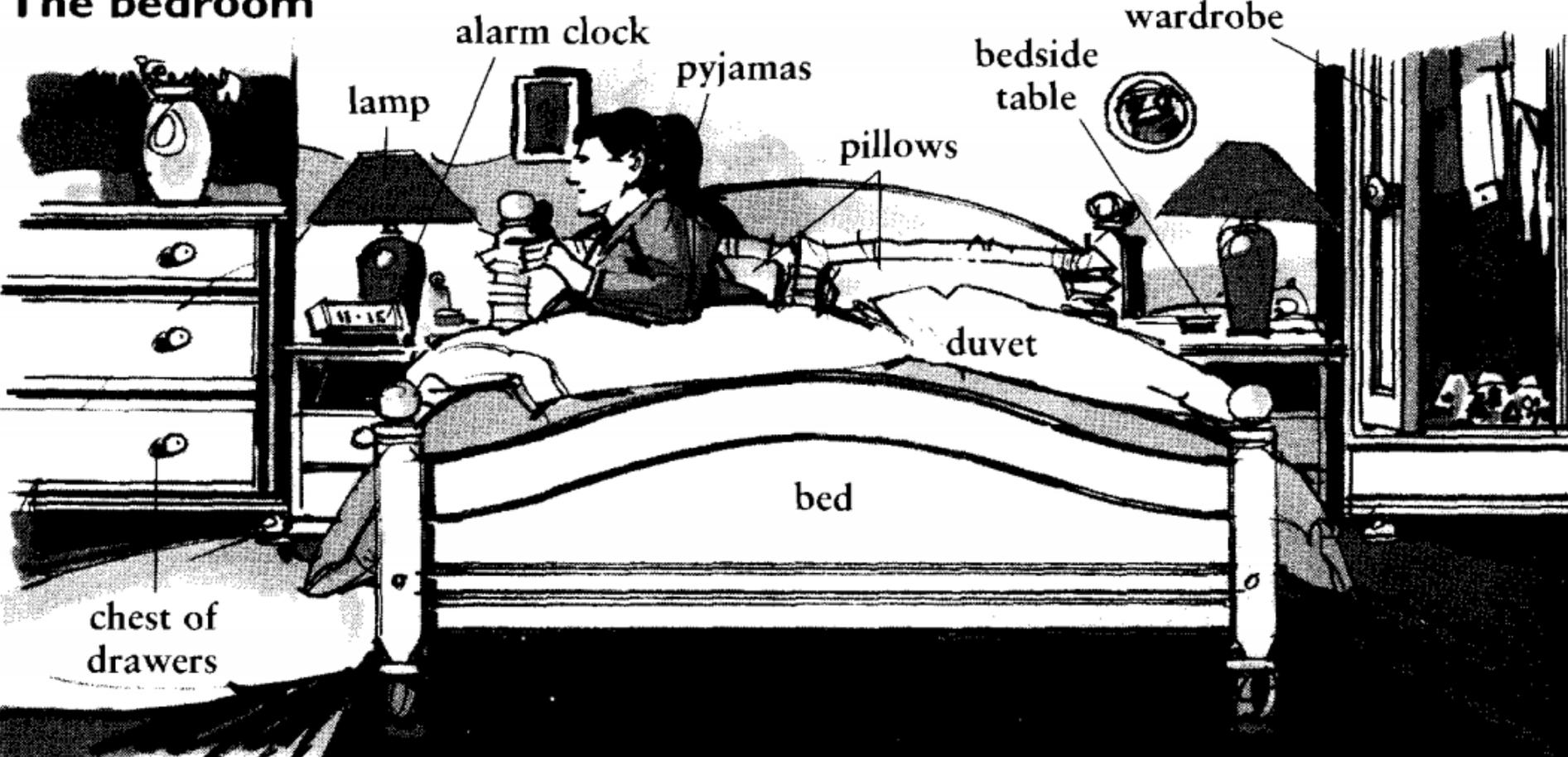
wardrobe



pyjamas



The bedroom



alarm clock

wardrobe

lamp

pyjamas

bedside table

pillows

duvet

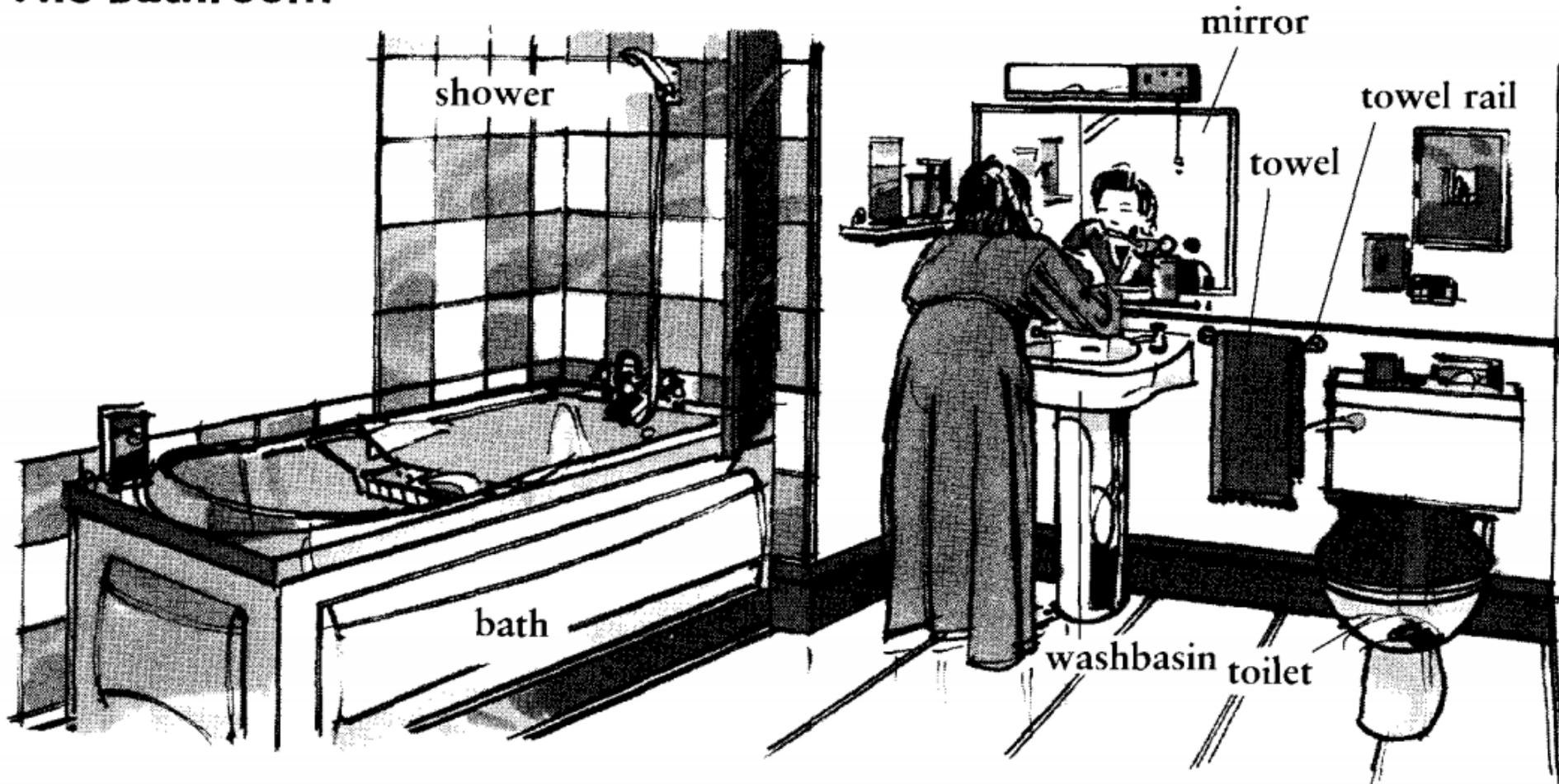
bed

chest of drawers

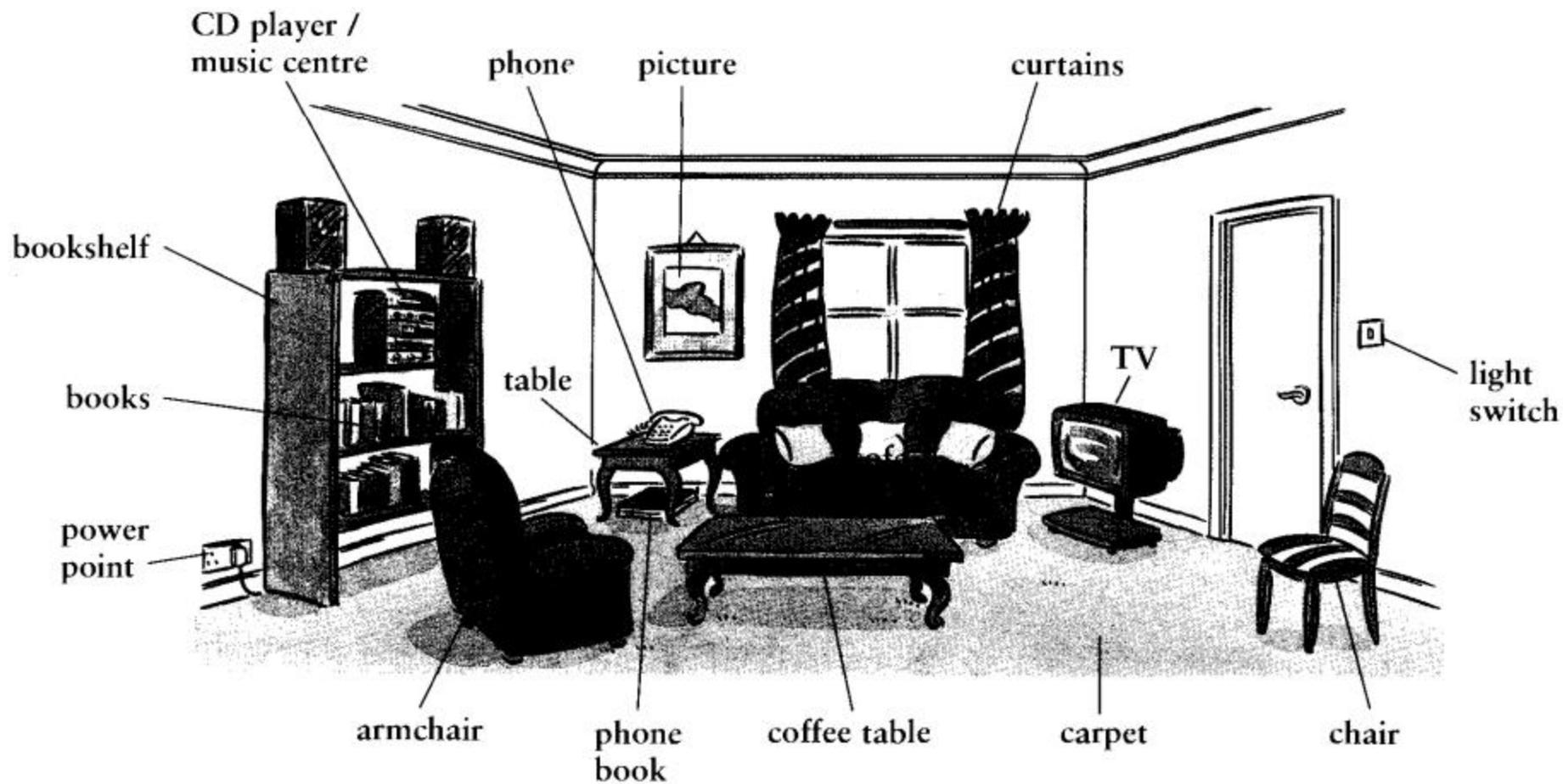
Bathroom



The bathroom



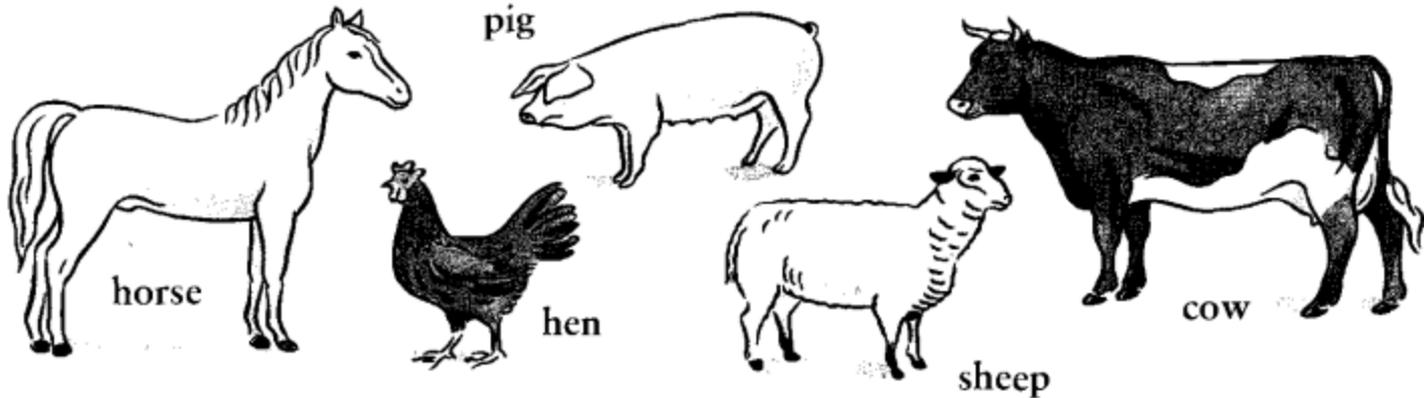
A Things in the living room



Animals

Farm animals

Farm animals



animal

produce

baby

horse

foal

cow

milk, leather, meat (beef)

calf

sheep

wool, meat (lamb)

lamb

pig

meat (pork, bacon, ham)

piglet

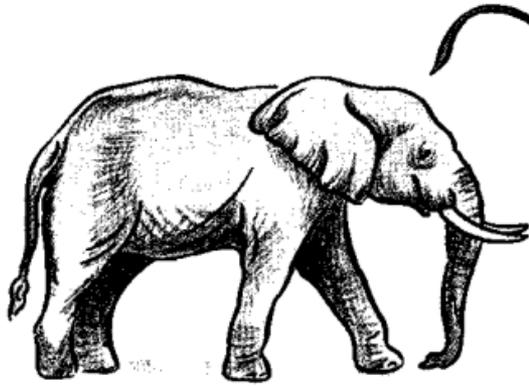
hen

eggs, meat (chicken)

chick



Wild or zoo animals



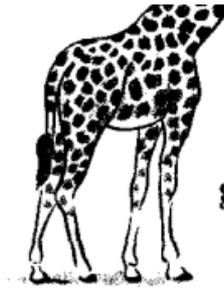
elephant



monkey



tiger



giraffe



snake



lion



Sheep



horse

birds



eagle





Ape

1. I saw an **ape** at the zoo.
2. Oh, it's a big **ape**.
3. **Apes** eat like human.



Which came first, the **chicken** or the **egg**?



Chicken

1. Which came first, the **chicken** or the **egg**?
2. it's a **chicken** and egg situation.
3. Richard check the **chicken** in the kitchen.



Cat, cats

The game of cat and mouse.



Bear

he's like a bear with a **sore** head.

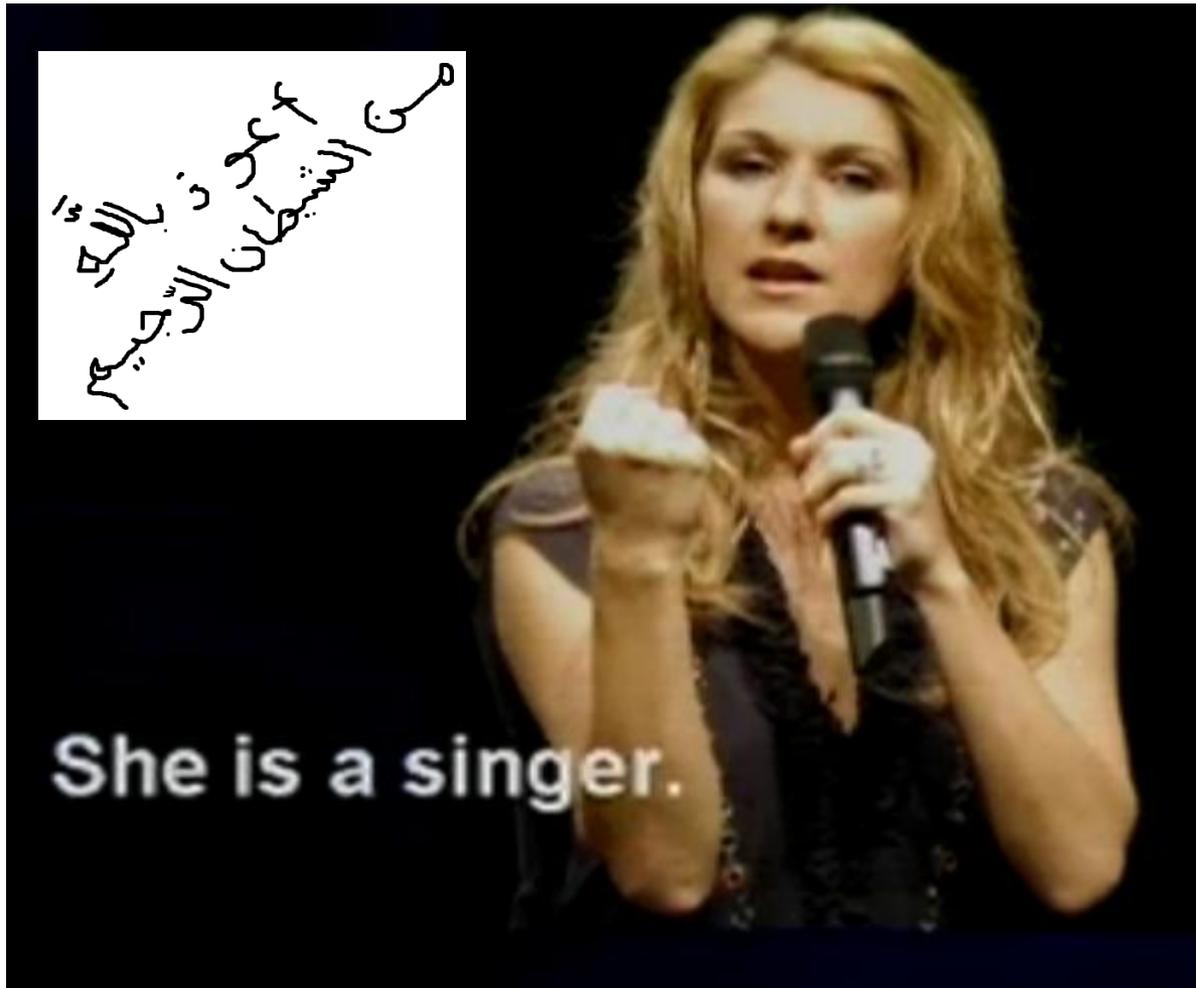


Frog

1. A **frog** is a kind of animal that can live in water or on land.
2. Frank found four **frogs** laughing on the floor.

Do you know this singer?

Yes. She is from Canada. She **sings** by English and French. She has a **kind** voice. But she's very **thin**.



Algerian politician **Abdelaziz Bouteflika**

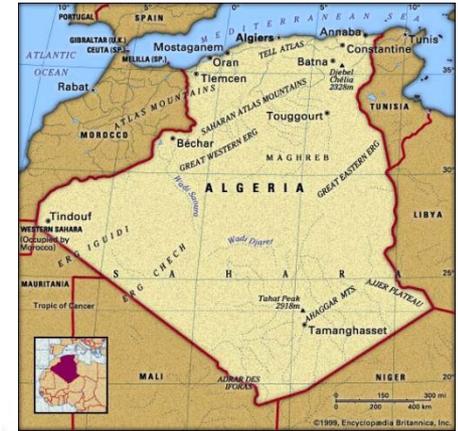


Photo without comment!



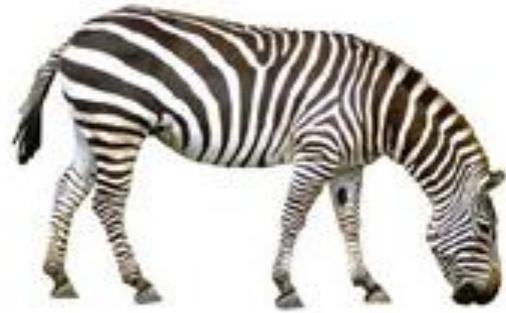
donkey

1. A **donkey** is an animal like a horse.
2. The donkey-work.



Tiger

1. A **tiger** is a kind of wild animal.
2. she **fought** like a tiger.



zebra

.....

Health problems

Everyday problems

Have you got an aspirin? I've got a headache.



I've got toothache. I need to go to the dentist.



I'm going to bed with a hot drink. I've got a cold.



I fell really bad.

He is really bad

My mother is really bad



I feel sick.



I have a headache.



I have a backache.



I have a toothache.



I have an earache.



I have a stomachache.

I have a fever.

I have a high
temperature. (38+)

I have a cold.



I have a sore throat.

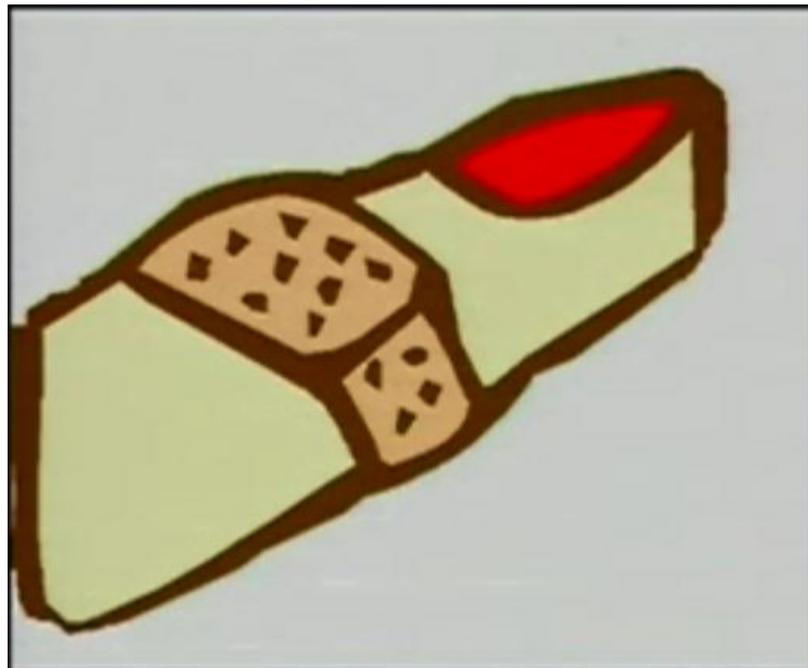
I have a sore eye.

I have a sore hand.





I have the flu.



I broke my finger.



What's the matter?

Or what's wrong?



sore [sɔːr]

What's wrong?

He has a sore
throat.

throat   [θrəʊt]





I have a headache.
Take some aspirin.



I have a toothache.
Go to a dentist.



I have a stomachache.

Go to a doctor.

1. a headache

a. call the doctor

2. a cold

b. call the dentist

3. a fever

c. drink tea with honey

4. a backache

d. go to bed

5. a sore throat

e. drink a lot of water

6. a stomachache

f. eat yogurt

7. an earache

g. take aspirin

8. a broken arm

h. drink milk

i. have some chicken soup

j. take vitamins

Naughty

You mustn't do that again that's very naughty.

I have to ask you **some intimate** questions.

I must buy some **furniture**

Cheek

To dance **cheek** to **cheek**.

Framer

I am going to M'sila to see my **framer** and we will investigate some properties about nonstandard number theory. But Studying is hard work.

I'd

I'd like a drink of water. Please.

Separate adj

1. The cup broke into three separate pieces.
2. In my school, the older children are separate from the younger ones
3. Men and women are stayed in separate rooms.

To separate verb

My parents separated when I was a baby.

Sins & Crimes

Foundling

1. You are a **foundling** person because you are **racist**.
2. You're **dog**. You are a kind of **donkey**.
3. Don't speak to me.
4. You are going to find **troubles**.
5. Do you want about **fighting**?.

Shame on your native and **halt** making
wickedness

Frankly, in our country Algeria, I haven't any confidence and any trust for every person that he makes or practices politics.

Oh you are practicing politics. US

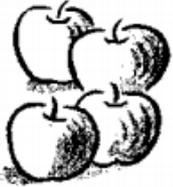
Oh you are practising politics .

I am going to Guelma to see bath of the **damned**.
Also, called Hammam Meskhoutine.

1. **To slit** : I **slit** the envelope open with a knife.
2. **Have known** Dina for a long time. Yes, we always **played** together.
3. It's dangerous to drive a car at night without any light.

<i>prefix</i>	<i>meaning</i>	<i>examples</i>
ex (+noun)	was but not now	ex-wife, ex-president
half (+noun or adjective)	50% of something	half-price, half-hour
in, im (+adjective)	not	informal, impossible
non (+adjective or noun)	not	non-smoking
pre	before	pre-school
re (+verb)	again	redo, rewrite
un (+adjective or noun)	not	unhappy, unsafe

What is countable?



apples



shoes



plates

COUNTABLE (You can count them: 4 apples, 2 shoes)



sugar



money



luggage

UNCOUNTABLE (You can't count it: NOT 3 luggages)

Can I have **three apples** and **some sugar**, please?

Are these **shoes** yours? Is this **luggage** yours?

Daily actions

**Every
day**

Things we do every day



I wake up



get up



go to the
bathroom



have a shower

Things we do every day



I wake up

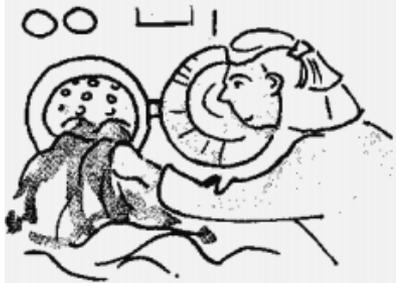


get up



go to the
bathroom

Sometimes I ...



wash clothes



clean the house



go for a walk



write letters

make ...a mistake...

do ...the housework...

have ...a rest...

Give

I'll give you a ring this evening. (= phone you this evening)

Could you give me a hand? (= help me)

Please give my regards to Paul. (= please say 'hello' to him from me) *or*

If you see Paul, please give him my regards.

Phone or write to me sometimes.

Have/had/had

What can you have?

You can ...

- 1 have lunch
- 2 have a party
- 3 have a lesson
- 4 have a cup of tea/coffee
- 5 have a shower



Answer the questions about *yourself*.

- 1 Have you got any brothers or sisters?
- 2 What time do you have English lessons?
- 3 What do you have for lunch?
- 4 Do you have to go to lessons every day?
- 5 How many pens have you got with you now?
- 6 Do you always have a party on your birthday?
- 7 What do you usually have when you go to a restaurant?

Correct the mistakes in these sentences. Look at the example.

1 I have to ~~make~~ my homework. I have to do my homework.

2 Can I make a photo of you?

3 He's 25 but he never makes his own washing. He takes his dirty clothes to his mother's.

4 What do you think, yes or no? We must do a decision today.

5 I have to take an appointment with the doctor. Do you have her phone number?

6 I do mistakes when I speak English.

7 Are you making an exam tomorrow?

Come back and come home

Come back means 'return to *this place here*'.

She went away for three days. She **came back** yesterday. (She is here again.)

Come back is often used with **from**.

They **came back from** Italy yesterday.

Come home is similar; 'home' is 'here' for the person speaking.

MOTHER: What time did you **come home** last night?

ANNE: Oh, about eleven o'clock.

MOTHER: What! Eleven! That's much too late!

Where does this road go?

What do you do?

What do you **do**? (= What is your job?)

I'm a student. *or* I'm a teacher. *or* I'm an engineer.

What **does** your wife **do**? (= What's your wife's job?)

She's a doctor. *or* She's a secretary. *or* She's a mechanic.

Did you **do the washing** this morning?

No, I'm going to **do it** later.

Our company **does a lot of business with** the USA.

The homework exercise is very difficult – just **do your best**.

**Every
day**

1. Difficulties
2. Boundaries
3. Mourning
4. Wisdom
5. Roughness
6. Harshness
7. Wicked
8. Society
9. Equality
10. Freedom
11. transparency

I hit my wife every year.

I get up at seven every morning

At eight, I go out of the house.

Then. I wait for the **bus**.

At nine, I must be at my office. I leave the office at five **p.m**

I **go back** home at six o'clock.

But today Sunday, I got up at nine.

I **put on** my clothes, and went out at ten.

Then I got **into** my car and drove away.

proverbs

proverb

paraphrase

Don't count your chickens
before they're hatched.



Don't anticipate the future
too much.

Don't put all your eggs in one basket.



Don't invest all your efforts.
or attention in just one thing.

Never judge a book by its cover.



Don't judge people/things by
their outward appearance.

Never look a gift horse in the mouth.



Never refuse good fortune when
it is there in front of you.

Take care of the pence and the
pounds will take care of themselves.



Take care of small sums of money
and they will become large sums.

Every one must die.

There is no smoke without fire

Strike while the iron is hot

- No news is good news.
- East or west. My house is the best.
- Look before you leap.

After storm comes the sunshine

God helps those who help them
selves

A little is better than none

Broken heart will never forgive.

Like father like son

Every picture tells a story.

Many hands make light work.

People should help each other.

- Money makes money.
- You can't judge a book by its cover.
- Every picture tells a story.

**Twice in the moment,
once in the minute
and never in an hour.**

Speech is silver but silence is golden.

Silence is golden.

Like father, like son.

You're only young once.

Might is right.

Money talks.

Write what the people said using Reported Speech.





As recently as
Fair and unfair

- 1 possible impossible
- 2 comfortable
- 3 safe
- 4 formal
- 5 smoking
- 6 happy
- 7 polite
- 8 correct

Love

like

hate

Feelings

Love / like / hate



love



like



don't like
(dislike)



hate

Happy / sad / tired



Birth, marriage and death

Birth

Diana had a baby yesterday.
It was born at 1.15 yesterday morning.
It weighed 3 kilograms.



She's going **to have** a baby.

Marriage

If you do not have a partner, you are **single**.

If you have a husband or wife, you are **married**.

If your husband or wife dies, you are **widowed**.

If your marriage breaks up, you are **separated/divorced** (the marriage has legally ended).

The wedding



Bill and Sarah got married.
Sarah got married to Bill. [NOT ~~with~~ Bill]
They (got) married in church.
They went on honeymoon to Italy.
They were married for twenty years.

Death

Then Bill became ill.
He died last year.
He died of a heart attack.
Bill is dead.

The funeral



Find a word or phrase opposite which means ...

- 1 the name for a woman on her wedding day. *bride*
- 2 the name for a man on his wedding day.
- 3 what you are if you haven't got a partner.
- 4 to be X kilograms.
- 5 what you are if your marriage has legally ended.
- 6 a religious service for a dead person.
- 7 a holiday after a wedding.
- 8 what you are if your husband or wife dies.

Letter- writing

Dear sir,

I have a great honour to write to you this letter.

Hoping that you will give my request favourable consideration.

Algerian politician **Abdelaziz Bouteflika**

Born March 2, 1937, Oujda, Mor. Moroccan-born Algerian politician who became president of [Algeria](#) in 1999.

Bouteflika's family was from Tlemcen, Alg., and he spent much of his early life in Algeria. In 1957, three years into the Algerian war for independence (1954–62), Bouteflika joined the [National Liberation Front](#) (Front de Libération Nationale; FLN) in its fight against French rule. He became an officer in the National Liberation Army (Armée de Libération Nationale; ALN) in 1960. After Algerian independence in 1962, Bouteflika was appointed minister for youth, sports, and tourism, and a year later he was made foreign minister.



Bouteflika participated in the 1965 coup, led by [Houari Boumedienne](#), that removed Algerian Pres. [Ahmed Ben Bella](#) (1963–65) from power and installed Boumedienne. Bouteflika continued to serve as foreign minister in the new government, and, by the time of Boumedienne's death in 1979, Bouteflika seemed well positioned to replace him in the presidency. However, the army instead appointed defense minister Chadli Bendjedid, and soon afterward Bouteflika lost his position as foreign minister. In 1981 corruption charges drove Bouteflika into self-imposed exile.

On his return to Algeria in 1987, he again became a member of the FLN. In 1999 he won the presidency, though the election was marred by claims of rigging and the subsequent withdrawal of the other candidates. As president, Bouteflika focused on rebuilding the country and strengthening Algeria's international reputation. He also granted wide-ranging amnesty to militant Islamist groups within Algeria in an effort to resolve a long-standing civil conflict.

Bouteflika won reelection in 2004. Though his previous efforts to reduce the country's rebel activity and its attendant violence were somewhat successful, during his second term insurgents re-formed as an arm of [al-Qaeda](#) and were responsible for a number of suicide bombings. In 2005 Bouteflika experienced health problems, leading to continued speculation about his physical well-being. Nevertheless, he was elected to a third term in 2009, made possible by a change to Algeria's constitution, which had previously limited the president to two terms. The election, in which Bouteflika was said to have received more than 90 percent of the vote, was harshly criticized by opposition groups, who claimed the poll was marred by widespread fraud and voter intimidation.

Several

1. I've **read** this book **several** times.
2. **Several** letters arrived this morning.
3. If you need a girl of marriage, there are **several** on the mathematics department **especially** in the class of master **one**. But I don't know which kind do you prefer?.

especially

1. The beach is beautiful, **especially** in summer.

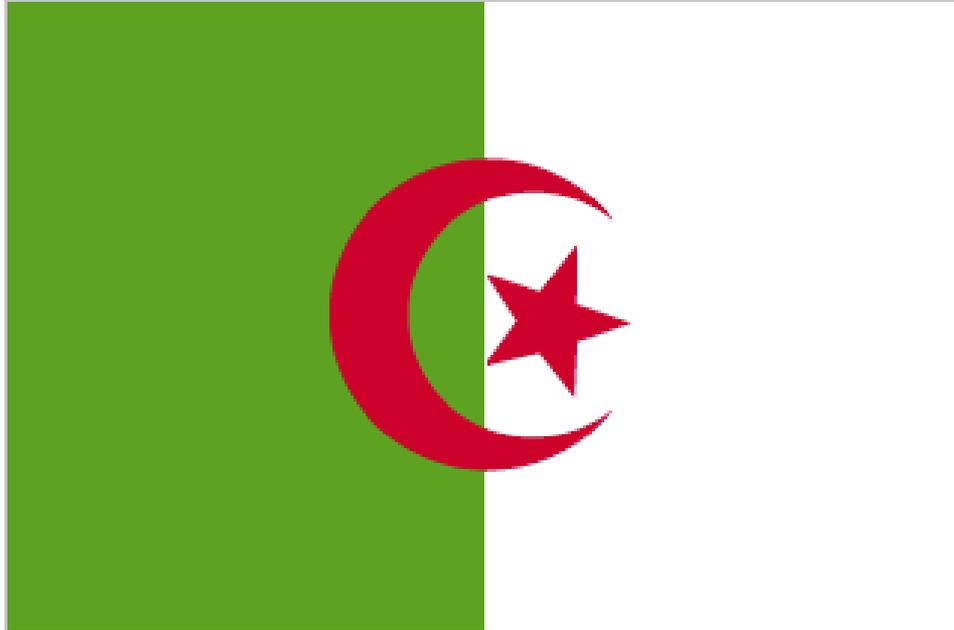


He
(take) a picture.



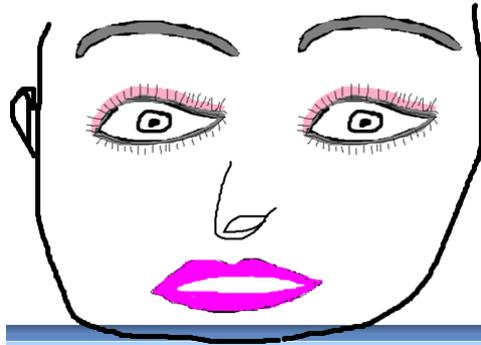
He
(take) a picture.

Flag of Algeria

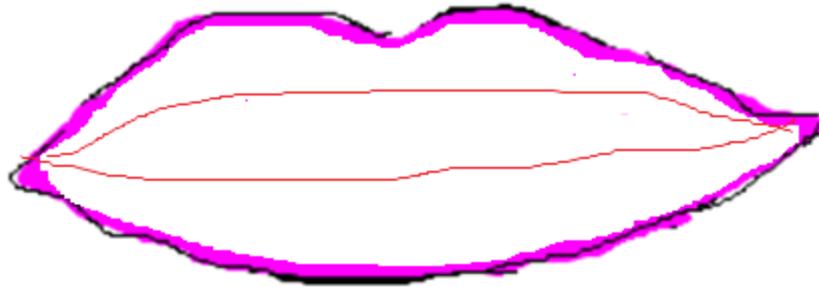


Make-up

make-up



Lip liner



lip liner

Lip stick



lipstick

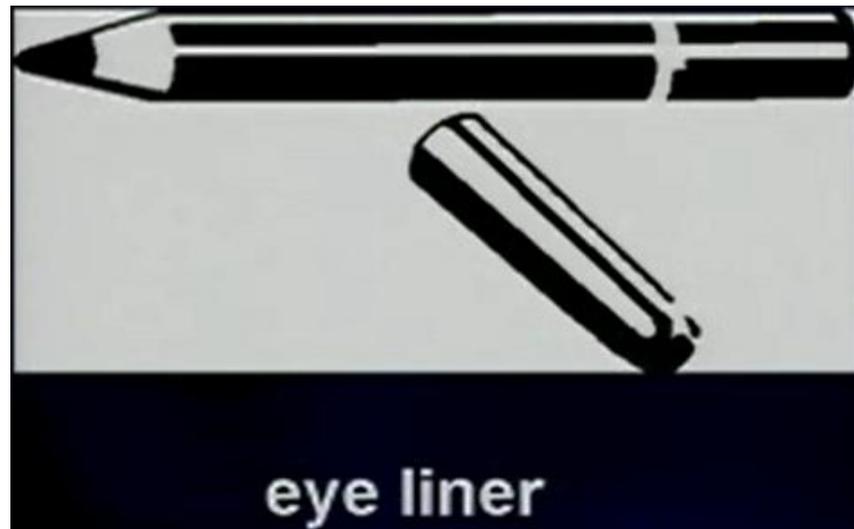
Eye shadow

Eye liner

Mascara

Eyebrow colour

Eye liner

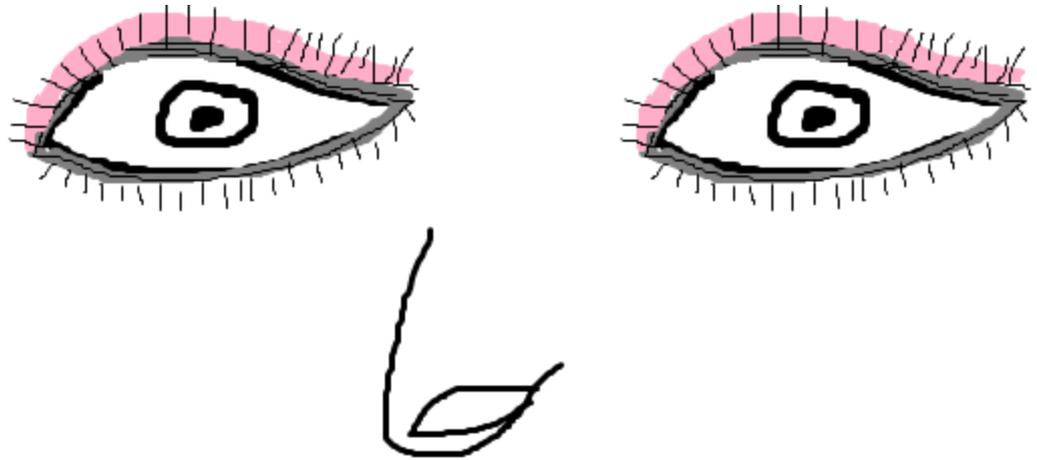


Eye shadow

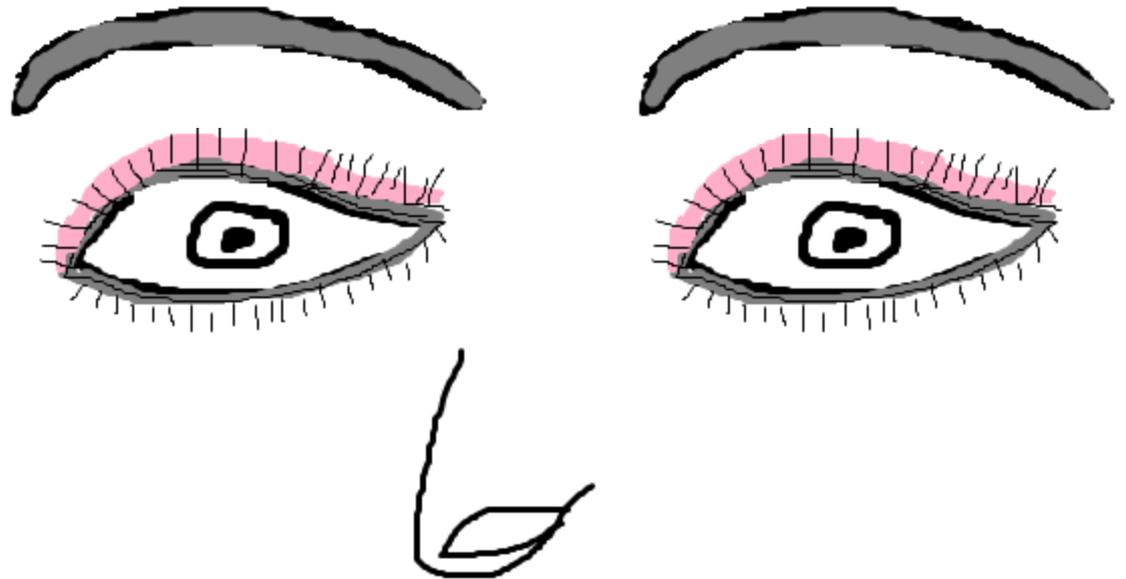




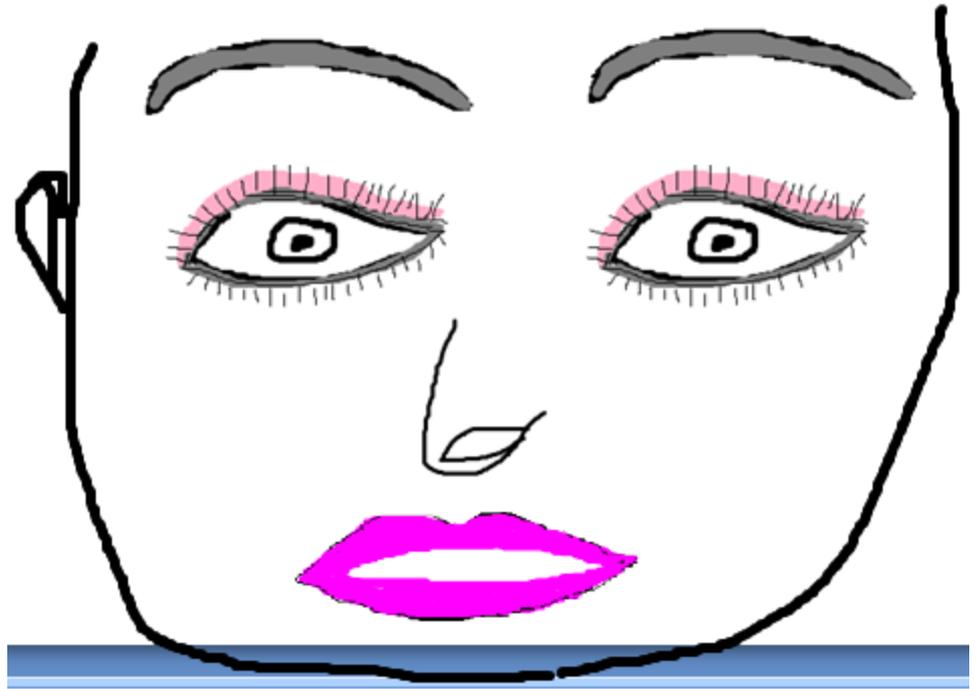
Mascara



eyebrow colour



It is a beautiful face



lipstick

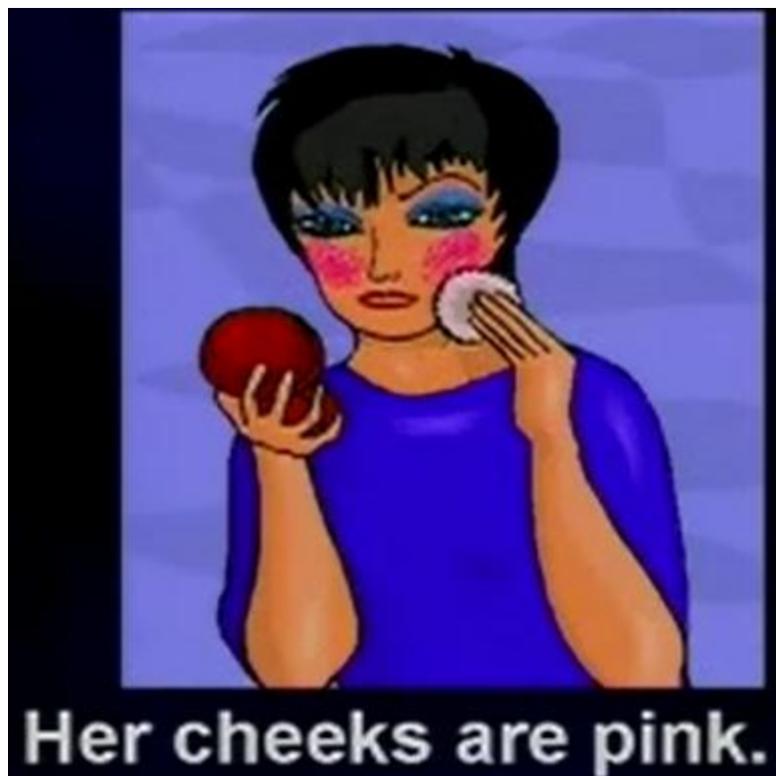




**She puts eye shadow
on her eyes.**



Now her lips are red.



Her cheeks are pink.



I'll give you some advice
about your future.

He gave her some red
flowers because he
loves her.

A: It's a lovely day today!

B: Yes, it is.



Where are you spending your **honey-month**?



Mathematics

CHAPITRE III

**What exists in
the general
math?**

Mathematics Department



**What exists in the
general math?**

Write the following in full form :

$$x_n \xrightarrow{n \rightarrow \infty} 0$$

The limit of x , n equals zero as n tends to **infinity**.
The limit of x , n as n tends to **infinity** equals zero. Or equal to zero.

$$\frac{x}{y} = x \cdot (y^{-1}),$$

x **over** y equals x times y **power** minus one.

$$x - y = x + (-y).$$

x minus y equal to x plus minus y .

$$ax^2 + 2hxy + by^2 = 0 \quad \dots(*)$$

a x **square** plus two h x y plus b y **square** equals zero(star).

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f''(x)}{F''(x)} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{-e^x}{4} = -\frac{1}{4}.$$

The limit of f two primes of x over the big F two primes of x as x tends to zero equals the limit of exponential x over four as x tends to zero and this equals minus one over four.

$$A \sim B \implies e^A \sim e^B$$

If the matrix A is similar with B implies exponential A is similar with exponential B .

Homework

Write the following in full form :

$$B = A - (A - B) = A [I - A^{-1}(A - B)]$$

$$u_{n_1}, u_{n_2}, u_{n_3}, \dots$$

$$r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$$

write the following **notations** in full form :

$$\begin{cases} x + y < 4, x + y \leq 4 \\ x - y > 4, x - y \geq 4 \end{cases}$$
$$\bar{A} = E$$

$$u_n = \frac{n^n}{n!} \text{ and } w_n = \frac{n^n}{(n+1)!}$$

$$\left\| x^{(n)} - x \right\|_{n \rightarrow \infty} = 0 \text{ in } \mathbb{R} \stackrel{\text{iff}}{\iff}_{n \rightarrow \infty} x^{(n)} \longrightarrow x \text{ in } \mathbb{R}^n$$

$$(a^n)^m, a^{n^m} \text{ and } a^{m \cdot n}$$

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n x^n}{\sqrt{n+1}}$$

$$p(x) = -x^2 + 2x - 20$$

For any positive integer n ,

$$a^n = \underbrace{a \cdot a \cdot a \cdots a}_{n \text{ factors}}$$

where a is the **base** and n is the **exponent**.

Set and spaces

\mathbb{N} The set of *natural numbers*

\mathbb{Z} The set of *integers*

\mathbb{R} The set of *real numbers*

\mathbb{C} The set of *complex numbers*

$|x|$ absolute value of a real or complex numbers x

$]a,b[$ an open interval, $[a,b]$ a closed interval

Real numbers



Rational numbers

Irrational numbers:
 $\sqrt{2}$, π , $-\sqrt[5]{3}$, $\sqrt[4]{27}$,
 $-4.030030003\dots$, ...

Integers:

$\dots, -3, -2, -1, 0,$
 $1, 2, 3, \dots$

Rational numbers
that are not integers:

$\frac{2}{3}$, $-\frac{4}{5}$, $\frac{19}{-5}$, $\frac{-7}{8}$, 8.3 ,
 $0.5\bar{6}$, ...

Notations & notions

- A mapping with domain X and range in Y

$$f : X \longrightarrow Y$$

- Element inclusion or in set, set inclusion, union and intersection :

$$\in \subset \cup \cap$$

- **Vectors and matrices**

$x = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$ a row vector in \mathbb{R}^n or \mathbb{C}^n with components x_i

The transpose of x and the adjoint of x

$$x^t = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)^t = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix}$$

$$x^* = (\overline{x_1}, \overline{x_2}, \dots, \overline{x_n})^t$$

The **transpose**, adjoint, **inverse**, determinant, condition number and the **spectral radius** of a matrix **A**

$$A^t \quad A^* \quad A^{-1} \quad \det(A) \quad \text{Cond}(A) \quad \rho(A)$$

Eigenvalues and Eigenvectors. Consider a square matrix **A**. A nonzero vector **x** is an **eigenvector** of the matrix with **eigenvalue l** if **$Ax = lx$**

$$p_A(\lambda) = (\lambda - 2)^3$$

We see that **$l = 2$** is an **eigenvalue** of **multiplicity 3**.

$$\det \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 7 & 4 \\ 0 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \text{ is not possible}$$

Inner product

- \langle, \rangle **scalar product** or **inner product** on a linear space E
- $\langle x, y \rangle$: inner product of x and y , we have on $[a, b]$,

$$\langle f, g \rangle = \int_a^b f(x) g(x) dx$$

e.g. for example

-
- **Binomial coefficients**

$$\binom{m}{n} = \frac{m!}{n! (m - n)!}$$

- A **quadratic** equation is of the form :

$$y = ax^2 + bx + c$$

- A **polynomial** has the general form :

$$p_n(x) = a_0 + a_1x + \dots + a_nx^n$$

- The polynomial has **degree** n if its highest power is x^n
- The Summation sign is defined as

$$\sum_{i=1}^n f(i) = f(1) + f(2) + \dots + f(n-1) + f(n)$$

- **Factorial notation** the factorial notation is defined as follows

$$n! = n.(n-1).(n-2)...3.2.1$$

where n is an integer.

- The inverse of a function is denoted $f^{-1}(x)$ and has the property that :

$$f^{-1}(f(x)) = f(f^{-1}(x)) = x$$

- The zeros of a function $f(x)$ are the values of x when $f(x) = 0$.
- A function is even if $f(-x) = f(x)$ and odd if $f(-x) = -f(x)$.

- A **line** has the general form

$$y = ax + b$$

Where a and b are real numbers and a is the **slope** of the line.

- A hyperbola centered on the origin is usually written in the form

$$y = \frac{k}{x}; k \in \mathbb{R}$$

- **Power of a power rule**

$$(a^n)^m = a^{mn}, a^0 = 1$$

- A fundamental trigonometric identity is

$$\cos^2 x + \sin^2 x = 1$$

- **Hyperbolic functions**

$$chx = \frac{e^x + e^{-x}}{2} \quad shx = \frac{e^x - e^{-x}}{2}$$

- **Chain rule**

$$[f(g(x))]' = g'(x) f'(g(x))$$

THEOREM II. *If S is a set of real numbers which is not empty and which has an upper bound, then it has a least upper bound.*

- (a) What is an **even** function? How can you tell if a function is **even** by looking at its graph ?
- (b) What is an **odd** function? How can you tell if a function is **odd** by looking at its graph ?
- How is the **composite** function $f \circ g$ defined ? What is its domain?
- Determine whether is even, odd, or **neither** even **nor** odd.

Definition

The **solution** of an equation or inequality in one unknown, say x , is the collection of all numbers that make the equation or inequality a true statement. Some times this set of numbers is called the **solution set**.

- Any nonempty set T of natural numbers contains a smallest element.
- **Theorem** : The product of finitely many **compact** spaces is **compact**.

Theorem

- (a) Any nonempty subset of the natural numbers is **countable**.
- (b) Any subset of a **countable** set is **countable**.

- **Theorem**

The union of a countable family of countable sets is countable.

- **Theorem** : \mathbb{R} is not countable.

- **Theorem** An open set in \mathbb{R} is the union of a countable family of disjoint open intervals.

- *(Every subsequence of a convergent sequence converges to the same limit.)*

(a) An open ball is an open set.

(b) A closed ball is a closed set.

- The circle with center **(1,1)** and radius **3** has the equation :

$$(x - 1)^2 + (y - 1)^2 = 9$$

The Logarithm and Exponential Functions

Definitions

- The **natural logarithm function**, denoted by \log , is defined by the formula :

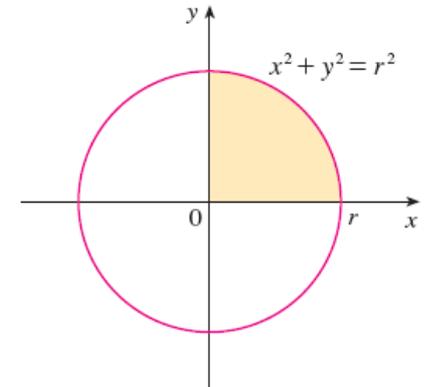
$$\log x = \int_1^x \frac{1}{t} dt, \quad x > 0$$

- The inverse of the logarithm function is called the **exponential function** and is denoted by \exp .
- **The Product Rule** If f and g are both differentiable, then

$$(f \cdot g)' = f'g + g'f$$

Prove that the area of a circle with radius r is

$$S = \pi r^2$$



- Find the **radius** of convergence and **interval** of convergence of the series :

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-3)^n x^n}{\sqrt{n+1}}$$

Definition . In an ordered field we define the absolute value $|a|$ of a as :

$$|a| = \begin{cases} a ; a > 0 \\ -a ; a < 0 \\ 0 ; a = 0 \end{cases}$$

- $|x + y| \leq |x| + |y|$ (**triangle inequality**).

- Each real number x has a corresponding *absolute value*, defined as :

$$|x| = \max\{x, -x\}$$

- The *modulus* of z is :

$$|z| = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$$

- The **norm** satisfies

$$\|x\| \geq 0, \quad \|x\| = 0 \Leftrightarrow x = 0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$$

$$\|\lambda x\| = |\lambda| \|x\|$$

$$\|x + y\| \leq \|x\| + \|y\|$$

And the **distance** satisfies

$$d(x, y) \geq 0, \quad d(x, y) = 0 \Leftrightarrow x = y$$

$$d(x, y) = d(y, x)$$

$$d(x, z) \leq d(x, y) + d(y, z).$$

- A function $f: [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbf{R}$ is **increasing** if and only if

$$x \leq y \Rightarrow f(x) \leq f(y) ; x, y \in [a, b]$$

Decreasing if and only if

$$x \leq y \Rightarrow f(x) \geq f(y) ; x, y \in [a, b]$$

Monotonic if and only if it is either increasing or decreasing.

- The **continued fraction** expansion

$$\sqrt{2} = 1 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{2 + \dots}}}$$

- Show that the **harmonic series**

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{4} + \dots$$

is **divergent**.

Matrix Inversion

- For a given square matrix A the matrix B that satisfies the conditions

$$AB = I_n \quad \text{and} \quad BA = I_n$$

- The inverse of n matrix A can be found by considering the transpose of the cofactors matrix divided by the determinant

$$A^{-1} = \frac{1}{\det(A)} C^t$$

Linear combination

A vector v is a **linear combination** of the vectors x , y and z if it can be written as

$$v = \alpha x + \beta y + \gamma z ;$$

where α, β, γ are constants.

• Linear Independence

A set of vectors u, v, w are **linearly independent** if the only constants α, β, γ that satisfy :

$$\alpha u + \beta v + \gamma w = 0$$

Are $\alpha = \beta = \gamma = 0$.

Triangle Inequality

$$\|x + y\| \leq \|x\| + \|y\| \quad \text{for every } x, y \in \mathcal{C}^n.$$

General Vector Norms

A *norm* for a real or complex vector space \mathcal{V} is a function $\|\star\|$ mapping \mathcal{V} into \mathfrak{R} that satisfies the following conditions.

$$\begin{aligned} \|x\| &\geq 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \|x\| = 0 \iff x = 0, \\ \|\alpha x\| &= |\alpha| \|x\| \quad \text{for all scalars } \alpha, \\ \|x + y\| &\leq \|x\| + \|y\|. \end{aligned} \tag{5.1.9}$$

A is **diagonalizable** if and only if

$$m(x) = (x - \lambda_1)(x - \lambda_2) \cdots (x - \lambda_s)$$

Determine the **minimum** polynomial for the matrix

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 & 2 \\ -4 & 0 & -2 \\ -4 & -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Orthonormal set : A set of a *Hilbert space* \mathbf{H} satisfying

$$\langle e_i, e_j \rangle = \begin{cases} 1 & ; i = j \\ 0 & ; i \neq j \end{cases}$$

Characteristic function The *characteristic function* of a set A is defined by

$$x_A(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & ; x \in A \\ 0 & ; x \notin A \end{cases}$$

The **matrix norm** satisfies

$$\|Ax\| \leq \|A\| \cdot \|x\| ; \forall x \in \mathbb{R}^n$$

- And then we have the distance $d(a, b) = |a - b|$ between a and b .

- and we also say that $a_n \longrightarrow a$ (a_n tends to a)

As n tends to ∞ , for all (sufficiently large) n .

- The real number θ satisfying the equations

$$x = r \cos \theta \text{ and } y = r \sin \theta$$

Is called an **argument** of z , and denoted by $\arg z$. Hence we can write z in polar form :

$$z = r(\cos \theta + i \sin \theta).$$

- The set $\{1, x, x^2, \dots, x^n\}$

is a basis for the vector space of **polynomials** having degree n or less.

- Positive if $x > 0$, negative if $-x > 0$, and nonnegative if $x \geq 0$.
- $x^2 \geq 0$, and $x^2 = 0$ if and only if $x = 0$.
- **Binomial Expansion**

$$(a + b)^n = a^n + na^{n-1}b + \frac{n(n-1)}{2!}a^{n-2}b^2 + \dots + nab^{n-1} + b^n$$

- **Expansion and factorization**

$$(a + b)(c + d) = ac + ad + bc + bd$$

$$(a - b)(a + b) = a^2 - b^2$$

$$(a \pm b)^2 = a^2 \pm 2ab + b^2$$

Definition A sequence $\{a_n\}$ is **bounded above** if there is a number M such that

$$a_n \leq M \quad \text{for all } n \geq 1$$

It is **bounded below** if there is a number m such that

$$m \leq a_n \quad \text{for all } n \geq 1$$

If it is bounded above and below, then $\{a_n\}$ is a **bounded sequence**.

Consider the function of a real variable

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{x^2 + 2}$$

What is the domain and range of the function ?

- Prove that a convergent sequence of real numbers is a Cauchy sequence.
- Prove that a Cauchy sequence is bounded.
- Prove that if $p \geq 2$, then the series

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^p}$$

is convergent.

- Discuss the convergence of the series

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{n^n}{n!}$$

- A power n

$$A^n = \underbrace{AA \cdots A}_{n \text{ times}}.$$

- If X and Y are subspaces of a vector space V , then

$$\dim(X + Y) = \dim X + \dim Y - \dim(X \cap Y)$$

Distance Between Two Points on the Number Line

For any real numbers a and b , the **distance between a and b** is $|a - b|$, or equivalently, $|b - a|$.

- **Symmetric difference** : Given two sets, A and B , their *symmetric difference* is defined as

$$A \setminus B = (A - B) \cup (B - A)$$

- **Matrix Decomposition Theorem**

Let P be a MATRIX of **EIGENVECTORS** of a given MATRIX A and D a MATRIX of the corresponding **EIGENVALUES**. Then A can be written as

$$A = PDP^{-1}$$

Where D is a **DIAGONAL** MATRIX and the columns of P are **ORTHOGONAL VECTORS**.

- **Convolution** : The *convolution* $f * g$ of two functions f and g is given by :

$$(f * g)(x) = \int f(x - y) g(y) dy$$

Calculus of Variations

The Indefinite Integral

The opposite of a derivative is the anti-derivative or the indefinite integral. The indefinite integral of a function $f(x)$ is denoted,

$$\int f(x) dx.$$

Definition : A function f is continuous from the **right** at a number a if :

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a^+} f(x) = f(a)$$

and is continuous from the **left** at a if

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a^-} f(x) = f(a)$$

Theorem *The following types of functions are continuous at every number in their domains : **polynomials**, **rational functions**, root functions trigonometric functions, inverse trigonometric functions, **exponential functions** and logarithmic functions*

Let A and B be nonempty subsets of a **normed** space X , and define

$$A + B = \{x + y; x \in A \text{ and } y \in B\}$$

Prove that

- (i) if A is open, then $A + B$ is open;
- (ii) if A is compact and B is closed, then $A + B$ is closed.

- The **interior** of A is the union of all open sets contained in A .
- The **closure** of A is the intersection of all closed sets containing A .

- Et par conséquent

And therefore

- **Nous avons, on a**

We have

- *Pour tout, quel que soit*

For all

- On considère le système

We consider the system

- On pose, we put, put

- Si et seulement, si. if and only if

- finalement, on trouve. finally, we have

- Ou. where

in particular, if

For any bounded function f on $[0,1]$ we have

For any $k \geq 1$, and so

In particular, c must be real, and hence

- En utilisant 1-1, on trouve

By using 1-1, we have

- Find the roots of the following polynomials:

The solutions are, The solution is

4 Theorem If f and g are continuous at a and c is a constant, then the following functions are also continuous at a :

1. $f + g$

2. $f - g$

3. cf

4. fg

5. $\frac{f}{g}$ if $g(a) \neq 0$

Theorem : The following types of functions are continuous at every number in **their** domains :

1. polynomials
2. rational functions
3. root functions
4. trigonometric functions
5. inverse trigonometric functions
6. exponential functions
7. logarithmic functions

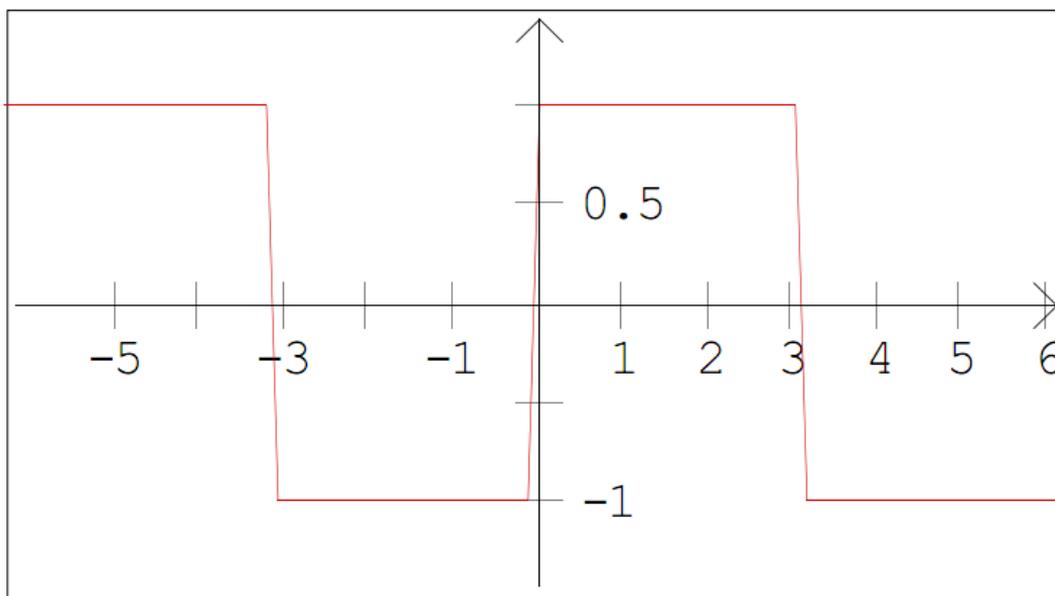
Where is the function continuous ?

$$f(x) = \frac{\ln x + \tan^{-1}x}{x^2 - 1}$$

	Series	Radius of convergence	Interval of convergence
Geometric series	$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x^n$	$R = 1$	$(-1, 1)$
Example 1	$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} n! x^n$	$R = 0$	$\{0\}$
Example 2	$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(x-3)^n}{n}$	$R = 1$	$[2, 4)$
Example 3	$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n x^{2n}}{2^{2n}(n!)^2}$	$R = \infty$	$(-\infty, \infty)$

Let $f(x)$ be periodic with period 2π

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} -1; & -\pi < x < 0 \\ 1; & 0 < x < \pi \end{cases}$$



- Another Example
- Suppose this limit exists, and choose ϵ . Then,
- Now, choose $N = 1/\epsilon$. Then,
- It's easy to show that

Test

Choose the correct item.

He's person I've ever met.

- A** the friendlier **B** friendly
C the friendliest

She a letter at the moment.

- A** is writing **B** writes **C** has written

They haven't seen each other
they left school.

- A** after **B** since **C** for

I think Holland win the World Cup.

- A** is going to **B** will **C** shall

My mother in a hospital. She's a nurse.

A works **B** is working **C** has worked

My bag is than hers.

A the heavier **B** heavier **C** heaviest

Mike is lazier than Dave.

A very **B** less **C** much

Have you seen "Adams Family 2"?

A yet **B** already **C** just

He in Italy for two years.

A lives **B** is living **C** has lived

He his leg, so he can't play football today.

A has broken **B** breaks **C** is breaking

Jim a bath at the moment.

A is having **B** has **C** has had

This is time I've spent away from home.

A longer **B** long **C** the longest

He is nicer than his brother.

A more **B** less **C** much

I haven't been to Portsmouth three years.

A since **B** for **C** after

I the cooking if you do the washing-up.

A do **B** will do **C** did

I've tidied my bedroom.

A already **B** yet **C** since

Where are the coats?

A childrens' **B** children's

C children

John down the road when he fell

A walked

B was walking

C had walked

My friend and I had a lovely holiday.

..... of us wanted to go home.

A Neither

B All

C None

Jane is the person I know.

A cleverest

B cleverer

C more clever

George and Tom are friends. of them work in a bank.

A All

B None

C Both

My dog is than my friend's dog.

A bigger **B** the biggest **C** big

I have never Paris.

A gone to **B** been to **C** been in

..... of my family like football.

A Neither **B** Both **C** None

There is in the cupboards. We have to go to the supermarket.

A nothing **B** everything **C** anything

Jane the hairdresser's; she'll be back at 3 o'clock.

A has been to **B** has gone to

C has been in

I have two cousins. of them are good students.

A Both **B** All **C** None

I have a lot of friends in the USA, but of them have visited me in Portugal.

A none **B** neither **C** both

It was the coat she had ever bought.

A most expensive **B** more expensive
C expensive

The weather is today than it was yesterday.

A better **B** good **C** best

..... I answer the phone?

A Shall **B** Do **C** Will

..... breakfast every morning?

A Are you having **B** Do you have
C Had you had

John football, when he broke his arm.

A play **B** played **C** was playing

Tom sings

A beautiful **B** good **C** beautifully

I have two sisters. of them lives in Athens.

A None **B** Neither **C** All

John is tired because he all day long.

A studied

B has been studying

C had studied

Simon France for his holiday.

He's been there for 3 weeks.

A has gone in

B has been to

C has gone to

Dave and Ben can play the guitar but
..... of them can sing.

A neither

B all

C none

..... I cook dinner tonight?

A Will

B Shall

C Do

Sarah is the prettiest girl our school.

A then **B** in **C** of

Paul's car is than Tom's.

A fast **B** fastest **C** faster

This dress is the in the shop.

A more expensive **B** most expensive
C expensive

Bob the car at the moment.

A washes **B** is washing **C** wash

The sun in the west.

A is setting **B** set **C** sets

It's colder today than yesterday.

A much **B** most **C** very

Peter has lived here 1998.

A for **B** since **C** ago

Mother dinner at the moment.

A cooks **B** cook **C** is cooking

Lucy is as as Sally.

A clever **B** cleverer **C** cleverest

Harry went to France two years

A since **B** ago **C** for

My hair is than yours.

A long **B** longest **C** longer

Look! She's drop the vase.

A going to **B** will **C** shall

Susan's person I've ever met.

A the nicer **B** nicest **C** the nicest

Have you done your homework?

A yet **B** since **C** for

These are the books.

A children **B** children's **C** childrens'

Jim in Scotland for five years.

A lives **B** is living **C** has lived

..... I help you carry those heavy bags?

A Shall **B** Do **C** Will

Ian has two brothers. of them are older than him.

A None **B** All **C** Both

Ann has never Rome.

A gone to **B** been in **C** been to

I answered the door, but there was there.

A someone **B** anyone **C** no one

I was hungry so I made a sandwich.

A myself **B** my **C** me

You do the washing-up. I've already done it.

A needn't **B** must **C** mustn't

e.g. ...**A**... you play the guitar?

A Can **B** May **C** Must

1 They live in a huge house and own three cars. They be rich.

A can't **B** can **C** must

2 I help you carry these bags?

A Will **B** Shall

C *Would you like*

3 You water the plants. I've already watered them.

e.g. ...**A**... you play the guitar?

A Can **B** May **C** Must

1 They live in a huge house and own three cars. They be rich.

A can't **B** can **C** must

2 I help you carry these bags?

A Will **B** Shall

C Would you like

3 You water the plants. I've already watered them.

A can't **B** don't need **C** needn't

4 He had studied hard so he
answer all the questions in the test.

A is able to **B** was able ... **C** can

5 You be rude to your parents.

A mustn't **B** must **C** couldn't

6 You to eat more fruit and vegetables if you want to be healthy.

A should **B** had better **C** ought

7 Sam be at work today. It's Sunday.

A can't **B** mustn't **C** must

8 I read or write when I was four years old.

A can't **B** couldn't **C** wasn't able

9 We to be at the office at 9 o'clock every morning.

A should **B** must **C** have

10 Dad, I go to Kelly's party tomorrow?

A can **B** might **C** will

**Merci
pour
tout.**

You must be quiet with your family, people and choose something after thinking, and you shouldn't forget that our God knows anything about us.

Problem: Translate the following words and phrases in English language:

1. *Base hilbertienne*
2. *Boule ouverte, fermée*
3. *Espace séparable*
4. *Espace vectoriel topologique .*
5. *Fonction sous-linéaire*
6. *Mesure de **Dirac***
7. *Normes, semi-normes*
8. *Opérateur linéaire*
9. *Problème de Dirichlet*
10. *Semi-normes équivalentes .*

Solution :

1. *Hilbertien basis*
2. *Open Ball, Closed Ball*
3. *Separable space*
4. *Topological vector space .*
5. *Fonction sous-linéaire*
6. *Mesure de **Dirac***
7. *Normes, semi-normes*
8. *Opérateur linéaire*
9. *Problème de Dirichlet*
10. *Semi-normes équivalentes .*

1. *Systeme de vecteurs orthogonaux .*
2. *Theoreme de l'application ouverte*
3. Intégrales **absolument** convergentes
4. Constante d'Euler, **Compacité**
5. Nombres premiers
6. Equation **différentielle** d'ordre p
7. Equation différentielle linéaire homogène
8. *Famille libre*
9. *Espaces fonctionnels*
10. *Forme différentielle continue*
11. *Formule de Cauchy*
12. *Forme **hermitienne***

1. Image réciproque d'une forme différentielle
2. Intégrale double
3. Harmonique
4. **Densité et séparabilité**
5. Intérieur d'un ensemble
6. Matrice d'un système différentiel
7. Noyau d'une forme bilinéaire symétrique
8. **Application orthogonale**
9. Vecteurs **orthogonaux**
10. Espace préhilbertien séparable
11. Boule **unité** d'un espace normé
12. Opérateur adjoint

1. Rayon de convergence
2. Série de Fourier
3. Volume
4. Matrice **unitaire**, matrice symétrique
5. Somme d'une série
6. *Sous-espace vectoriel*
7. *Valeur absolue*
8. *Equation de BERNOULLI.*
9. *Théorème de Strauss, théorème de Cauchy*
10. Ensemble **borné**
11. *Espaces complets*
12. *Convergence simple*

1. Fonction strictement croissante
2. Fonction croissante
3. Fonction **décroissante**
4. *Systeme différentiel linéaire a coefficients constants*
5. *Infiniment **grand**, infiniment **petit***
6. *Borne inférieure, borne supérieure*
7. *Dérivée généralisée*
8. *Inégalité de **Holder***
9. *Graphe*
10. *Formes indéterminées*
11. *Fonction périodique*

1. *Fonction monotone*
2. *Fonction paire*
3. *Limite d'une fonction*
4. *Fonction impaire*
5. *Fonction **exponentielle***
6. *Fonction discontinue*
7. *Fonction **convexe**, croissante, décroissante*
8. *Fonction convexe, continue, **composée***
9. *Intervalle fermé, ensemble fermé*
10. *Problème de valeur **initiale***
11. *Suite double, **Développement limité***

1. *application identique sur X*
2. *application canonique de X dans son bidual*
3. *espace des suites bornées*
4. *espace des applications linéaires continues*
5. *fonctions mesurables bornées*
6. *transposée de l'application linéaire f*
7. *adjoint de l'application T*
8. *produit scalaire de x et y*
9. *espace des suites qui tendent vers 0*
10. *vecteur **nul** de l'espace vectoriel X*
11. *Espaces normés et applications linéaires*
12. *Forme hermitienne positive*

Shall I do it for you?
I'll find it for you.

Really? I'll eat them.
No, shall I turn it off?

OK, I'll answer it.
OK, I'll mend it for you.





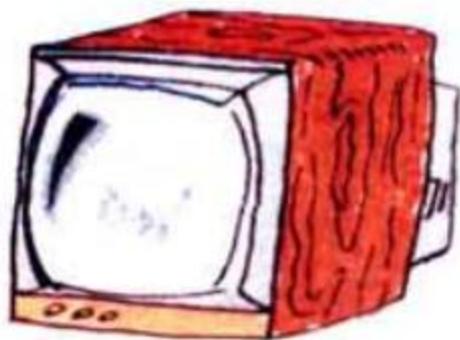
listen to records



magazines



vegetables



TV

Ex 07:

Choose a time expression from the list to complete each sentence.

at the moment, tonight, every day, never, always, now

1. She ... *never* ... eats meat. She's a vegetarian.
2. Mother is reading the newspaper
3. They are going to a party
4. She goes to the gym on Saturdays.
5. He drives to work
6. She is playing the piano

Put the verbs in brackets into Present Simple or Present Continuous.

1. She .. *studies* ... (study) every evening.
2. He (dance) with Mary now.
3. They (get) married next week.
4. She usually (take) the bus to school.
5. Her husband never
(remember) her birthday.
6. We (watch) a film on
television at the moment.

Ex 08: Fill in: a, an or the.

Indonesian [ˌɪndəʊˈniːziən]

Last night I went to 1) *an* Indonesian restaurant. I had 2) very nice meal with 3) good friend, Helen. 4) waiter was Chinese. 5) food was great. We drank 6) bottle of Coke. When we asked for 7) bill we didn't have enough money, so we had to do 8) washing-up. It was not 9) good way to end 10) evening.



Ex 10:

Fill in: “since”, “for”, “already”, “just” or “yet”.

1. John has ... *just* ... finished his homework, so his books are still on the table.
2. I haven't seen Sarah 1990.
3. Have you finished eating? I haven't even started
4. We've lived here ten years.
5. He's come back from jogging and he's a bit tired.

Write the verbs in the third person singular.

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. I miss. He .. <i>misses</i> | 4. I fix. He | 7. I go. He |
| 2. I buy. She | 5. I watch. She | 8. I dry. She |
| 3. I carry. He | 6. I call. He | 9. I play. He |

Fill in: in, on or at.

My birthday is 1) *on* the 30th of July. Last year I had a great day. I got up 2) 8 o'clock
3) the morning and tidied the house. Then 4) the afternoon I went into town with my friend to
buy food for the party. The party started 5) 7 o'clock 6) the evening and didn't stop until very
late 7) night! 8) the 31st of July I was very tired, so I went to bed early 9) the evening.

Fill in “a”, “an” or “the” where necessary.

1. Is .. *a* .. tomato ... *a* .. fruit or ... *a* .. vegetable?
2. Is apple red or blue?
3. What is capital of France?

Homework 1

Translate the following sentences in English language.

Soit A un ensemble quelconque

Let A be an arbitrary set

Soit f une fonction définie par :

Let f be a function defined by :

1. Et ceci implique, **And this implies**
2. On a, **we have.** on a aussi, **and also we have**
3. On a alors, **and then we have**
4. D'après (1) on a, **From (1) we have**
5. Finalement, on trouve. **Finally, we find**
6. Montrer que **$\ker f = 0$.** Show that **$\ker f = 0$.**
7. Implique, **it follows that, implies**
8. Si, **if**
9. Sinon, **otherwise**
10. Montrer que **f** est symétrique. **Prove that f is symmetric.**

1. Toute suite bornée monotone est convergente. **Every bounded, monotonic sequence is convergent or (converges).**
2. D'où, par intégration, on a **Hence, by integration.**
We have
3. En particulier, **In particular**
4. D'où, **Therefore.**
5. Où, **Where,**
6. Nous avons, **We have**
7. On obtient, **we get, we have**
8. Considérons maintenant, **Now, we consider**
9. On en déduit que. **We deduce that**
10. sauf deux cas. **Except two cases.**

1. De plus, on a. **Moreover, we have**
2. D'autre part, mais. **On the other hand, but**
3. Pour tout $\varepsilon > 0$, il existe **For all $\varepsilon > 0$, there exists**
4. Considérons tout d'abord **Firstly, we consider**
5. En effet, on a **In fact, we have**
6. En effet, on a **Indeed, we have**
7. Pour tout x dans H , on a **For all x in H , we have**
8. Ceci implique **This means**
9. Dans le cas où $N = a$ **In the case $N = a$**
10. Supposons que $k \geq 2$ d'après théorème **3.1**, on trouve
Let $k \geq 2$. By Theorem 3.1, we have
We suppose that $k \geq 2$. By using theorem 3.1, we have

1. De plus, on a **Furthermore, we have**
2. Supposons que, **we suppose that**
3. Une contradiction **Which is impossible, a contradiction**
4. Dans ce cas **in this case**
5. Puisque la suite $f(n)$ est croissante, alors il existe un entier positif unique s_0 tel que :
Because the sequence $f(n)$ is increasing, then there exists a unique positive integer s_0 such that :
6. il existe donc un $M \in \mathbb{R}$ tel que **Then, there exists a point $M \in \mathbb{R}$ such that**

1. Une équation différentielle linéaire (EDL) du 1er ordre est une équation différentielle qui peut s'écrire sous la forme : **A linear differential equation (LDE) of the first order is a differential equation that can write as the forme**
2. Un espace euclidien est de dimension finie, **A Euclidian spase is a finite dimensional.**
3. En dimension finie toutes les normes sont équivalentes. **In a finite dimensional all norms are equivalent**

1. **Définition** On appelle équation différentielle du premier ordre une équation de la forme : **Definition**
We call a differential equation of the first order an equation of the form :
2. Ce qui implique. Which implies
3. Considérons maintenant. Now, we consider
4. Il en résulte $a = 0$. we can deduce that
5. Soit E un K -espace vectoriel quelconque et F un sous-espace de E . Let E be an arbitrary vector space over K and let F be a subspace of E .
6. On voit que We see that

1. Soit f une fonction quelconque, on peut écrire **Let f be an arbitrary function, we can write**
2. De plus, on écrit. **Furthermore, we write**
3. Étudier le cas général **study the general case**
4. Deux matrices semblables ont, en particulier, le même déterminant. **Two similar matrices have, in particular, the same determinant.**
5. La dimension de $M_n(\mathbb{K})$ est n^2 .
the dimension of $M_n(\mathbb{K})$ is n^2 .

1. est définie par : is defined by
2. Il est clair que la série \sum diverge. It's clear that the series \sum diverges.
3. Montrer que f est symétrique. Show that f is symmetric.
4. Comme C est convexe, alors because C is convex, we have

English Expressions

1. For example, let $m = 15$ and $a = 7$.
2. Since $f(x) = y$, Euler's theorem tells us that
3. We can compute the order as follows:
4. and so the order of E is 4 .
5. We shall give a second proof of Euler's theorem and its corollaries.
6. We begin with some simple observations about functional analysis.
7. We define the order of a group as the cardinality of the group.

1. **(Lagrange's theorem)** If G is a finite group and H is a subgroup of G , then the order of H divides the order of G .
2. The map $f: X \rightarrow aX$ defined by $f(x) = ax$ is a bijection.
3. In particular, we see that
4. The arithmetic function $\omega(n)$ counts the number of distinct prime divisors of the positive integer n , that is,

$$\omega(n) = \sum_{p|n} 1.$$

1. where b is the positive real number defined by (3.2).
2. **Applying** Chebyshev's theorem (Theorem 3.4), we get
3. we obtain.
4. From Theorem 3.5, we obtain
5. For $x \geq 2$,
6. By Theorem 8.9,

1. This completes the proof.
2. Let S be a finite set of integers, and let f be a real-valued function defined on S .
3. For every $\delta > 0$, the number of integers $n \leq x$ such that
4. Let S be the set of positive integers n not exceeding x .
5. Applying Chebyshev's inequality,

1. We use Theorem 8.9 and Theorem 8.10 to evaluate this sum as follows:
2. Prove that there exists a constant b such that for $x \geq 2$,
3. There are many beautiful open problems about prime numbers. [Here are some examples.](#)
4. Do there exist infinitely many primes p of the form :
 $p = n^2 + 1$?
5. A linear space over the field \mathbf{K} is a non-empty set \mathbf{V} of vectors with a binary operation (*addition*) and a scalar multiplication.

1. Let $G \subset E$ be open.
2. we denote by $D\{\alpha\}$ the partial derivative
3. These spaces play a central role in our work
4. A subset M of the linear space V is a subspace of V if it is closed under the linear operations.
5. We have three chains of subspaces given by :
6. We let M be a subspace of V and construct a corresponding quotient space.

7. T is continuous at x if and only if

1. We shall define addition of cosets by adding a corresponding pair of representatives and similarly define scalar multiplication. It is necessary to first verify that this definition is **unambiguous**.
2. **Proof** The proof is analogous to that of **(2.1.1)**.
3. Recalling the definition of " *norm* "
4. this gives the inequality (5.2).
5. Now, putting $\lambda = 1$ in (5.3) and using (5.2) on the right yields

1. The first two axioms of norm, namely that
2. for all $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ and all $f \in V$,
3. We have thus shown the following result.
4. follow directly from (9.1) and from the last three axioms of inner product stated in Definition 5.1.
5. the set $C[a, b]$ of continuous real-valued functions defined on the closed interval $[a, b]$ is an inner product space

1. The problem of best approximation in the 2 -norm can be formulated as follows:
2. such p is called a polynomial of best approximation of degree n to the function f in the 2 -norm on (a, b) .
3. The existence and uniqueness of p will be shown in Theorem **4.2**. However, we shall first consider some simple examples.
4. Suppose that $\varepsilon > 0$ and let
5. We shall construct the polynomial of best approximation of degree n in the 2 -norm,

1. In the previous section we described a method for constructing the polynomial of best approximation p to a function f in the 2 -norm;
2. with the inner product (\cdot, \cdot) defined by
3. Given a weight function w , defined, positive, continuous and integrable on the interval (a, b) ,
4. *Next, we show that a system of orthogonal polynomials exists on any interval (a, b) and for any weight function w which satisfies the conditions in Definition 5.1.*

1. Let us now define the polynomial
2. It then follows that
3. where we have used the orthogonality of the sequence
4. This procedure for constructing a system of orthonormal polynomials is usually referred to as Gram–Schmidt **orthonormalisation.**

1. and therefore,
2. Clearly,
3. for any pair of nonnegative integers m and n .
4. we recall the definition of the inner product (\cdot, \cdot)
5. Such a system of polynomials is said to be orthonormal.
6. Using this result with $k = 1$, we obtain

1. By **substituting** this into (1.6) we get
2. Thus, in particular, **Thus** = **Ainsi**
3. provided that
4. On taking the (natural) logarithm of each side in the last inequality, we find that
5. Now we can return to Example 1.2 to answer the question posed there about the maximum number of iterations.

1. Consider the problem of determining the solutions of the equation $f(x) = 0$,
2. the function f is monotonic increasing for positive x and monotonic decreasing for negative values of x . Moreover,
3. The equation $f(x) = 0$ may be written in the equivalent form :
4. On the other hand,

1. Evidently the given equation may be written in many different forms, leading to iterations with different properties.
2. In the previous section we saw
3. In fact, by applying the Contraction Mapping Theorem on an arbitrary bounded closed interval $[0, M]$ where
4. Convergence of **Newton's** method :
5. Using Newton's method to solve a nonlinear equation :

1. Suppose further that there exists a positive constant A such that
2. this shows that
3. According to Definition 1.7, implies
4. Suppose that the function f satisfies the conditions of Theorem 1.8 and also that there exists a real number X , $X > \xi$, such that :
5. It follows from (1.23) that
6. Choosing $\varepsilon = \alpha$ we see that

From (1.25) and using the Mean Value Theorem (Theorem A.3) together with the fact that $f(\xi) = 0$, we obtain

The Jacobi method

We give a general **view** about Jacobi's method, we **describe** in this section the method **was discovered** by Jacobi in 1846 and can used **iteratively** compute all the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of real symmetric matrix.

Uniqueness of the distance from a point to a convex set: *the geometric meaning*

The general case is more **complicated**; we start with a more general problem. Let M be a **convex** closed set in H . Denote the distance of x to the set M with $\rho(x, M)$. Then there exists a unique $y \in M$ such that $\rho(x, M) = \|x - y\|$ (the distance is **achieved** at the unique element $y \in M$).

1 Articles and one, a little/a few, this, that

1 **a/an** (the indefinite article)

*The form **a** is used before a word beginning with a consonant, or a vowel with a consonant sound:*

a man **a** hat **a** university **a** European
a one-way street

*The form **an** is used before words beginning with a vowel (a, e, i, o, u) or words beginning with a mute h:*

an apple **an** island **an** uncle
an egg **an** onion **an** hour

or individual letters spoken with a vowel sound:

an L-plate **an** MP **an** SOS **an** 'x' **a/an** is the same for all genders:

a man **a** woman **an** actor **an** actress **a** table

2 Use of **a/an** a/an is used:

A *Before a singular noun which is countable (i.e. of which there is more than one) when it is mentioned for the first time and represents no particular person or thing:*

Examples:

- I need **a** visa.
- They live in **a** flat.
- He bought **an** ice-cream.

B *Before a singular countable noun which is used as an example of a class of things:*

- A car must be insured = All cars/Any car must be insured.
- A child needs love = All children need/Any child needs love.

C *With a noun complement. This includes names of professions:*

- It was **an** earthquake.
- She'll be **a** dancer.
- He is **an** actor.

D *In certain expressions of quantity:*

- **a** lot of
- **a** couple
- **a** great many
- **a** dozen (but one dozen is also possible)
- **a** great deal of

E With certain numbers:

- a hundred
- a thousand

(See 349) Before half when half follows a whole number

1.5 kilos = one and a half kilos or a kilo and a half, But $1/2$ kg = half a kilo (no a before half), though a + half + noun is sometimes possible

- a half holiday
- a half portion
- a half share With $1/3$ $1/4$, $1/5$ etc a is usual
- a third.
- a quarter etc , but one is also possible (See 350)